

AN OPENING REPERTOIRE FOR THE POSITIONAL PLAYER



Eduard Gufeld
Nikolai Kalinichenko

CADOGAN
chess

One of the hardest tasks faced by competitive chess players is the development of an opening repertoire suited to their own style of play. As in their companion volume **An Opening Repertoire for the Attacking Player** (also translated by Ken Neat), the authors provide a refined and thoroughly up-to-date opening program, this time selecting variations of a more positional nature.

- Practical repertoire based on 1 e4 as White and the Classical Sicilian and King's Indian Defences as Black
- Concentrates on solid and reliable lines of play
- Provides an easy-to-learn explanation of the typical plans and ideas

Eduard Gufeld is one of the most popular and widely travelled grandmasters, and is known throughout the world as a coach, opening theoretician, journalist and author.

Nikolai Kalinichenko, author of more than 30 chess books, holds the International Master title in correspondence chess and enjoys a growing reputation as a specialist in opening theory.



CADOGAN CHESS BOOKS

**An Opening Repertoire
for the Positional Player**

English Translation Copyright © 1997 Ken Neat

First published 1997 by Cadogan Books plc, 27-29 Berwick Street,
London W1V 3RF

Distributed in North America by The Globe Pequot Press, 6 Business Park
Rd, P.O. Box 833, Old Saybrook, Connecticut 06475-0833

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means: electronic, electrostatic, magnetic tape, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A CIP catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 1 85744 152 4

Cover design by Brian Robins

Typeset by Ken Neat, Durham

Printed in Great Britain by BPC Wheatons Ltd, Exeter

An Opening Repertoire for the Positional Player

by

Eduard Gufeld and Nikolai Kalinichenko

Translated and Edited by Ken Neat

CADOGAN

chess

LONDON, NEW YORK

CADOGAN CHESS BOOKS

Chief Advisor: Garry Kasparov
Editor: Murray Chandler
Russian Series Editor: Ken Neat

Other chess titles from Cadogan include:

The Life and Games of Mikhail Tal
Mikhail Tal

The Genius of Paul Morphy
Chris Ward

Improve Your Chess Now
Jonathan Tisdall

Ivan Sokolov's Best Games
Ivan Sokolov

Winning in the Opening
John Walker

The Final Countdown
Hajenius & Van Riemsdijk

The Art of Chess Analysis
Jan Timman

Vasily Smyslov: Endgame Virtuoso
Vasily Smyslov

Basic Chess Openings
Gabor Kallai

Practical Opening Tips
Edmar Mednis

More Basic Chess Openings
Gabor Kallai

Play the Evans Gambit
Harding & Cafferty

Lessons in Chess
Garry Kasparov

Queen's Indian Defence
Bogdan Lalic

Fire on Board: Shirov's Best Games
Alexei Shirov

An Opening Repertoire for the Attacking Player
Gufeld & Kalinichenko

For a complete catalogue of CADOGAN CHESS books (which includes the Pergamon Chess and Maxwell Macmillan Chess lists) please write to:

Cadogan Books plc, 27-29 Berwick St, London W1V 3RF
Tel: (0171) 287 6555
Fax: (0171) 734 1733

Contents

<i>Introduction</i>	6
---------------------	---

PART I: WHITE REPERTOIRE

1	Sicilian Defence	9
2	Scotch Game	27
3	French Defence	41
4	Caro-Kann Defence	59
5	Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence	66
6	Alekhine Defence	73

PART II: BLACK REPERTOIRE

7	Sicilian Defence	84
	King's Indian Defence:	
8	Four Pawns Attack	105
9	Sämisch Variation	114
10	Variations with ♗g2	129
11	Classical Variation	139
12	Deviations by White from the Classical Variation	154
13	Averbakh Variation	162
14	Torre Attack	169
15	Trompowsky Attack	174
16	English Opening	179
17	Bird Opening	185

<i>Index of Variations</i>	189
----------------------------	-----

<i>List of Illustrative Games</i>	192
-----------------------------------	-----

Introduction

Opening strategy is the most difficult aspect in the study of chess. The present book (one of the few in the continual stream of chess literature) is aimed at helping readers to solve the problem of studying opening theory. We offer a universal program, suitable both for novices, and for players of high class.

A most important problem for a player aiming for competitive success is the development of an opening repertoire. This is a rather complicated and laborious process, through which we will proceed together with the readers. An opening repertoire depends on many factors, notable among which are the style of a player (tactical or positional), his character, his liking for this or that type of position, and finally – his tournament position, and so on.

This book gives an opening repertoire for players with a positional style, and, compared with our companion volume *An Opening Repertoire for the Attacking Player*, represents a kind of second stage in the mastery of opening theory (although many variations are closely linked to the other volume, which is very useful from the organisational point of view). More refined here is the battle for the centre, and the systems of defence chosen for Black have a high degree of stability.

After 1 e4 e5 we recommend the highly insidious Four Knights Variation of the Scotch Game, which gives White a slight but enduring advantage, without allowing the opponent any serious counter-chances.

Against the Sicilian Defence the Alapin Variation 2 c3 has in recent times become a formidable weapon for White. Against the French Defence we recommend the Tarrasch Variation 3 ♖d2, which for many years was successfully employed by Anatoly Karpov. In the Caro-Kann Defence, Black is set problems by a set-up that has been used at the very highest level (for example, the 1995 Candidates Match Gelfand-Karpov): 3 e5 and 4 ♕f3. Quieter, but no less dangerous variations for Black, are recommended against the Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence (3 f3!) and the Alekhine Defence (the classical 4 ♕f3).

Against 1 e4 as Black we recommend the line leading to the Rauzer Attack or the Sozin Attack, in which Black has counter-play, but does not burn all his boats behind him, and where it is not easy for White to gain an advantage.

And finally, against 1 d4 we suggest the King's Indian Defence – the favourite weapon of World Champion Garry Kasparov, as well as one of the

authors of this book, which has served him faithfully for many a decade. Not without reason is Black's powerful piece at g7 called the 'Gufeld bishop'.

It should be mentioned that this book includes the most up-to-date chess material (including important games from the first half of 1997), which often clarifies or refutes existing evaluations. Therefore this work will be useful not only to a wide range of chess enthusiasts taking their first steps in studying theory, but also to experienced players, who after studying the book will be able to look anew at many well-known positions.

The authors are convinced that the given work will help you to solve the complicated task of developing an opening repertoire, including the most important thing – the problem of the black pieces! After all, a competent repertoire will enable you to raise significantly your standard of play and to improve your tournament results.

We are sure that this book will be exceptionally useful to all wishing to improve their mastery of chess.

Eduard Gufeld
Nikolai Kalinichenko
October 1997

Publisher's Note

The companion volume by the same authors *An Opening Repertoire for the Attacking Player* gives sound methods for White of opposing unusual openings such as the Centre Counter Game, and the Nimzowitsch, Owen and St. George Defences. Also covered there are ways for Black to proceed when faced by early deviations against the Sicilian Defence. Rather than repeat this material here (which would have added nearly 40 pages to this book) we refer the reader to the companion volume.

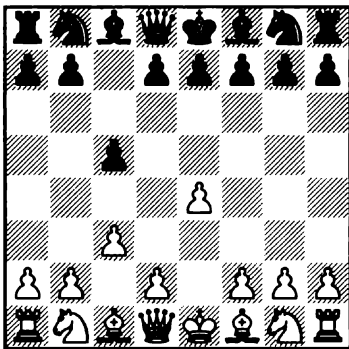
Conventional signs used in this book

!	good move
!!	excellent move
!?	move deserving consideration
?!	dubious move
?	incorrect move
??	blunder
=	equal position
±	White has a slight advantage
∓	Black has a slight advantage
±	White has a clear advantage
∓	Black has a clear advantage
+−	White has a decisive advantage
−+	Black has a decisive advantage
∞	unclear position
≡	with compensation for the material
Δ	with the idea of
GM	grandmaster
IM	international master
corr.	correspondence game

PART I: WHITE REPERTOIRE

1 Sicilian Defence

1 e4 c5
2 c3



A variation developed by the 19th century Russian player Alapin, and one that is very popular today. From the very start White aims to set up a strong pawn centre, which demands accurate play on Black's part.

The main replies are 2...e5 (1.1), 2...d6 (1.2), 2...e6 (1.3), 2...d5 (1.4) and 2...f6 (1.5).

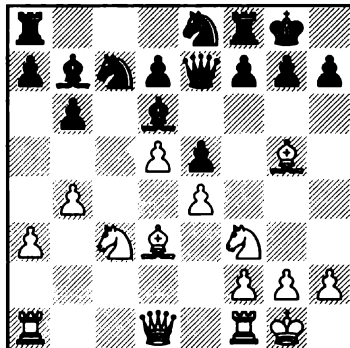
Other moves do nothing to hinder White's plan:

2...b6 3 d4 f6 4 f3 (or 4 d5!?, restricting the f6) 4...f6 5 f3, and now:

(a) 5...e6 6 f3 g3 d5 7 e5 f3 8 0-0 c6 9 e1 (Tiviakov-Reinhard, Singapore 1990). White has a solid

centre and controls more space, giving him a stable advantage. The game continued 9...e7 10 f1 c7 11 g3 0-0-0 12 g5 xg5 13 xg5 f6 14 exf6 gxf6 15 e3±;

(b) 5...cxd4 6 cxd4 c6 7 e2 e5 (little is promised by 7...b4 8 b1 a6 9 f3, when White completes a regrouping typical of this type of position, and is ready to drive back the black pieces: 9...c7 10 c3 e6 11 a3 c6 12 g5 h5 13 d5 a5 14 e5 with a great advantage, Schmittiel-Grooten, Wijk aan Zee 1993) 8 d5 b4 9 b1 c5 10 c3 0-0 11 a3 a6 12 0-0 c7 13 d3 fe8 14 f3 e7 15 b4 d6 16 g5± (Smagin-Milov, Greece 1993).



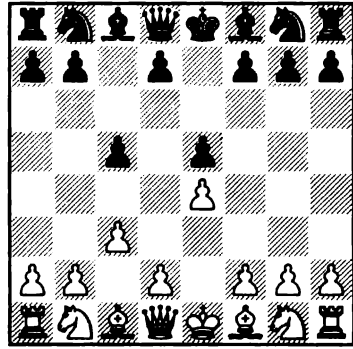
White has a considerable advantage in the centre and his hands are free for action on either wing.

2...♖a5 (an attempt to prevent d2-d4, which, however, is easily suppressed) 3 ♘f3 ♘c6 4 d4 cxd4 5 b4 ♗c7 6 b5 ♗e5 7 ♘xe5 ♗xe5 8 ♗xd4, maintaining pressure both in the middlegame, and in the endgame (Makropoulos-Ljubojevic, Athens 1981).

2...g6 (more justified than the fianchetto of the queen's bishop) 3 d4 cxd4 (after 3...♗a5 4 dxc5 ♗xc5 5 ♗e3 White has a lead in development) 4 cxd4 d5 (if 4...♗g7 5 ♘c3 d6 6 ♗e3 ♘f6 7 f3 0-0 8 ♗d2 ♘c6 9 0-0-0 ♗d7 10 ♖b1 ♗a5 11 ♘ge2 b5 12 ♘c1 b4 13 ♘3e2 ♗fc8 14 g4 with a powerful attacking position for White: his line of pawns on the kingside has gone into action, whereas on the queenside Black's play has come to nothing, Rausis-A.Sokolov, Moscow 1992) 5 e5 ♗g7 (Black fails to solve his problems by 5...♘c6 6 ♘c3 ♘h6 7 ♘f3 ♗g4 8 ♗b5 ♗d7 9 h3 ♗xf3 10 ♗xf3 ♘f5 11 ♘e2 a6 12 ♗xc6 bxc6 13 g4, when the knight at f5 is deprived of its post) 6 ♘c3 ♘h6 7 ♗b3!? ♘c6 8 ♗e3 ♘f5 (Rausis-Dybowski, Lublin 1993), and here 9 ♗xd5!? was possible, retaining the advantage.

1.1 (1 e4 c5 2 c3)

2 ... e5



An idea of the Russian IM Filipenko. Black tries by direct means to prevent White from creating a pawn pair in the centre. However, the weakening of the light square complex (in particular d5 and f5) allows the opponent to develop comfortably.

3 ♘f3 ♘c6
4 ♗c4

The bishop takes up a good post from where it 'eyes' the f7 pawn.

4 ... ♗c7

After 4...♗e7 White is able to set up strong pressure: 5 d4 cxd4 6 cxd4 d6 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 ♗b3.

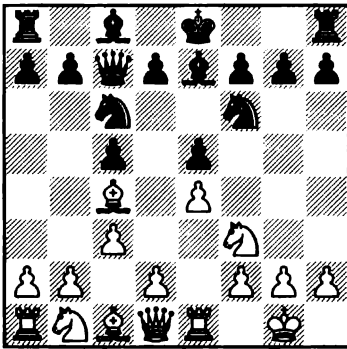
4...♘f6 has been played, but this too is insufficient: 5 ♘g5 d5 6 exd5 ♘xd5 7 ♗h5 g6 8 ♗f3 ♗e6 9 ♘xe6 fxe6 10 d3 (Okhotnik-Kapetanovic, Romania 1988). White has the two bishops and play against Black's pawn weaknesses, which gives him the advantage.

5 0-0 ♘f6

Note should be made of Smagin-Brendel (Dortmund 1993), where

5...♙e7 was refuted: 6 ♘g5! (a typical stroke in such positions) 6... ♙xg5 7 ♖h5 d5 8 exd5 ♙f4 9 dxc6 ♘f6 10 ♗e2 0-0 11 cxb7 ♙xb7 12 d3 e4 13 ♙xf4 ♗xf4 14 dxe4 ♘xe4 15 ♗e3, when White retained his extra pawn with a sound position.

6 ♖e1 ♙e7



7 d4!

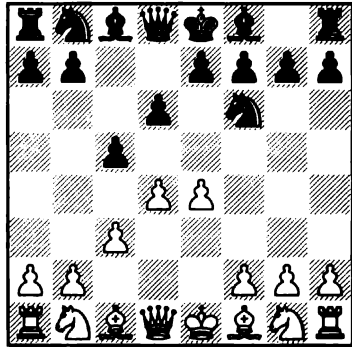
This active move sets Black definite problems.

After 7...cxd4 8 cxd4 ♘xd4 9 ♘xd4 exd4 10 e5! ♗xc4 11 exf6 gxf6 12 b3 ♗c6 13 ♙a3 (S.Arkell-Porsson, Reykjavik 1990) Black has a very difficult position. His king does not have a secure shelter, and all the open lines are controlled by the opponent.

7...d6! (Kalinichenko-Vysotsky, corr. 1995/6) is more accurate, agreeing after 8 d5 to territorial concessions, but retaining a solid position, although without any active counterplay. For example: 8...♘d8 9 ♙b5+ ♘d7 10 a4 0-0 11 a5 a6 12 ♙d3 ♘f6 13 ♘bd2±.

1.2 (1 e4 c5 2 c3)

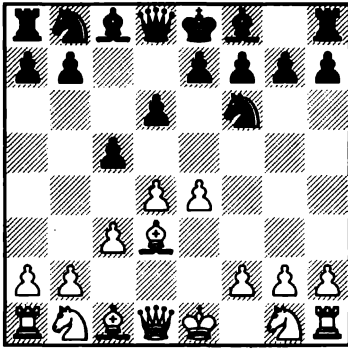
2 ... d6
3 d4 ♘f6



A relatively recent idea. Black attacks the e4 pawn and simultaneously prevents e4-e5.

3...cxd4 4 cxd4 ♘f6 is less accurate, since White acquires c3 for his knight. After 5 ♘c3 g6 (if 5...a6 6 ♙d3 e6 7 ♘f3 ♙e7 8 0-0 0-0 9 e5! dxe5 10 dxe5 ♘fd7 11 ♗e2 ♖e8 12 ♖d1 ♗c7 13 ♙f4, Handoko-Rojprapayont, Manila 1992, or 5...e6 6 ♘f3 ♙e7 7 ♙d3 ♘c6 8 ♗e2 0-0 9 e5, Van der Werf-B.German, Groningen 1990, White stands better – the pawn at e5 is very unpleasant for the opponent) 6 ♘f3 a6 7 h3 ♙g7 8 ♙d3 0-0 9 0-0 b5 10 e5 ♘e8 11 ♙e4 ♖a7 12 ♙e3 ♙b7 13 d5 ♖a8 14 e6 (Torre-Barcenilla, Bacolod 1991) White has the better chances. The pawn at e6 cleaves Black's position in two, seriously hindering the coordination of his forces.

4 ♙d3



The most popular move, enabling White to develop harmoniously. The main replies are 4...cxd4 (1.21), 4...c6 (1.22) and 4...g6 (1.23).

1.21 (1 e4 c5 2 c3 d6 3 d4 ♖f6 4 ♗d3)

4 ... cxd4
5 cxd4 g6

This variation is similar in character to the positions examined in the note to Black's 3rd move.

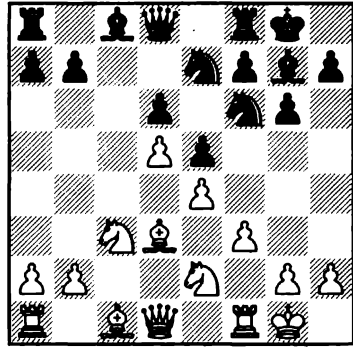
The attempt to put direct pressure on White's centre is unsuccessful: 5...c6 6 ♘f3 ♗g4 7 d5 ♘e5 8 ♘xe5! dxе5 (8...♗xd1 9 ♗b5+) 9 ♗b3± (Schmittiel-Yrjola, Gausdal 1987), while 5...e5 6 d5 transposes into lines examined below.

6 ♘e2

The knight is better placed here than at f3, where it will be attacked by the bishop from g4, but 6 f3 or 6 c3 is possible, also assuring White of an opening advantage.

6 ... ♗g7

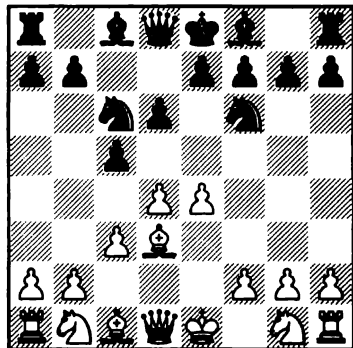
7 ♘bc3 0-0
8 0-0 ♘c6
9 f3 e5
10 d5 ♘e7



White's chances on the queenside outweigh Black's counterplay on the kingside, e.g. 11 ♗e3 ♘e8 12 ♗b3 f5 13 ♘b5 b6 14 a4 ♘f6 15 ♗b4 (Rozentalis-Smirin, Vilnius 1988).

1.22 (1 e4 c5 2 c3 d6 3 d4 ♖f6 4 ♗d3)

4 ... ♗c6



5 ♖f3

Here too 5 ♖e2 is possible, transposing into set-ups examined above.

5 ... ♗g4

Continuing the policy of pressure on the centre, which, however, does not produce the desired result.

But no better is 5...e5 6 d5!?) 6 0-0 ♗g7 7 d5 ♖b8 (Schmittiel-J.Arnason, St. Martin 1993), when 8 c4 would have consolidated White's territorial gains.

6 d5 ♖b8

6...♖e5 is met by the simple 7 ♖xe5!±, while 6...♗xf3 7 ♗xf3 ♖e5 is also inadequate: 8 ♗b5+ ♖ed7 9 0-0 g6 10 ♖d2 ♗g7 11 a4! (initiating a queenside bind) 11...0-0 12 a5 ♖e8 13 ♗h3 ♖d6 14 a6 b6 15 ♗e1 ♖c7 16 ♗c6 ♗b8 17 ♖f3± (Smagin-Borik, Germany 1993). Black is completely deprived of counterplay, whereas White is threatening a typical attack on the kingside (♗h6, ♖g5), and (after preparation) the central breakthrough e4-e5.

7 ♖bd2 g6

8 h3 ♗c8

8...♗xf3 simplifies the position somewhat, but also fails to solve Black's problems.

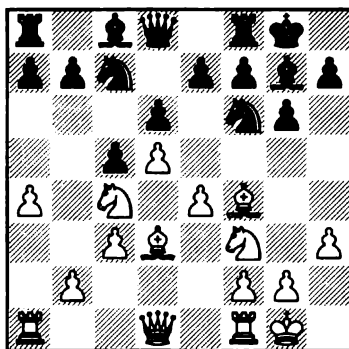
9 a4 ♗g7

10 ♖c4 0-0

11 ♗f4 ♖a6

12 0-0 ♖c7

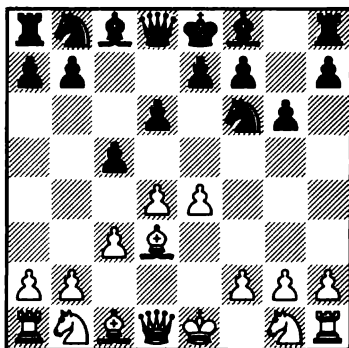
White deploys his pieces in the optimal way for play in the centre.



After 13 ♗e1 ♖ce8 14 ♗f1 b6 15 ♗c2 ♗b7 16 ♗ad1 it is not apparent how Black can 'get up off his knees' (Sveshnikov-Loncar, Bled 1994).

1.23 (1 e4 c5 2 c3 d6 3 d4 ♖f6 4 ♗d3)

4 ... g6



An attempt to develop the bishop at g7 without removing the pawn tension in the centre. However, White now has additional resources in the struggle for an advantage.

After 4...♚c7 the position of the queen has its drawbacks: 5 ♖f3 g6 6 0-0 ♗g7 7 ♗f4 0-0 8 ♘bd2 ♘bd7 9 ♜e1 e5 10 dxe5 dxe5 11 ♗g3 ♘h5 12 a4 b6 13 a5!± (Karpov-J.Polgar, Dos Hermanas 1994).

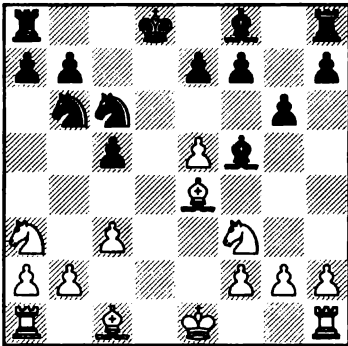
5 dxc5!? dxc5
6 e5 ♘d5

6...♗g4 is dubious in view of 7 ♗b5+ ♗d7 8 e6!

7 ♗e4

The point of White's play. Black is forced to exchange queens and go into a slightly inferior ending.

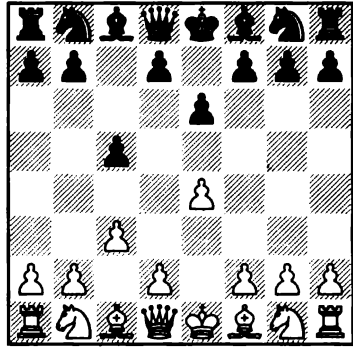
7 ... ♘b6
8 ♚xd8+ ♜xd8
9 ♘a3 ♘c6
10 ♘f3 ♗f5



This position was reached in Lautier-J.Polgar (Dos Hermanas 1994), where 11 ♗xc6 bxc6 12 ♗e3 ♗b8 13 0-0-0+ would have maintained White's advantage (Lautier).

1.3 (1 e4 c5 2 c3)

2 ... e6



Black sets up a pawn barricade along the lines of the French Defence.

3 d4 d5
4 exd5

If White does not wish to transpose into the French by 4 e5, he should go in for the isolation of the opponent's d-pawn.

4 ... exd5

By 4...♚xd5 Black can transpose into set-ups examined below in section 1.4.

5 ♗b5+

White is ready to isolate the opponent's pawn by dxc5, and exchanges favour the side playing against the 'isolani'.

5 ... ♗d7

The attempt to retain more pieces on the board also gives insufficient counterplay: 5...♘c6 6 ♚e2+ ♗e6 7 ♘f3 ♘f6 8 0-0 ♗d6 9 dxc5 ♗xc5 10 ♘d4 (the blockading square is occupied by the knight) 10...♚d7 11 ♗g5 ♘e4 12 ♗e3 0-0 13 ♘d2 ♘xd2 14 ♚xd2 ♗d6 15 ♜fe1 ♚c7

16 h3 (Barlov-Gallagher, Biel 1990). Black has no active counterplay, and the weakness of the d5 pawn may tell later, therefore White's chances are to be preferred.

6 ♖e2+ ♙e7

6...♗e7 is the alternative. After 7 ♙e3 cxd4 8 ♙xd7+ ♘xd7 9 ♙xd4 ♘gf6 10 ♘d2 ♗e6 11 ♗xe6+ fxe6 12 ♘gf3 ♙d6 13 0-0 0-0 14 ♗fe1 ♗fe8 15 ♘e5 White's chances are to be preferred (Machulsky-Wessman, New York 1990). He is blocking the black pawn couple (d5+e6), on which he will be able to exert unpleasant pressure.

7 dxc5 ♘f6

8 ♙e3

It is useful to take control of the key square d4, at the same time covering the queen and defending the c5 pawn.

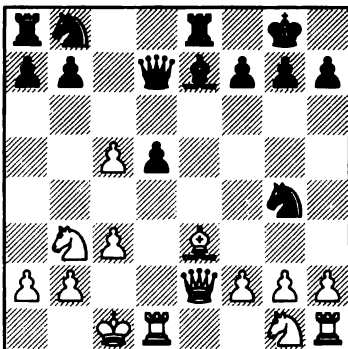
8 ... 0-0

9 ♘d2 ♗e8

10 ♘b3 ♘g4

11 ♙xd7 ♗xd7

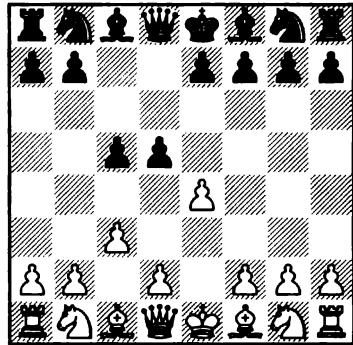
12 0-0-0



We are following the game Machulsky-Panchapagesan (Dublin 1991). After 12...♙g5 13 ♗d3 ♘c6 14 ♘f3 ♙xe3+ 15 fxe3 White has the better chances. It is not easy for Black to regain his pawn, and White's pressure on the d-file should not be underestimated.

1.4 (1 e4 c5 2 c3)

2 ... d5



One of Black's main replies. He tries to gain counterplay by activity in the centre, immediately bringing into play his 'heavy artillery' – the queen.

3 exd5 ♗xd5

3...♘f6 is risky, as the d5 pawn remains alive: 4 ♙b5+ ♘bd7 (or 4...♙d7 5 ♙xd7+ ♗xd7 6 c4 e6 7 ♗e2 ♙d6 8 ♘f3 0-0 9 dxe6±) 5 c4 a6 6 ♙xd7+!? ♙xd7 7 ♘f3 e6 8 ♗e2 ♙e7 9 dxe6 ♙xe6 10 0-0 ♙f5 (if 10...0-0, then 11 ♗d1 followed by d2-d4 is good) 11 ♗e1! ♙d3 12 ♗e5 (Smagin-Sveshnikov, Anantea

1995). Black still has to try and regain the c4 pawn, and the time spent on this will allow White to take the initiative.

4 d4

White plans to gain a pawn majority in the centre, not fearing the isolation of his d-pawn. On the basis of an 'isolani' the active side can often gain lively piece play with chances of an attack.

Black's main replies are 4...♘c6 (1.41) and 4...♙f6 (1.42).

Other tries:

4...g6 5 dxc5 (a typical way of gaining time – White exploits the early development of the opponent's queen) 5...♙xc5 6 ♙e3 ♙c7 7 ♘a3 ♘c6 8 ♘b5 ♙b8 9 ♘f3 ♙g7 10 ♙d2 ♘f6 11 ♙f4 e5 12 ♘d6+ ♙e7 13 ♘xe5 ♘xe5 14 ♙xe5 ♘e4 15 ♙f4 ♙xe5 16 ♙xf7+! ♙d8 17 ♘xe4 with a big advantage (Guido-Hulak, Balatonbereny 1993).

4...e5 5 dxe5! (again White exploits the opponent's 'developed' queen to gain time) 5...♙xe5+ (after 5...♙xd1+ 6 ♘xd1 ♘c6 White maintains the advantage with accurate play - 7 ♙f4 ♘ge7 8 ♘f3 ♙g4 9 ♙e2 ♘g6 10 ♙g3 0-0-0+ 11 ♘bd2 ♙e7 12 ♙c1 ♙he8 13 ♙el±, Seeger-Jukic, Germany 1992) 6 ♙e3 ♘f6 7 ♘f3 ♙c7 8 ♙b5+ (8 ♘a3!? is also good) 8...♘c6 9 ♙e2 ♙e6 10 ♘g5 0-0-0 11 ♘xe6 fxe6 12 ♘d2 h6 13 0-0-0 a6 14 ♙a4 b5 15 ♙c2, and White's chances are better, since Black has no compensation for his chronic weakness

at e6 (Sermek-Moatlhodi, Parana 1993).

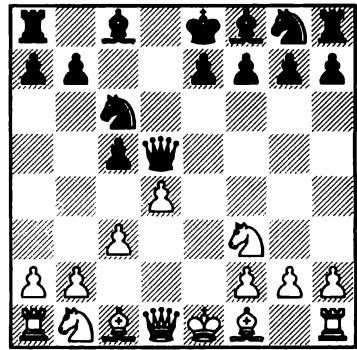
4...cxd4 5 cxd4 e5 (positions with ...♘c6 are considered later) 6 dxe5! ♙b4+ 7 ♘d2 with a lead in development.

1.41 (1 e4 c5 2 c3 d5 3 exd5 ♙xd5 4 d4)

4 ... ♘c6

Black intensifies the pressure on the d4 pawn.

5 ♘f3



Now Black faces a choice: whether to intensify the pressure on the critical d4 pawn - 5...♙g4 (1.411), relieve the tension in the centre - 5...cxd4 (1.412), or continue his development - 5...♘f6 (1.413).

We should mention straight away that 5...e5 does not solve his problems in view of 6 ♘xe5 ♘xe5 7 dxe5 ♙xe5+ 8 ♙e2 ♙g4 9 ♙e3, when White is somewhat ahead in development, giving him a slight advantage.

1.411 (1 e4 c5 2 c3 d5 3 exd5
 ♖xd5 4 d4 ♘c6 5 ♗f3)

5 ... ♗g4
 6 ♗e2 cxd4

After 6...e6 Black has to reckon with the idea of c3-c4: 7 h3 ♗h5 8 c4 (White also maintains good chances after 8 ♗e3) 8...♗d6 (even worse is 8...♗d7 9 g4! ♗g6 10 d5 exd5 11 cxd5 ♘b4 12 ♘e5 ♗xd5 13 ♗b5+ ♘d8 14 0-0 with a strong attack for White, Adamski-Schneider, Wroclaw 1981) 9 d5 ♗xf3 10 ♗xf3 ♘d4 11 ♘c3 ♘f6 12 ♗e3 e5 13 0-0 ♗e7 14 ♗xd4! (securing b5 for the knight, which in combination with d5-d6 may cause Black serious problems) 14...exd4 15 ♘b5 ♗d7 16 d6 ♗xd6 17 ♗xb7 ♗b8 (Vlasov-Obodchuk, Moscow 1995) and now, according to Chandler, 18 ♗e1+ ♗e7 19 ♗f3! 0-0 20 ♗c6 gives White the advantage. After 20...♗d8 21 ♗a3 a5 22 ♗f3 (with the unpleasant threat of ♘a7-c6) the difference in the activity of the pieces is obvious.

We must also mention that 6...0-0-0 should be answered by 7 ♗e3, when 7...e5 gives Black nothing after the simple reply 8 dxc5±.

7 cxd4 e6

7...e5 is insufficient here; after the natural 8 ♘c3 ♗b4 9 0-0 Black is forced to exchange on c3 - 9...♗xc3 10 bxc3 exd4 (or 10...e4 11 ♘d2 ♗f5 12 f3 exf3 13 ♗xf3 ♗d7 14 ♗a3, and the white bishops are dangerous) 11 ♘xd4 ♗d7 12 ♗f3

♗c5 13 a4 0-0-0 14 ♗b3 ♘h6 15 ♗b1 with mounting pressure for White (Chmelik-J.Ruiz, Rimavska Sobota 1992).

8 h3

It is useful to push back the bishop to h5, since it is unfavourable for Black to take on f3.

8 ... ♗h5
 9 ♘c3 ♗a5

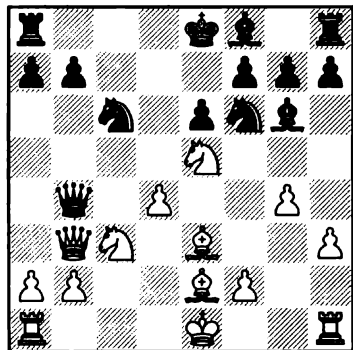
White can answer 9...♗b4 with 10 0-0 ♗a5 11 ♗d2 (or 11 a3!?) 11...♘f6 12 a3, forcing Black to retreat, and retaining the initiative.

After 9...♗d8 10 0-0 ♘f6 11 ♗e3 ♗e7 12 ♗b3 ♗b8 13 ♗fd1 0-0 14 g4 ♗g6 15 ♘e5 ♘b4 16 ♘xg6 hxg6 17 ♗f3 (G.Braun-Lehmann, Germany 1992) White has the better chances - he has the two bishops and pressure in the centre.

10 ♗b3

Putting the b7 pawn under fire.

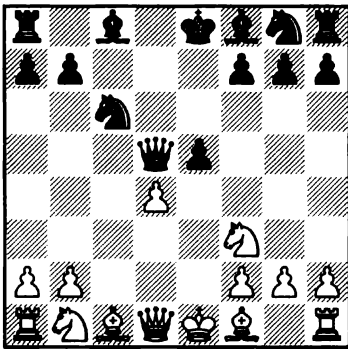
10 ... ♗b4
 11 ♗e3 ♘f6
 12 g4 ♗g6
 13 ♘e5



We are following the game Rozentalis-Helgason (Malme 1993), which continued 13...♔d6 14 ♖xb4 ♜xb4 15 0-0 0-0 16 h4! h6 17 ♜xg6 fxg6 18 ♔f3 with a clear advantage to White in the ending – he has the two bishops (the exchange on e3 merely strengthens the white pawns and is clearly inadvisable) and play against the e6 pawn.

1.412 (1 e4 c5 2 c3 d5 3 exd5
 ♖xd5 4 d4 ♜c6 5 ♜f3)

5 ... cxd4
 6 cxd4 e5



After stabilising the situation in the centre, Black is aiming to clear completely this part of the board.

6...♔g4 7 ♔e2 leads to position examined below (section 1.42).

The other possibility is 6...e6, which, however, does not promise equality after 7 ♜c3:

(a) 7...♔b4 8 ♔d3 ♜f6 9 0-0, and after 9...♖d8 10 ♔g5 h6 11 ♔h4

♔e7 12 ♜c1 a6 13 ♜e1 ♜b4 14 ♔b1 b5 15 ♜e5 White's pieces are better and more harmoniously developed (S.Arkill-L.Evans, London 1988);

(b) 7...♖d8, when GM Kharlov has demonstrated a good set-up - 8 ♔e2 ♜f6 9 0-0 ♔e7 10 ♔e3 (supporting d4, to make possible the typical manoeuvre ♜e5 and ♔f3) 10...0-0 11 ♜e5 ♜b4 12 ♔f3 ♜bd5 13 ♖b3 ♖a5 14 ♔g5 with powerful pressure (Kharlov-Bos-Słweciek, Holland 1993);

(c) 7...♖d6 (this retreat is therefore practically forced) 8 ♔e3 ♜f6 9 a3 ♔e7 10 ♖c2 a6 11 ♜c1 0-0 12 ♔d3 h6. 13 0-0 ♜d8 14 ♜fd1 (Markovic-Lazarevic, Yugoslavia 1993). White stands better – he controls more space, and has possibilities of play on both wings. With a large number of pieces on the board the weakness of the d4 pawn is not felt, and things may not get as far as an endgame.

7 ♜c3 ♔b4
 8 ♔d2 ♔xc3
 9 ♔xc3 e4

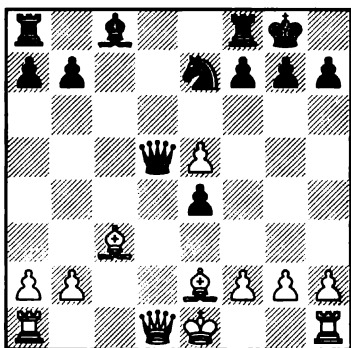
White has intensified the pressure on the critical e5 square and Black is forced to make concessions.

Exchanging in the centre - 9... exd4 10 ♜xd4 ♜g7 (or 10...♜xd4 11 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 12 ♔xd4 with advantage in the endgame) 11 ♜xc6 ♖xc6 12 ♔e2 0-0 (12...♖xg2 is dangerous in view of 13 ♔b5+ ♜c6 14 ♖e2+ ♔e6 15 0-0-0 ♜d8 16 ♜de1 with strong pressure) 13 0-0

♙e6 14 ♛d4 does not promise Black an easy life (Kavalek-Hermann, Bochum 1981).

10 ♘e5 ♘xe5
 11 dxe5 ♘e7
 12 ♙e2 0-0

The exchange of queens favours White: 12...♛xd1+ 13 ♜xd1 ♙e6 (13...0-0 14 ♙b4±) 14 ♙b5+ ♘c6 15 0-0!? ♙xa2 16 ♜fe1 ♙b3 17 ♜d6± – he has two bishops and pressure on the central open files.



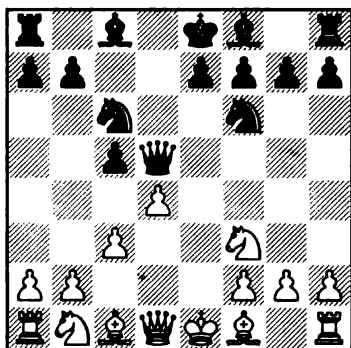
The critical position of the variation, which can be considered to favour White. He has two bishops, the possibility of quickly occupying the d-file, and the unpleasant e5 pawn, making it difficult for Black to defend his kingside. There can follow 13 0-0 ♙d7 (or 13...♛e6 14 ♛d4 ♛g6 15 ♜fe1 ♘c6 16 ♛e3 ♙f5 17 ♜ad1 ♜ad8 18 h4±, Smagin-Yagupov, Moscow 1995) 14 ♛c1! (vacating the d-file and preparing to switch the queen to the kingside) 14...♙c6 15 ♜d1 ♛e6 16 ♜d6 ♛f5 17 g4 ♛c8 18 ♛g5 ♛c7 (White also

has strong pressure after 18...♘g6 19 ♜ad1 h6 20 ♛e3 followed by ♛g3) 19 ♜ad1, and White's chances are clearly better (Van der Brink-Bezemer, Dutch Ch 1993).

1.413 (1 e4 c5 2 c3 d5 3 exd5 ♛xd5 4 d4 ♘c6 5 ♘f3)

5 ... ♘f6

Black continues his development, but in so doing he has to reckon with the fact that the c5 pawn is protected only by his queen.



6 ♙e3!?

An insidious plan – Black is invited to attack the bishop with ...♘g4 or to relieve the tension in the centre (6...cxd4), which favours White.

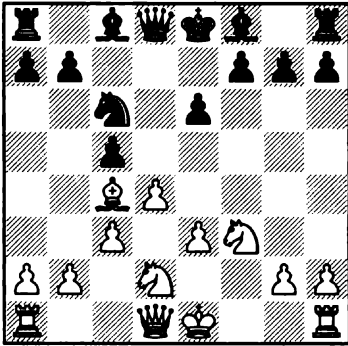
6 ... ♘g4

After 6...e5 7 dxe5 ♛xd1+ 8 ♘xd1 ♘g4 9 ♘a3 ♘xe3+ 10 fxe3 ♙g4 11 ♘c4 0-0-0+ 12 ♛e1 ♙e7 13 ♙e2 ♙e6 14 a4 White kept a slight advantage in Rozentalis-Emms (Bundesliga 1995).

7 ♖bd2 ♗xe3

This strengthens White's centre, but exchanging first by 7...cxd4 8 cxd4 ♗xe3 9 fxe3 e6 10 ♔d3 ♗e7 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♗e4 ♖d8 13 ♖c2 g6 14 ♗c4 also leaves Black with problems.

8 fxe3 e6
9 ♗c4 ♖d8

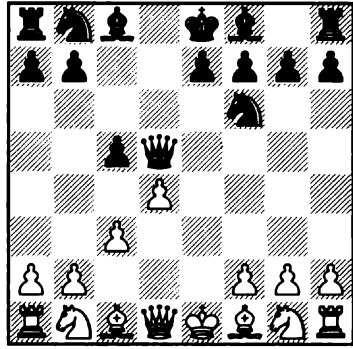


This is a position from the game Finkel-Sermek (Groningen 1993). By continuing 10 ♗e4! cxd4 11 exd4 ♗e7 12 0-0 0-0 13 ♖c2 b6 14 ♖ad1 White would have gained an appreciable advantage: the d4-d5 breakthrough is very much a reality, and in addition the opponent's king is insufficiently well defended.

1.42 (1 e4 c5 2 c3 d5 3 exd5 ♖xd5 4 d4)

4 ... ♗f6

The most popular reply. Black keeps open the possibility of varying his plans.



5 ♗f3 e6

The alternative 5...♗g4 leads to a slight weakening of the queenside, which may be exploited by White: 6 ♗e2 e6 7 h3 ♗h5, and now:

(a) 8 ♗e3 cxd4 9 cxd4 ♗c6 10 ♗c3 ♖d6 11 g4! ♗g6 12 ♗e5 ♗e7 13 0-0 0-0 14 ♗f4 ♖d8 15 ♗f3 with appreciable pressure (Adams-Topalov, Las Palmas 1994);

(b) 8 0-0 ♗c6 9 ♗e3 cxd4 10 cxd4 ♗b4!? 11 a3 ♗a5 12 ♗c3 ♖d6 (12...♖d7 can be met by 13 g4 ♗g6 14 ♗e5±) 13 ♗b5 ♖e7?! (more accurate is 13...♖b8, after which White's advantage is minimal) 14 ♗e5 ♗xe2 15 ♖xe2 0-0 16 ♖ac1 ♖ac8 17 ♗g5! and Black encountered problems (Deep Blue-Kasparov, New York 1996) – cf. *Illustrative Game No.1.*

6 ♗e2 ♗c6

If Black plays 6...♗e7, delaying the development of his queen's knight, White does best to reply with the typical 7 ♗a3 0-0 8 ♗b5 ♗a6 9 0-0 cxd4 10 cxd4 ♗d7 11

♟c3 ♖a5 12 ♞e5 ♜fd8 13 ♙f3, achieving the desired set-up, with positional pressure (Hort-Bokac, Germany 1992).

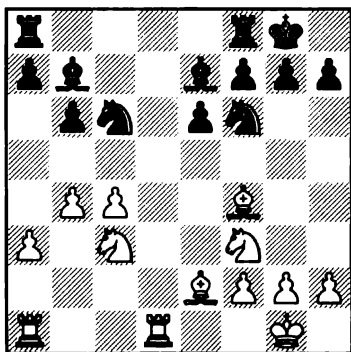
7 0-0 cxd4

Black transposes into a set-up where White has an 'isolani'.

If 7...♙e7 8 c4 White can reach a typical ending with a queenside majority, in which it is not easy for Black to obtain adequate play:

(a) 8...♜f5 9 ♞c3 cxd4 10 ♞xd4 ♞xd4 11 ♜xd4 e5 12 ♜d3 0-0 13 ♜xf5 ♙xf5 14 ♙e3 ♜fc8 15 ♜fd1 ♞g4 16 ♞d5± (Sveshnikov-Sunye, Moscow 1989);

(b) 8...♜d8 9 dxc5 ♜xd1 10 ♜xd1 ♙xc5 (the situation is not changed by 10...♞e4 11 ♙e3 ♞b4 12 ♞bd2 ♞xc5 13 ♞d4 e5 14 ♞4b3, when White's chances on the queenside are better than Black's on the kingside and in the centre, Ivanchuk-Petursson, Lucerne 1993) 11 ♞c3 0-0 12 a3 b6 (or 12...a5 13 ♙g5 a4 14 ♞d2 b6 15 ♜ad1±) 13 b4 ♙e7 14 ♙f4 ♙b7.



This is a position from the game Kharlov-Istratescu (Metz 1993), in which White demonstrated a clear way to consolidate his advantage: 15 ♞b5 ♜ad8 16 ♙c7! ♜xd1+ 17 ♜xd1 ♜c8 18 ♙d6 ♞f8 19 ♙xe7+ ♞xe7 20 ♞d6 ♜b8 21 b5. Black is condemned to a difficult defence without any real counterplay;

(c) 8...♜d7 9 ♞e5! ♜xd4 10 ♞xc6 ♜xd1 11 ♜xd1 bxc6 12 ♙f3 ♙b7 13 ♞c3 0-0 14 ♙e3 ♜fd8 15 b3 e5 16 ♞a4± (Afek-Redon, Paris 1993).

8 cxd4 ♙e7
9 ♞c3 ♜d6

The most popular continuation. Let us consider Black's other possibilities:

9...♜a5 10 ♙b5! (securing e5 for the knight) 10...0-0 11 ♞e5 ♞b4 12 ♜e2 a6 13 ♙c4 ♜d8 (it is difficult for Black to complete his queenside development - 13...b5 14 ♙b3 ♙b7? 15 ♞xf7!) 14 a3 ♞bd5 15 ♜d1, and White has the better chances: his pieces are harmoniously placed, and Black still has development problems (Tartakower-Gligoric, Amsterdam 1950).

9...♜d8 10 ♙e3 (a familiar procedure - White supports his base on d4 in order to follow up with ♞e5), and now:

(a) 10...♞d5 11 ♞xd5 ♜xd5 (the pawn structure 11...exd5 12 ♞e5 0-0 13 ♜b3 favours White) 12 ♞e5! ♞xe5 13 dxe5 ♜a5 (13...♜xe5 is dangerous in view of 14 ♙d4 ♜g5 15 f4 with a powerful attack) 14

♖d4 0-0 15 ♜fd1 ♜d8 16 ♜e4 ♜d5 17 ♙d4 and White retains the advantage (Vaulin-Groszpeter, Kecskemet 1993);

(b) 10...0-0 11 ♘e5 ♘b4 (the attempt to eliminate White's outpost at e5 leads to difficulties - 11...♘xe5 12 dxe5 ♘d7 13 f4 ♙c5 14 ♙xc5 ♘xc5 15 b4! ♜b6 16 ♜d4) 12 ♙f3 ♘bd5 (things are essentially unchanged by 12...♘fd5 13 ♜b3 ♘xc3 14 bxc3 ♘d5 15 c4±) 13 ♜b3 a5 (after 13...♘e3 14 fxe3 ♘d7 15 ♘c4 White retains some advantage - he has a strong pawn pair in the centre and pressure on the queenside, Sveshnikov-Andersson, Rio de Janeiro 1986) 14 ♜ac1 ♘xc3 15 bxc3 a4 16 ♜c2 ♘d5 17 c4 ♘b4 18 ♜b1 a3 19 ♜fd1 ♜c7 20 ♙f4 with a very strong bind for White (Sveshnikov-J.Polgar, Biel 1993).

10 ♘b5 ♜d8

The post at b8 is insecure 10...♜b8 11 g3 ♘d5 12 ♙c4 a6 13 ♙xd5 axb5 14 ♙f4!±.

11 ♙f4

Taking control of the h2-b8 diagonal.

11 ... ♘d5

Or 11...0-0 12 ♙c7! ♜d7 13 ♘e5 ♘xe5 14 dxe5 ♘d5 15 ♙d6, and White's outpost at d6 secures him a slight but enduring advantage (Yagupov-S.Kisilev, Orel 1994).

12 ♙g3 a6

The natural 12...0-0 is strongly met by 13 ♙c4! a6 (if 13...♜b6 14 ♜e2 a6 15 ♙xd5 axb5 16 ♙b3 ♙f6 17 ♜fd1, Barlov-Marjanovic, Yugo-

slavia 1982, or 13...♘b6 14 ♙c7 ♜d7 15 ♙xb6 axb6 16 ♜e2 ♜d8 17 ♜fd1, Sveshnikov-Dokhoian, Moscow 1983, with a clear advantage to White in both cases) 14 ♙xd5 axb5 (after 14...exd5 the invasion of the white knight is unpleasant - 15 ♘c7 ♜a7 16 ♜b3 ♙d6 17 ♙xd6 ♜xd6 18 ♜b6, and it is not easy for Black to complete his queenside development, J.Polgar-Lautier, Linares 1994) 15 ♙e4 b4 (or 15...♜a6 16 ♜e2 f5, Sveshnikov-Korchnoi, Biel 1993, and here 17 ♙xc6 bxc6 18 ♙f4 would have given White the advantage - Sveshnikov) 16 ♜e1 ♜a5 17 ♜c2, and Black's problems are obvious (Sveshnikov-Bukic, Bled 1994).

13 ♘c3 0-0

14 ♜c1

This is more accurate than 14 ♜b3 (which used to be considered the strongest) when 14...♘f6! puts pressure on the d4 pawn (no longer defended by the queen) and prevents White from carrying out the thematic regrouping ♘e5 and ♙f3. After 15 ♜ad1 (Kalinichenko-Oud, corr. 1995/6) Black made the strategic mistake 15...♘b4?! (15...b5!∞), and stood worse after 16 ♘e5.

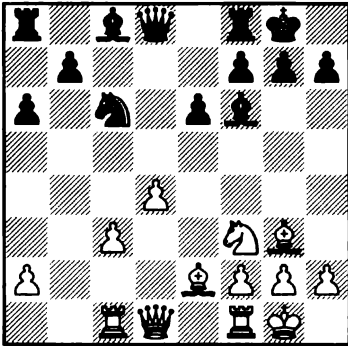
14 ... ♘xc3

14...♘f6 can be met by 15 a3 b6 16 ♘b5!?! axb5 (if 16...♙b7 White has the unpleasant 17 ♘c7! ♜a7 18 ♙xa6 ♙xa6 19 ♘xa6 ♘xd4 20 ♜xd4 ♜xd4 21 ♘xd4 ♜xa6 22 ♘c6, when he has a strong bishop

and a queenside pawn majority) 17 ♖xc6, when White's chances are preferable – Black's queenside pawns are weak, and after 17...b4 18 axb4 ♘d5 19 b5 ♙b7 20 ♖c4 he is unable to rid himself of his weak b5 pawn without losing material.

15 bxc3 ♙f6

15...b5 can be met by the typical 16 c4 (16 a4!? is also possible) 16...bxc4 17 ♙xc4 ♙b7 18 d5 exd5 19 ♙xd5±.

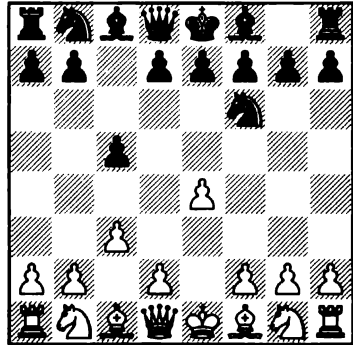


The critical position of this variation. White's chances are better – he has a solid position in the centre and good possibilities for active play on the queenside, and in some cases on the kingside, whereas Black has no active counterchances.

The game Chekhov-Korpeev (Moscow 1996) continued 16 ♙d3 (16 ♖b1 is also good, putting the rook on an active square) 16...b5 17 a4! bxa4 (17...b4? 18 ♙e4!±) 18 ♚xa4 ♙d7 19 ♚a3 with pressure for White. 19 ♚c2! h6 20 ♚e2 a5 21 ♚e4± was even stronger.

1.5 (1 e4 c5 2 c3)

2 ... ♘f6



As in the Alekhine Defence, Black provokes an advance of the white pawns, in order then to launch a counterattack on them. However, the situation here is more favourable for him than in the Alekhine Defence – he has made the useful move ...c7-c5, whereas the same cannot be said about White's c2-c3, since the pawn takes two steps to reach c4.

It must again be mentioned that in other lines it is hard for Black to equalise, and that 2...♘f6 is his most flexible and promising continuation.

3 e5 ♘d5
4 ♘f3

The most logical positional set-up, involving the rapid development of the kingside, and the one preferred by two of the leading practitioners of the Alapin Variation with White: Sveshnikov and Adams.

4 ... ♘c6

If 4...e6 White gains the advantage by 5 ♖c4 ♘b6 6 ♗b3 d5 7 d4 ♘c6 8 ♗g5 ♗e7 9 h4! h6 10 ♗xe7 ♜xe7 11 dxc5 (Sveshnikov). Black is unable to arrange swift play against the outpost e5 pawn, and he ends up in a cramped position.

5 ♖c4 ♘b6

6 ♗b3

The fashionable reply. If Black wishes to restrict the activity of this bishop, he has to advance his c-pawn, which is a slight positional plus for White – the undermining move b2-b3 becomes possible.

6 ... d5

Black begins counterplay in the centre, at the same time preparing to bring out his queen's bishop (a second way of neutralising the bishop at b3).

The alternative is 6...c4 7 ♗c2:

(a) 7...g6 8 ♘a3 d6 9 ♜e2 d5 10 h3 ♗g7 11 0-0 (Adams-Gelfand, Wijk aan Zee 1994). White has retained an advantage in the centre and controls more space, and his chances are to be preferred;

(b) 7...d6 (more interesting) 8 exd6 ♜xd6 9 0-0 ♗g4 10 ♖e1 ♘e5!? 11 ♜xe5! ♗xf3 12 ♜e1 ♗d5 (12...♗c6 is well met by 13 ♘a3 and ♘b5) 13 b3 e6 14 ♗a3 ♜c6 15 ♗xf8 ♜xf8 16 ♜g5 f6 with chances for both sides (Adams-Miladinovic, Belgrade 1994);

(c) 7...♜c7 8 ♜e2 g5!? (Torre-Ivanchuk, Yerevan 1996), and now Lunnan suggests 9 e6 (doubling

Black's pawns) followed by ♘xg5 with an unclear position.

7 exd6 ♜xd6

After 7...exd6 8 d4 ♗g4 (Ivanchuk-Kasparov, Dortmund 1992) White could have gained an advantage by 9 dxc5 dxc5 10 0-0 ♗e7 11 ♘a3 0-0 12 ♗f4! (Ivanchuk). The invasion at c7 in combination with ♘b5 may be unpleasant for Black.

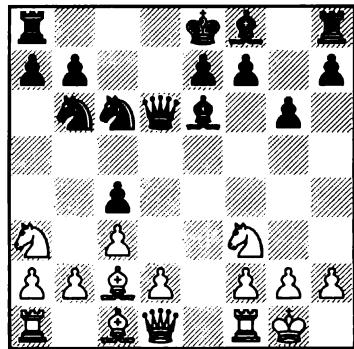
8 0-0 ♗e6

The alternative is 8...c4 9 ♗c2 g6 10 b3 ♗g7 11 ♘a3 cxb3!? (after 11...♗e6 12 ♜e2 cxb3 13 axb3 0-0 14 d4 ♘d5 15 ♗d2 White retains the advantage, Rozentalis-Watson, Germany 1995) 12 axb3 0-0 13 d4 ♗g4! 14 h3 ♗xf3 15 ♜xf3 e5 with chances for both sides (Lutz-Khalifman, Wijk aan Zee 1995).

9 ♘a3 c4

9...a6 is strongly met by 10 ♘g5!±.

10 ♗c2 g6



We are following the game Benjamin-Gavrikov (Horgen 1994),

where the continuation was 11 d4 cxd3 12 ♖b5 ♗d7 13 ♗xd3 ♗xd3 14 ♙xd3 0-0 15 ♙e2 a6 16 ♖bd4 ♖xd4 17 cxd4 f6 with approximate equality.

11 b3!? came into consideration, as in the variations considered above (compare the Rozentalis-Watson game).

Game 1 (p.20)
Deep Blue-Kasparov
New York, 1996

1 e4 c5
 2 c3

Even against such a giant of the Sicilian Defence as Kasparov, the Alapin Variation proves very dangerous.

2 ... d5

As is mentioned in the analysis, 2...♖f6 gives Black better chances of equalising, but the move chosen by Kasparov leads to more complicated play in the strategic sense, and demonstrates his readiness for a struggle.

3 exd5 ♗xd5
 4 d4 ♖f6
 5 ♖f3 ♙g4
 6 ♙e2 e6
 7 h3 ♙h5
 8 0-0 ♖c6
 9 ♙e3 cxd4
 10 cxd4 ♙b4

An interesting idea of Kasparov. The bishop is as though firing into thin air, but in fact after switching to

b6 it can put pressure on the d4 pawn.

Experience has shown that after 10...♙e7 11 ♖c3 ♗d6 12 a3 0-0 13 ♗b3 White's chances are better.

11 a3 ♙a5
 12 ♖c3 ♗d6
 13 ♖b5 ♗e7?!

This leads to a difficult position for Black. However, as mentioned in the analysis, it is also not easy to equalise after 13...♗b8 (14 b4 ♙b6 15 ♖e5!? ♙xe2 16 ♗xe2 ♖xe5 17 ♙f4).

14 ♖e5

A typical manoeuvre – White rids himself of the pressure of Black's light-square bishop and (after the exchange on e2), occupies the best square for his queen (e2), in order to post a rook at d1.

14 ... ♙xe2
 15 ♗xe2 0-0
 16 ♖ac1 ♖ac8
 17 ♙g5!

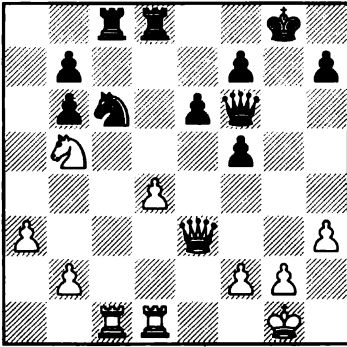
This pin is rather unpleasant – now Black inevitably incurs some pawn weaknesses.

17 ... ♙b6
 18 ♙xf6 gxf6
 19 ♖c4 ♖fd8

The d4 pawn is immune in view of the queen check at g4.

20 ♖xb6 axb6
 21 ♖fd1 f5
 22 ♗e3 ♗f6

Black has created the maximum pressure on the 'isolani', but now White carries out a typical breakthrough.



23 d5! ♖xd5
 24 ♗xd5 exd5
 25 b3!

White calmly removes this pawn from the line of fire and prepares to assail Black's queenside.

25 ... ♔h8?!

This natural move (the king moves away from a possible check at g5, and g8 is freed for the rook) is evidently the decisive mistake.

Smyslov suggested here the following regrouping: 25...♗d8! 26 ♗xb6 ♗d7 27 ♗e3 ♔g7, and with his passed d-pawn Black can hold on.

26 ♗xb6 ♗g8

27 ♗c5 d4
 28 ♖d6 f4

All Black's pawns are hopelessly weak and he has only faint hopes of a counterattack.

29 ♖xb7 ♖e5
 30 ♗d5 f3
 31 g3 ♖d3
 32 ♗c7!

A precise move. 32 ♗c6 (with gain of tempo) suggests itself, but then 32...♗g5! leads to unclear consequences. The text move takes aim at the f7 pawn.

32 ... ♗e8
 33 ♖d6 ♗e1+
 34 ♔h2 ♖xf2

Black has set up a mating construction, but it is White to move.

35 ♖xf7+! ♔g7

If 35...♗xf7 White wins by 36 ♗d8+ ♔g7 (36...♗e8 37 ♗xd4+) 37 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 38 ♗d5+ ♔g6 39 ♗xf3 d3 40 ♗xf2 ♗e2 41 ♔g2.

36 ♖g5+ ♔h6
 37 ♗xh7+

Black resigns

After 37...♔g6 there follows 38 ♗g8+ ♔f5 39 ♖xf3.

2

Scotch Game

1 e4 e5
2 ♟c3

This move order via the Vienna Game is the most advisable, as it rules out Philidor's Defence 2...d6, the sharp Latvian Gambit 2...f5 and also 2...d5, thereby significantly reducing Black's options. We consider 2...♟c6 (2.1) and 2...♞f6 (2.2).

2.1 (1 e4 e5 2 ♟c3)

2 ... ♟c6
3 ♞f3!

This transposes into the main line after 3...♞f6, or draws Black into the Three Knights Game, which does not promise him an easy life.

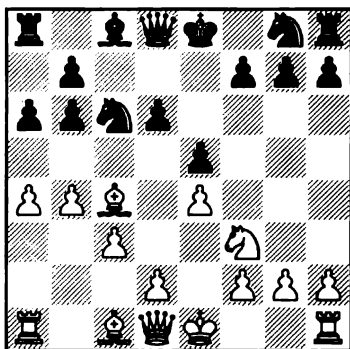
3 ... g6

The most topical move, although Black has several other tries:

3...f5, in the spirit of the Latvian Gambit, is risky. After 4 d4 fxe4 5 ♟xe5 ♞f6 6 ♟c4 d5 (or 6...♞e7 7 ♟g5!±) 7 ♞xd5! ♞xd5 8 ♞h5+ g6 9 ♞xg6 hxg6 (9...♞f6!? 10 ♟f7+! and wins) 10 ♞xg6+! ♟d7 11 ♟xd5 ♞e8 12 ♟f7 ♞e7 13 ♟g5 White has a great advantage (Breyer-Balla, Pistyan 1912).

3...♞e7 is passive: 4 ♟c4 ♞g6 5 d4 exd4 6 ♞xd4 ♟b4 7 0-0 ♟xc3 8 bxc3 0-0 9 f4 ♞a5 10 ♟d3, and it is not easy for Black to oppose the threatened attack on the kingside (Goldenov-Bakulin, Tbilisi 1965).

3...♟b4 (Spanish motifs by the second player) 4 ♞d5 ♟a5 (if 4...♟e7 the simplest is 5 d4 d6 6 ♟b5 exd4 7 ♞xd4 ♟d7 8 0-0 ♞f6 9 ♞e1 0-0 10 ♟xc6 bxc6 11 ♞xe7+ ♞xe7 12 ♟g5 with a stable advantage for White, Znosko-Borovsky-Alekhine, Pistyan 1922, or 4...♞f6 5 ♞xb4 ♞xb4 6 ♞xe5 ♞e7 7 d4 d6 8 a3± – White has retained the two bishops, which promise him an advantage in this open position) 5 c3 d6 (or 5...♞f6 6 d4 exd4 7 b4 followed by ♟g5±) 6 b4 ♟b6 7 a4 a6 8 ♞xb6 cxb6 9 ♟c4.

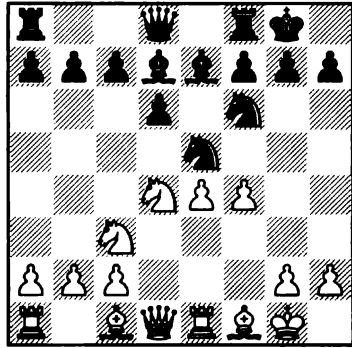


We are following a recommendation by Keres. White's slight but persistent advantage is undisputed – he has the two bishops and the better pawn formation.

3...♟c5 4 ♞xe5! (a typical combination, leading to an advantage for White) 4...♞xe5 (the seemingly

active 4...♙xf2+ 5 ♖xf2 ♜xe5 6 d4 ♜f6+ 7 ♖g1 ♜g4 is in fact weaker in view of 8 ♜d2!, defending d4 and f2, after which the black pieces will be driven back, while White retains a strong centre and two active bishops, e.g. 8...h5 9 h3 ♜4h6 10 ♜d5 ♜d8 11 ♜g5!±) 5 d4 ♙d6 (the most tenacious; after 5...♙xd4 6 ♜xd4 d6 7 f4 c5 8 ♙b5+ ♖f8 9 ♜d1 White has a clear advantage - Keres) 6 dxe5 ♙xe5 7 ♙d3 ♜h4 (7...d6 allows White easily to consolidate his advantage: 8 0-0 ♜h4 9 f4 ♙d4+ 10 ♖h1 ♙b6 11 ♙b5+ c6 12 ♙e2 ♜f6 13 f5 ♜xe4 14 ♜xe4 ♜xe4 15 ♜xd6, Verlinsky-Kubbel, USSR 1922) 8 ♙e3 ♜f6 9 g3 ♜g4 10 ♜xg4 ♙xc3+ 11 bxc3 ♜xg4 12 ♙d4 0-0 13 f3 ♜f6 14 e5 ♜d5 15 ♖f2 (Istratescu-Hauchard, Bucharest 1993).

3...d6 4 d4 ♙d7 5 ♙c4 exd4 6 ♜xd4 ♜f6 7 0-0 ♙e7 8 ♜el ♜e5 9 ♙f1 (the best square for the bishop in such positions) 9...0-0 10 f4.

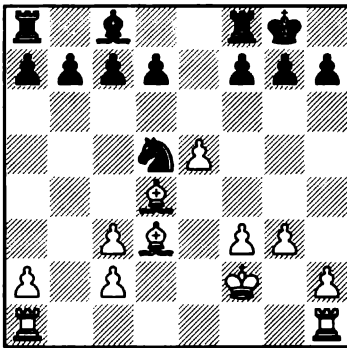


White, who controls more space, has the better chances. However, to transform this slight advantage into a win demands great mastery. This type of position was handled in virtuoso fashion by the German Champion Dr. Tarrasch, and it would be useful to examine his games on this theme.

4 d4 exd4
5 ♜xd4 ♙g7
6 ♙e3

White's plan is simple and logical – queenside castling and an attack with his pieces and pawns on Black's kingside, which has been weakened by the fianchetto. In contrast to similar set-ups, in the Dragon Variation for example, Black's counterplay is less effective, since the c-file is not open and his pieces are not so actively placed.

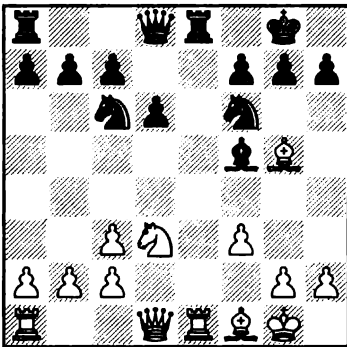
6 ... ♜f6



White has the better chances – he has a lead in development, while Black's knight has no central strong-point, and he has problems in completing his queenside development.

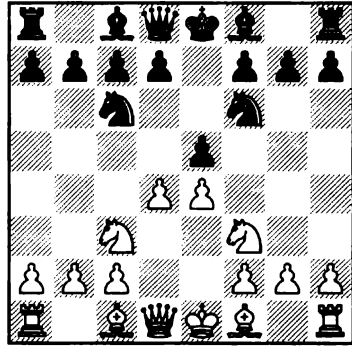
Black faces a choice: whether to go in for the main set-up with 3...♘c6, or to deviate with 3...♗b4.

After 3...♗b4 4 ♖xe5 0-0 5 ♗e2 ♗e8 6 ♘d3 ♗xc3 7 dxc3 ♘e4 8 0-0 d6 (or 8...d5 9 ♗e3 ♘d6 10 ♗e1 ♘d7 11 ♘f4 c6 12 ♘h5 ♘f8 13 ♗d3 ♗h4 14 g3 ♗g4 15 ♗e2 ♗g6 16 ♘f4, Istratescu-Mijailovic, Belgrade 1994; White's chances are better – he has the two bishops and more harmoniously placed minor pieces, whereas Black has to find a good post for his queen, which is not so easy) 9 ♗e1 ♘c6 10 ♗f1 ♗f5 11 f3 ♘f6 12 ♗g5 the game Lau-Raetsky (Switzerland 1994) reached the following position.



The pin on the f6 knight is rather unpleasant, as was shown by the further course of the game: 12...♘e5 13 ♗d2 (13 b3± is also good) 13...h6 14 ♗h4 g5 15 ♗f2 ♘d5 16 ♘xe5 dxe5 17 ♗ad1. The slight activity of Black's minor pieces is not sufficient compensation for his pawn weaknesses, and he stands worse.

3 ... ♘c6
4 d4



The basic position of the Four Knights Variation of the Scotch Game. White initiates active piece play in the centre, hoping to gain a slight advantage after the opening of the position thanks to his natural right of the first move. Black can defend with 4...♗b4 (2.21) or 4...exd4 (2.22).

2.21-(1 e4 e5 2 ♘c3 ♘f6 3 ♘f3 ♘c6 4 d4)

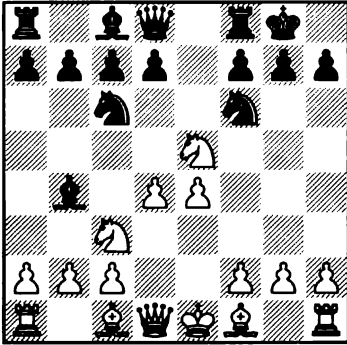
4 ... ♗b4

A sharp continuation that demands accuracy on the part of White. However, given correct play Black will be forced to make serious positional concessions (White's two bishops in an open position will become a powerful force).

5 ♘xe5

The most accurate response. White clears the way for his queen to go to the kingside.

5 ... 0-0



Black's other tries are:

5...♖xc3 6 ♗g4! (the target is the g7 pawn) 6...♘xc3 7 ♗xg7 ♜f8 8 a3, and now:

(a) 8...♘xd4 9 axb4 ♘xc2+ 10 ♔d2 ♘xa1 11 ♔xc3 a5 12 ♖c4 ♗e7 (or 12...axb4+ 13 ♔d2 d5 14 ♖b5+ c6 15 ♜e1+-, Polovodin-Gutman, Pavlovsk 1987) 13 ♜e1! ♗xb4+ 14 ♔d3 d5 15 ♘xf7+! ♗xe1 16 ♘d6+ cxd6 17 ♖b5+ ♔d8 18 ♖g5+- (Diaz-Rodriguez, Cuba 1981) – this variation is highly tactical, but absolutely unacceptable for Black;

(b) 8...♖a5 9 ♘xc6 dxc6 10 ♗e5+ ♗e7 11 ♗xe7+ ♔xe7 12 ♖d2 (this pin is the idea behind the move 8 a3) 12...♖f5 13 bxc3! ♖xc2 14 c4 ♖xd2+ 15 ♔xd2 ♖g6 16 h4 h6 17 ♜h3 (Nadyrhanov-Safin, Bishkek 1993). White has a clear advantage – he has a pawn majority on the kingside (in this respect Black is disadvantaged by his doubled pawns on the queenside), which effectively

gives him an extra pawn in the endgame.

5...♖xc3+ (a comparatively new idea) 6 bxc3 ♗e7 7 ♘xc6 ♗xe4+ 8 ♖e2 dxc6 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♜b1 ♜e8 11 ♖d3 ♗h4 12 ♗f3 ♖g4 13 ♗f4 ♘d5 14 ♗d2 b5 15 a4 a6 16 c4 bxc4 17 ♖xc4 ♖f5! 18 ♜b7 ♖e4 and, although a pawn down in this ending with opposite-colour bishops, Black was able to hold the position (Rublevsky-Svidler, St Petersburg 1994). However, during the course of this game too Black had to solve some difficult problems, and besides, White's possibilities are not exhausted by the example given. Also possible is 8 ♗e2!? dxc6 9 ♖f4!, when Black still has to solve the problem of neutralising the white bishops.

5...♗e7 6 ♗d3! (a multi-purpose move; typical of this type of position; the queen supports the e4 pawn, clears the way for queenside castling, and will also be very useful on the third rank – from g3 it can exert strong pressure on Black's castled position) 6...♘xe5 7 dxe5 ♗xe5 8 ♖d2 0-0 9 0-0-0 d6 10 f4 ♗e7 (10...♗e6 can be met by 11 ♜e1 ♖xc3 12 ♖xc3 ♗xa2 13 ♖xf6 gxf6 14 ♗g3+ ♔h8 15 ♗c3 ♗e6 16 ♖c4 ♗e7 17 e5! with a very strong attack - Rublevsky) 11 ♜e1 ♜e8 12 ♗g3 with powerful pressure (Rublevsky-Onischuk, Moscow 1994) – cf. *Illustrative Game No.2*.

5...♘xe5 6 dxe5 ♘xe4 7 ♗g4 ♘xc3 8 ♗xb4 ♘d5 9 ♗g4±.

Black's difficulties are obvious.

6 ♖d3

Here too this familiar idea is considered best.

6 ... ♜e8
7 ♘d2 ♘xd4

An interesting tactical possibility, based on the fact that the knight at e5 is insufficiently well defended.

After 7...d5 8 ♘xc6 bxc6 (if 8...dxe4 9 ♖c4!) 9 e5 c5 10 0-0-0 ♘g4 11 ♙e1 ♖g5+ 12 ♚b1 ♜b8?! 13 f4 (Yurtaev-Kochiev, USSR 1979) White gained a solid advantage. But 12...♙f5, recommended by theory, also fails to give real counterplay: 13 ♖e2 cxd4 14 f4! ♖gd5±.

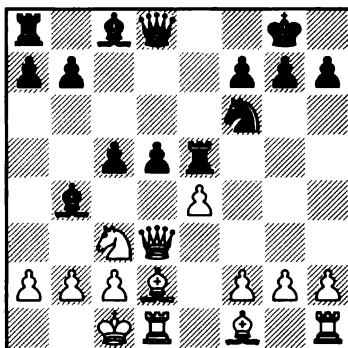
7...♘xe5 has also been played. Kristensen-Plachetka (Denmark 1993) went 8 dxe5 ♜xe5 9 0-0-0 d6 10 f3 ♘d7 11 a3 ♙c5 12 ♙f4 ♜e8 13 g4 (White is the first to begin active play against the enemy king) 13...b5 (a desperate counter-attacking attempt) 14 ♘xb5 ♜b8 15 ♘d4 a5 16 ♘b3, and Black had no compensation for the sacrificed pawn.

8 ♖xd4 c5
9 ♖d3

The main continuation. However, our analysis of this position suggested an interesting alternative: 9 ♖d6!? ♙xc3 10 ♙xc3 ♘xe4 11 ♖d3 ♘xc3 12 ♖xc3 f6 13 0-0-0 ♜xe5 14 f4! with excellent play for the pawn – the black rook, forced to try and guard the c5 pawn, is very awkwardly placed.

9 ... ♜xe5
10 0-0-0 d5

10...d6 is well met by 11 f3, with a clear advantage.



The critical position of the variation. The game Estevez-Espinosa (Havana 1992) continued 11 exd5 ♙g4 12 ♖g3 ♘xd5 13 ♘xd5 ♖xd5 14 ♖b3 ♖xb3 15 axb3 ♙xd1 16 ♘xd1 ♜d8 17 ♙d3 ♘g4 with approximate equality.

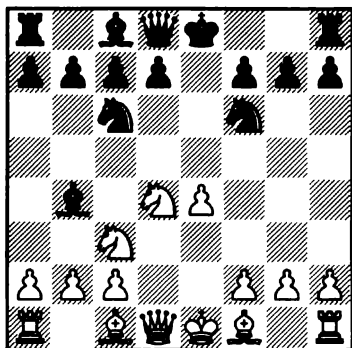
An attempted improvement for White was made in the game Borgo-Arlandi (Filettino 1994): 11 ♘xd5 ♘xd5 12 ♙xb4 cxb4 13 f4!? ♜e7 14 ♖xd5 ♜d7 15 ♖h5, and White retained his extra pawn.

2.22 (1 e4 e5 2 ♘c3 ♘f6 3 ♘f3 ♘c6 4 d4)

4 ... exd4
5 ♘xd4 ♙b4

Black's main idea in the Scotch Game is to eliminate the central white pawn by exchanging it for his d-pawn after ...d7-d5. For this 5...

♙b4 is the most logical, intensifying the pressure on the e4 pawn and the d5 square.



Let us consider Black's other possibilities:

5...d6 6 ♙e2 (6 ♙b5 is also good, transposing into a favourable variation of the Steinitz Defence to the Ruy Lopez) 6...♙e7 7 0-0 0-0 8 f4 ♙d7 9 ♙f3± (Honfi-Lokvenc, Varna 1962). Black is somewhat cramped, which gives White a slight advantage.

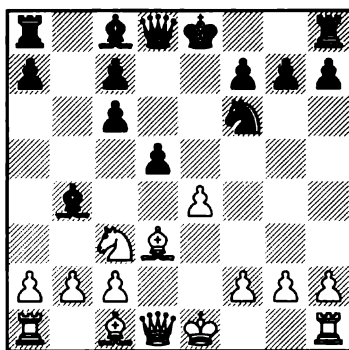
5...♙c5 6 ♘xc6 bxc6 7 ♙d3 d6 (Black chooses restrained strategy in the centre, relying on a flank diversion; 7...d5 8 exd5 cxd5 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♙g5 ♙e7 is considered on p.36) 8 0-0 ♘g4 (8...0-0 9 ♘a4±) 9 ♙f4 g5 10 ♙d2 ♗f6 11 ♗e2 ♗e5 (Black tries to attack without sufficient justification; not surprisingly, this attempt is easily parried by White) 12 g3 ♗e6 13 ♘a4 ♙d4 14 c3 ♗h6 15 h4 ♙f6 16 e5! (Miles-Sorin, Cuba 1995). It is time for Black to resign – material loss is inevitable.

5...♘xe4 (a clever attempt to solve Black's problems by tactical means) 6 ♘xe4 ♗e7 7 f3 d5 8 ♙b5 ♙d7 (the forcing play revolves around White's pinned knight) 9 ♙xc6 bxc6 10 0-0 dxe4 11 fxe4 g6 12 ♘b3 ♙g7 13 ♙e3 ♙e6 (13...♗xe4? 14 ♗xd7+!) 14 c3 (also possible is 14 ♙d4 ♙xd4+ 15 ♗xd4 0-0 16 ♗c5±, Todorov-Delchev, Bulgaria 1995) 14...♙c4 15 ♗f2± (Pukshansky-V.Ivanov, Leningrad 1974). The black king is stuck in the centre, and this gives White the advantage.

6 ♘xc6 bxc6

6...♙xc3+ is not altogether in the spirit of the variation – White gains the two bishops and a slight initiative, which outweigh his queenside pawn weaknesses: 7 bxc3 dxc6 8 ♗xd8+ ♙xd8 9 ♙g5 h6 10 0-0-0+ ♙e7 11 ♙h4 g5 12 ♙g3 ♙e6 13 f3±

7 ♙d3 d5



The most logical continuation. After other moves White's chances

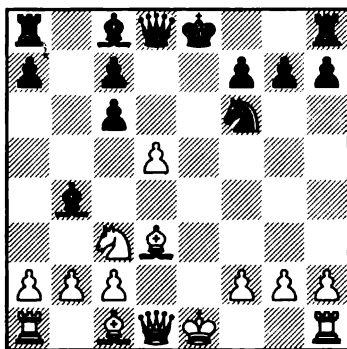
of gaining an advantage are increased:

7...d6 8 0-0 ♖e7 (Black adopts tactics of passive restraint; after 8...♗g4 9 h3! ♕e5 10 ♗a4 ♗xd3 11 ♖xd3 ♗b7 12 c4 0-0 13 ♗f4± it is hard for him to equalise, as attempted pawn advances on the queenside lead merely to the creation of weaknesses, while 8...0-0 can be met by a plan that is quite typical for such set-ups – 9 ♗a4 ♗b7 10 c4±) 9 h3 0-0 10 ♖f3 ♗d7 11 ♖g3 ♖e8 12 ♗d2 ♗c5 13 ♖ae1 a5 14 ♗c4± (V.Georgiev-Dobrev, Bulgaria 1995). White's pieces are harmoniously placed, and he has the initiative.

7...0-0 8 0-0 ♖e8 9 ♗g5 h6 10 ♗h4 g5 (Black chooses a risky plan to eliminate the pin on his knight; safer is 10...♗e7 11 ♖e1 or 10...d6 11 f4 ♗b7 12 ♗e2!, with a position along the lines of the Steinitz Defence to the Ruy Lopez, where White has a slight but enduring advantage) 11 ♗g3 d6 12 e5 dxe5 13 ♗xe5 ♗g4 14 ♗g3 f5 15 h3 ♗f6 (Pomar-Ljubojevic, Las Palmas 1974), when the strong and logical 16 f4! would have given White the advantage – the opening of the position in the vicinity of his king is dangerous for Black.

8 exd5

Black is at the cross-roads: he can play 8...♖e7+ (2.221), aiming for simplification, or 8...cxd5 (2.222), which leads to a more complicated game.



After 8...♗xd5 9 0-0 ♗xc3 10 bxc3 ♗e7 (forced, since the risky 10...♗xc3 11 ♗a3! ♗xa1 12 ♖xa1 ♖f6 13 ♖e1+ ♗e6 14 ♖e4 allows White a dangerous attack) 11 ♖f3 0-0 12 ♗f4 White has strong pressure (Fish-Zvyagintsev, USSR 1990).

2.221 (1 e4 e5 2 ♗c3 ♗f6 3 ♗f3 ♗c6 4 d4 exd4 5 ♗xd4 ♗b4 6 ♗xc6 bxc6 7 ♗d3 d5 8 exd5)

8 ... ♖e7+

At one time it was thought that this continuation enabled Black to solve his opening problems, but subsequent experience has not confirmed this opinion.

9 ♖e2 cxd5

Having ensured the exchange of queens, Black repairs his queenside pawns.

Other tries:

9...♗xd5 10 ♖xe7+ ♗xe7 11 a3 ♗xc3+ (the pin cannot be maintained – 11...♗a5 12 b4 ♗xc3

13 bxa5 ♖d5 14 0-0±, or 12... ♖b6
 13 ♖e2 ♖f6 14 ♖b2 ♖d8 15 0-0 a5
 16 bxa5 ♖xa5 17 a4 ♖a6 18 ♖c3,
 and White effectively has an extra
 passed a-pawn, Pugachev-Notkin,
 Russia 1993) 12 bxc3 ♖e6 13 0-0
 f6 (Lautier-Karpov, Biel 1992) and
 here, as shown by Karpov, White
 could have retained the advantage
 by 14 ♖d2 ♖f7 15 ♖fb1 ♖ab8 16
 ♖b3.

9... ♖xe2+ 10 ♖xe2, and now:

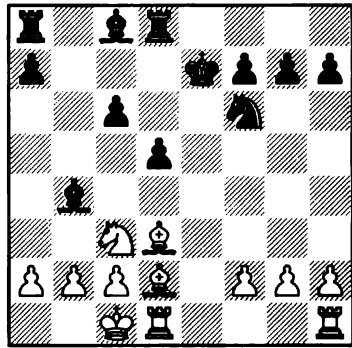
(a) 10...cxd5 (this allows White to
 'activate his knight') 11 ♖b5 ♖a5 (in
 the old game Spielmann-Lasker,
 Moscow 1935, Black preferred
 11...♖d8, but this did not get him
 out of his difficulties: 12 ♖d1 c6 13
 c3 ♖e8+ 14 ♖f1 ♖f8 15 ♖d4±) 12
 ♖f4 c5!? 13 ♖c7 ♖xc7 14 ♖xc7+
 ♖d8 15 ♖xa8 c4 with an unclear
 game – the knight at a8 is trapped,
 and the bishop at d3 has no retreat.
 White does better to play 13 ♖d6+
 ♖e7 14 ♖xc8+ ♖axc8 15 c3±,
 satisfying himself with the
 advantage of the two bishops;

(b) 10...♖xd5 11 ♖xd5 cxd5 12
 ♖b5+ ♖d7 13 ♖xd7+ ♖xd7 14
 ♖e3 ♖e6 (or 14...♖a5 15 ♖ac1
 ♖ab8 16 b3 ♖c3 17 ♖hd1 c6 18
 ♖d3, with c2-c4 to follow,
 Rublevsky-Alexandrov, Oakham
 1992) 15 ♖ac1 ♖hd8 16 ♖hd1 ♖a5
 17 c4 dxc4 18 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 19 ♖xc4±
 (Yandemirov-Arkipov, Elista
 1994). White has maintained a
 minimal advantage in the endgame –
 Black's isolated a- and c-pawns are
 weak.

10 ♖xe7+

White prevents Black from
 castling and prepares to castle
 queenside, thereby emphasising that
 the position still has middlegame
 features.

10 ... ♖xe7
 11 ♖d2 c6
 12 0-0-0 ♖d8



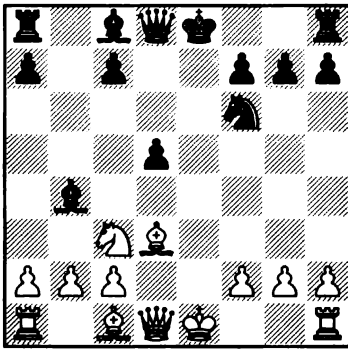
In the game Radulov-Pinter
 (Pernik 1978) White chose 13 ♖a4,
 and after 13...♖d6 he seized control
 of c5 by 14 ♖e3 and gained the
 advantage. However, Black could
 have played more strongly -
 13...♖xd2+! 14 ♖xd2 ♖d6, when
 nothing real for White is apparent –
 the c5 square is under Black's
 control.

White played more accurately in
 the game Kalinichenko-Schebenyuk
 (corr. 1993/4): 13 ♖he1+! ♖f8 14
 ♖e4 with advantage. Indeed, after
 14...♖xd2+ 15 ♖xd2 c5 16 ♖b3
 the black pawns are in danger, while
 14...♖e7 15 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 16 ♖a5!
 ♖e8 17 ♖b4+ ♖e7 18 ♖xe7 ♖xe7

19 ♖e1 ♗e6 20 ♗xh7! leads to a difficult position.

2.222 (1 e4 e5 2 ♘c3 ♘f6 3 ♘f3
 ♘c6 4 d4 exd4 5 ♘xd4 ♗b4 6
 ♘xc6 bxc6 7 ♗d3 d5 8 exd5)

8 ... cxd5



The main line of the opening. Black has thematically developed his pieces and exchanged White's central pawn, but it is too early to talk of complete equality – White still holds the initiative. He has the possibility both of active play on the kingside (the manoeuvre of his knight to f5 via e2 and d4 will strengthen his attacking potential), and of attacking Black's central pawns by c2-c4, creating favourable conditions for play on the queenside.

9 0-0 0-0

The security of the kings is an important strategic principle in open positions.

10 ♗g5 c6

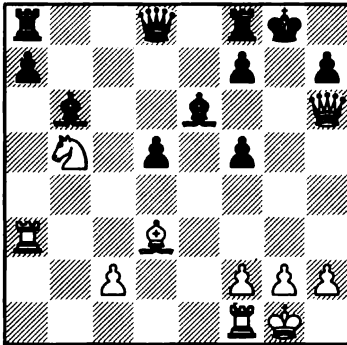
This old continuation, securely defending the d5 pawn, is the most reliable.

The exchange on c3 looks dangerous – 10...♗xc3 11 bxc3 h6 (or 11...♖d6 12 ♗xf6 ♖xf6 13 ♖h5±, Maroczy-Rubinstein, 1929) 12 ♗h4 ♖d6 13 ♖f3 ♗g4 14 ♖g3 ♖xg3 15 ♗xg3 (going into the endgame has not brought the desired relief – the white bishops are dangerous) 15...♗e4 (a clever attempt; after 15...c6 16 f3 ♗e6 17 ♗a6 ♗c8 18 ♗xc8 ♖fxc8 19 ♖ab1 ♗d7 20 ♖fe1 the main squares are in White's possession, and he has an obvious advantage, Kimelfeld-Marszalek, Prague 1966) 16 ♗xc7 ♘xc3 17 f3 ♗d7 18 ♖f2 ♗b5 19 ♗e5 ♖ac8 and Black gained equal chances (Svidler-Smyslov, Moscow 1992), but 17 ♖fe1! would have set him more difficult problems: his knight at c3 is out of play (even if only temporarily) and White has two active bishops (17...d4 18 ♗e5 ♖fd8 19 ♗a6±).

10...♗e7 allows the forcing line 11 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 12 ♖h5 g6 13 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 (or 13...♗e6 14 ♖c6!?±) 14 ♘d5 ♗xb2 15 ♖ab1 ♗e5 16 ♖fe1 ♗d6 17 ♘f6+ ♖g7 18 ♘e8±.

10...♗e6 is often played, when the best reply is Bastrikov's move 11 ♘b5! (the knight aims for d4 from where it will control the maximum number of squares) 11...c5 (after 11...♗e7 White advantageously exchanges the knight at e6 – 12 ♗f4 c5 13 ♘c7 ♖c8 14 ♘xe6

fxe6 15 ♖e2 ♜c6 16 c3±, Vatnikov-Solntsev, USSR 1962) 12 a3 (White combines play against the bishop at b4 with pressure on the kingside) 12...♙a5 13 b4 cxb4 (13...a6 is strongly met by 14 ♘d4!±, and 13...♙b6 is also insufficient - 14 c3 ♜c8 15 bxc5 ♙xc5 16 ♘d4 ♙e7 17 ♜e1 ♜xc3 18 ♜xe6 fxe6 19 ♘xe6 ♖b6 20 ♘xf8 ♙xf8 21 ♙c2±, Svidler-Purgin, St Petersburg 1993; White's chances on the kingside cannot be underestimated) 14 ♖e1!? (White's queen joins the play on the kingside) 14...bxa3 (after 14...♖b8 15 ♙xf6 gxf6 16 axb4 ♙b6 17 ♖d2± the two bishops cannot compensate for Black's pawn weaknesses) 15 ♙xf6 (the tactical point of White's play) 15...gxf6 16 ♖e3 ♙b6 17 ♖h6 (17 ♘d4!? is also good) 17...f5 18 ♜xa3.



White has excellent compensation for the pawn (Yakovich-Ernst, Gausdal 1991).

11 ♖f3 h6!?

Black's other tries:

11...♖d6 12 h3 ♜e8 13 ♜fe1 ♙d7 14 ♙f4 ♜xe1+ 15 ♜xe1 ♖f8 16 ♙e5 and White has a serious initiative (West-Handoko, Sydney 1991).

11...♙e7 12 h3! (a typical way of restricting the mobility of Black's light-square bishop) 12...♘d7 13 ♙xe7 ♖xe7 14 ♜fe1 ♖g5 (after 14...♖f6 15 ♖xf6 ♘xf6 16 ♘a4 White succeeds in blockading the c6-d5 pawn pair, which gives him the advantage) 15 ♘a4! ♖h4 16 c4 dxc4 17 ♙e4 ♜b8 18 ♙xc6 ♘f6 19 ♜e7 ♙e6 20 ♜xa7 ♖d4 21 ♜a5 ♜fd8, and Black has some compensation for the pawn (Chandler-R.Mainka, London 1994). More accurate is 16 b3 ♘f6 17 ♜e3± (Gutman).

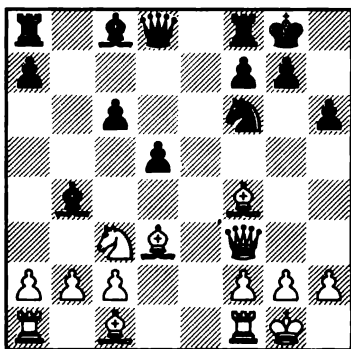
11...♙d6 12 ♜fe1 ♜b8 (12...h6 13 ♙f4 leads to the main line) 13 ♘a4 h6 (after 13...♙b4 14 b3 ♜g4 15 ♙xf6 ♖xf6 16 ♖xf6 gxf6 17 ♜ad1 ♘h8 18 c4± Black has no compensation for his pawn weaknesses, Nunn-G.Gildardu, London 1994) 14 ♙xf6 ♖xf6 15 ♖xf6 gxf6. We are following the game Nunn-Sulskis (Moscow 1994). Now 16 b3 ♙e6 17 c3! followed by 18 ♜ac1 and c3-c4 would have led to some advantage for White (Gutman).

12 ♙f4!?

The modern way of handling this variation. White exchanges the dark-square bishops, leaving Black with a passive light-square bishop.

Experience has shown that nothing is achieved by the exchange

on f6: 12 ♖xf6 ♜xf6 13 ♜xf6 gxf6
 14 ♖e2 (14 ♖a4!? comes into
 consideration) 14...c5 15 ♖f4 ♖e6
 16 ♖e2 c4 17 ♖f3 ♖ad8 18 c3
 ♖d6!= (Tisdall-Morris, Gausdal
 1992). Black's pawns are securely
 defended and his pieces are
 harmoniously placed.

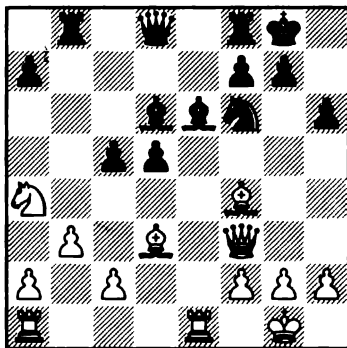


12 ... ♖d6
 13 ♜fe1 ♜b8
 14 ♖a4 c5

The best way for Black to arrange
 his central isolated pawn pair – by
 placing them side by side, he is
 ready to meet c2-c4 with ...d5-d4.

15 b3 ♖e6

The critical position of the
 variation (see diagram next column).
 Black has deployed his pieces well
 and White has only a microscopic
 advantage. The game Sutovskij-
 Davies (Rishon le Zion 1995)
 continued 16 h3 ♜b4 17 ♖xd6
 ♜xd6 18 ♖ad1 ♜c8 19 c3 ♜bb8 20
 ♖f5, and White still had a slight
 initiative, but it was hard to
 transform it into anything real.



We think, nevertheless, that the
 choice of the Scotch Game as a
 main opening weapon is a good one
 – Black has to overcome many tests,
 and the limit of his ambitions is a
 draw.

Game 2 (p.31)
Rublevsky-Onischuk
Moscow Olympiad 1994

1 e4 e5
 2 ♖f3 ♖c6
 3 ♖c3 ♖f6
 4 d4 ♖b4
 5 ♖xe5 ♜e7

As is shown in the analysis, other
 tries also do not promise equality.

6 ♜d3 ♖xe5
 7 dxex5 ♜xe5
 8 ♖d2 0-0
 9 0-0-0 d6

White's chances are definitely
 better. He has available the typical
 plan of an attack with his e- and f-
 pawn pair, which in combination
 with his superiority in the centre and

the harmonious placing of his pieces is very dangerous for Black.

10 f4 ♖e7

10...♗e6 is considered in the analysis.

11 ♖e1 ♖e8

12 ♗g3 c6

Black covers the d5 square and prepares the possible transference of his bishop to c7. The main problem in this type of position is the complete absence of counterplay, which makes defending a difficult and thankless task.

13 ♖d3 ♘d7

14 a3 ♖a5

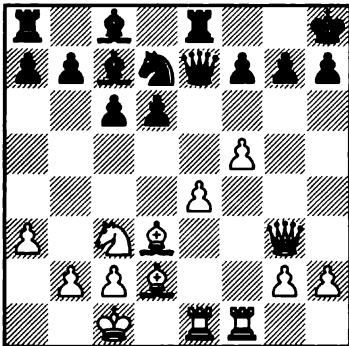
15 ♖hf1

White methodically strengthens his position, preparing for the storming of Black's kingside.

15 ... ♖c7

15...♘c5 is unpleasantly met by 16 ♖e2 ♖c7 17 ♖h5!

16 f5 ♖h8?!



This allows White to carry out a brilliant attack. Rublevsky suggests that 16...f6 17 ♖c4+ ♖h8 was a

tougher defence, but we should mention that 18 ♘e2 (also recommended by him) leaves White with a considerable advantage (the threat of playing the knight via f4 to g6 is rather unpleasant).

17 f6!

A typical way of breaking up the castled position.

17 ... gxf6

17...♘xf6 is strongly met by 18 e5! (18 ♖g5!? is an alternative)) 18...dxe5 19 ♗h4 e4 (19...h6 is refuted by the obvious 20 ♖xh6!) 20 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 21 ♖xe4 ♖e6 22 ♖g5!, and wins.

17...♗f8 demands imagination and accuracy – 18 e5! ♘xe5 (18...dxe5 19 ♗h4 g6 20 ♖h6 ♗c5 21 ♘e4+–) 19 ♗h4 ♘d3+ 20 cxd3 ♖xe1+ (20...♖e6 21 ♘e4+–) 21 ♖xe1 ♖f5 (Black appears to have prevented the white knight from going to the kingside) 22 ♘d5!! (simply brilliant: the knight cannot be taken in view of 22...cxd5 23 fxg7+ ♗xg7 24 ♖c3) 22...♖d8 23 fxg7+ ♘xg7 24 ♗h6+ ♖g8 25 ♗xf8+ ♖xf8 26 ♖h6+ and mate next move (analysis by Rublevsky).

18 e5!

The ♖d3 acquires the desired freedom.

18 ... fxe5

Other tries also fail:

18...dxe5 19 ♖xh7! ♖xh7 20 ♖e4;

18...♘e5 19 ♗h4 f5 (19...♘d3+ 20 cxd3 ♗d8 21 ♖xe8+ ♗xe8 22 ♗xf6+ ♖g8 23 ♖h6) 20

♙g5 ♜f8 21 ♙f6+ ♚g8 22 ♜xe5!
 (eliminating the defender), and mate
 is inevitable.

19 ♙xh7 d5

The bishop cannot be taken –
 19...♚xh7 20 ♜e4 ♙d8 21 ♜h4+!
 (diversion) 21...♜xh4 22 ♜xf7+.

20 ♙f5 f6

20...♘f8 is met by 21 ♙g5!

21 ♜h4+ ♚g8

22 ♜f3

The heavy artillery moves into
 position.

22 ... e4

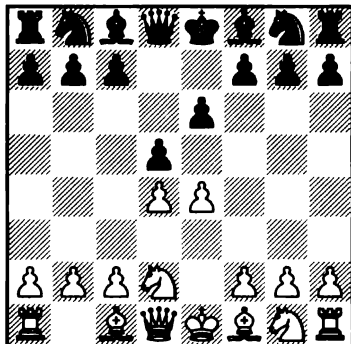
23 ♘xe4

Black resigns

3

French Defence

- 1 e4 e6
- 2 d4 d5
- 3 $\text{c}\text{c}3$



In recent times this flexible move of Siegbert Tarrasch has become one of the main methods of fighting for an opening initiative, and is a worthy rival to the classical 3 $\text{c}\text{c}3$. This is due in no small measure to the fact that it was taken up by Karpov. The Tarrasch Variation features in the repertoires of many leading players: Adams, Gelfand, Khalifman, Timman, Tivyakov, Topalov, and others.

The rise in the popularity of this variation is due mainly to its reliability. At an early stage White aims to restrict Black's counterplay, by adopting a flexible set-up in the centre (the move of the black bishop to b4 loses its point). Its drawbacks include a slight weakening of

White's control over the central squares d5 and e5, which makes possible the reply ...c7-c5.

Black has three main systems of defence: 3... $\text{c}\text{c}6$ (3.1), 3... $\text{f}\text{f}6$ (3.2) and 3...c5 (3.3).

Other possibilities:

3...f5 (3...e5 is bad in view of 4 dxe5 dxe4 5 $\text{W}\text{e}2$) 4 exf5 exf5 5 $\text{c}\text{c}3$ $\text{c}\text{c}6$ 6 $\text{c}\text{c}3$ (a typical manoeuvre in such positions – after playing his bishop to d3, White places his king's knight at e2 and his queen's knight at f3, harmoniously developing his minor pieces) 6... $\text{f}\text{f}6$ 7 $\text{c}\text{c}3$ 0-0 8 0-0 c6 9 $\text{c}\text{c}4$ $\text{c}\text{c}4$ (also inadequate is 9... $\text{h}\text{h}8$ 10 c4 $\text{a}\text{a}6$ 11 $\text{c}\text{c}6$ $\text{W}\text{d}6$ 12 c5, initiating a bind on Black's queenside) 10 $\text{c}\text{c}6$ $\text{W}\text{d}6$ 11 $\text{c}\text{c}5$ (Byrne).

3...g6 (the fianchetto is not very appropriate here – White's solid position in the centre allows him to begin a pawn advance on the wing) 4 $\text{c}\text{c}3$ $\text{g}\text{g}7$ (or 4... $\text{c}\text{c}7$ 5 h4 h6 6 h5±) 5 $\text{c}\text{c}3$ $\text{c}\text{c}7$ 6 c3 $\text{c}\text{c}7$ 7 e5 c5 8 h4 $\text{c}\text{c}6$ 9 $\text{W}\text{e}2$ $\text{W}\text{b}6$ 10 h5 cxd4 11 cxd4 $\text{c}\text{c}4$ 12 $\text{c}\text{c}4$ $\text{W}\text{d}4$ 13 $\text{c}\text{c}3$ with very strong pressure (Nemet-Planinc, Yugoslavia 1972).

3... $\text{c}\text{c}7$ 4 $\text{c}\text{c}3$ $\text{c}\text{c}7$ (it is not easy for Black to develop his pieces harmoniously; 4... $\text{c}\text{c}6$ can be met by 5 h4, while 4...g6 is insufficient in view of 5 $\text{c}\text{c}3$ $\text{g}\text{g}7$ 6 h4 h6 7 c3 0-0 8 h5, Zlotnik-Kaidanov,

Moscow 1980, and the immediate freeing attempt 4...c5 also does not promise an easy life - 5 dxc5!? ♖a5 6 c3 ♜xc5 7 ♙d3 ♜c7 8 0-0 ♗d7 9 ♜e1 ♗c5 10 ♙c2±, Poehlmann-Kraft, corr, 1992) 5 ♙e2 (5 ♙d3 is also good) 5...♗g6 6 0-0 ♙e7 7 ♜e1 0-0 8 ♙f1 c6 9 c4 ♗f6 10 ♜c2 b6 11 b3, and Black is condemned to a gruelling defence without any active counterplay (Kagan-Garcia, Rio de Janeiro 1979).

3...b6 (3...a6 4 c4!? looks good for White) 4 c3 ♙b7 (4...dxe4 can be met by 5 ♗xe4 ♙b7 6 ♙b5+ ♗d7 7 ♜e2±, Yudasin-Gulko, USSR 1981) 5 ♙d3 c5 6 e5 ♗c6 7 ♗e2 ♜d7 8 0-0 0-0 9 f4 f5 10 ♗f3 c4 11 ♙c2 ♗h6 12 b3 with the initiative for White (Aseev-Gulko, Moscow 1982).

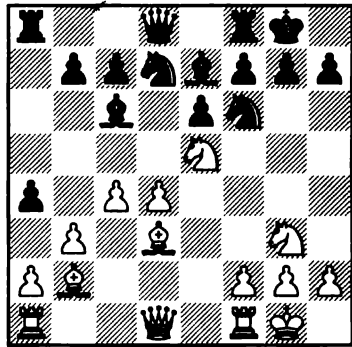
3...♙e7 (not determining for the moment the situation in the centre) 4 e5 (seizing space and depriving the black knight of the f6 square) 4...c5 5 c3 ♗c6 6 ♗df3 (6 ♗gf3!?) 6...♜b6 7 ♙d3 cxd4 8 cxd4 ♙b4+ 9 ♗f1 ♙d7 10 a3 ♙e7 11 ♗e2 h5. We are following the game Matulovic-Despotovic (Smederevo 1981), and here Black would have been set definite problems by 12 h3!?, with the idea of playing the king to h2 (or after g2-g3 to g2), connecting the rooks, followed by b2-b4.

3...dxe4 (transposing into the Rubinstein Variation, where Black obtains a slightly passive, but sound position) 4 ♗xe4, and now:

(a) 4...♗d7 5 ♗f3 ♗g6 6 ♙d3

♙e7 (the simplifying 6...♗xe4 is inadequate: 7 ♙xe4 ♗f6 8 ♙g5 ♙e7 9 ♙xf6 gxf6 10 ♜e2 c6 11 0-0 ♜b6 12 c4 ♙d7 13 c5±, Anand-Vaganian, Riga 1995) 7 ♗xf6+ ♙xf6 8 ♜e2 ♜e7 9 g4!? h6 10 ♙d2 c5 11 0-0-0 cxd4 12 h4 with the initiative for White (Adams-Hodgson, London 1990);

(b) 4...♙d7 (the fashionable continuation; the bishop is switched to c6 onto the long diagonal, enabling Black to solve the problem of the 'French bishop'. White, exploiting the fact that Black's actions are rather slow, strengthens his influence in the centre) 5 ♗f3 ♙c6 6 ♙d3 ♗d7 7 0-0 ♗gf6 8 ♗g3 ♙e7 9 b3 0-0 10 ♙b2 a5 (also inadequate is 10...♙xf3 11 ♜xf3 c6 12 c4 ♜e8 13 ♜fe1 ♙f8, Shirov-Chernin, Groningen 1993, and here 14 ♜e2 followed by ♜ae1 promises White an advantage) 11 c4 a4 12 ♗e5.

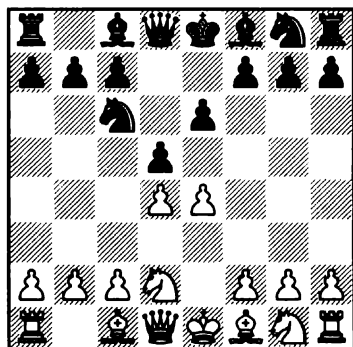


One of the important positions of the Rubinstein Variation. After

12...axb3 13 ♖xc6 bxc6 14 ♜xb3 c5 15 d5! Black failed to equalise (Bologan-Kramnik, Greece 1992). However, after the exchange of knights 12...♞xe5 13 dxe5 ♞d7 14 ♜c2 followed by ♞ad1 White also retains the advantage (Bologan).

3.1 (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♞d2)

3 ... ♞c6



This continuation appeared in the mid-1940s. Black aims for piece pressure on the centre, and in the event of e4-e5 he is ready to attack the critical e5 square by ...f7-f6. White tries to hinder as far as possible the opponent's intentions, and aims to complete his development quickly and establish piece control in the centre.

4 ♞g3 ♞f6

Black tries to stabilise the situation in the centre, in order to begin attacking it. Other possibilities allow White freedom of action in the centre:

4...e5?! 5 ♖b5 exd4 6 0-0 ♖d7 7 exd5 ♞b4 8 ♜e2+ ♗e7 9 d6±.

4...♞ge7 5 c3 ♞g6 6 g3 ♗e7 7 h4 dxe4 8 ♞xe4 b6 9 h5 ♞f8 10 h6 g6 11 ♖b5 ♖d7 12 d5, and White has an undisputed advantage (Spielmann-Nimzowitsch, Berlin 1928).

4...f5 5 exf5 exf5 6 ♖b5 ♖d6 7 ♞e5±.

4...♞h6 (an idea of Bronstein) 5 c3 f5 6 exd5 exd5 7 ♖d3 (7 c4!? is also good) 7...♖d6 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♜e1 ♜f6 10 ♜b3 ♞e7 11 ♞e5± (Mikh. Tseitlin-Muratov, USSR 1977).

4...dxe4 5 ♞xe4 ♞f6 6 ♞xf6+ gxf6 7 ♖b5 a6 8 ♖xc6+ bxc6 9 ♜e2, and Black has insufficient compensation for the spoiling of his pawns (Rachels-Penkelsky, USA 1991).

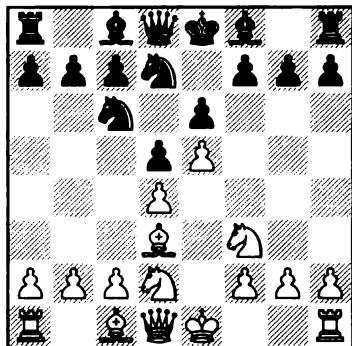
4...g6 5 c3 ♖g7 6 ♖d3 ♞h6 7 0-0 (7 h4!?) 7...0-0 8 ♜e1 f6 (it is clear that Black cannot get by without attempting to create counterplay in the centre, but in the given situation the white pieces are clearly better placed) 9 b4 a6 10 a4 ♞f7 11 ♖a3 ♜e8 12 ♜b3 ♞e7 13 b5. White has begun wide-scale operations on the queenside, whereas Black has no possibility of counterplay on the kingside, and he stands worse (Keres-Troianescu, Moscow 1956).

5 e5 ♞d7

5...♞e4?! cannot be recommended in view of the simple 6 ♖d3 ♞xd2 7 ♖xd2 ♞b4 8 ♖xb4 ♖xb4+ 9 c3 ♗e7 10 ♜d2 0-0 11 h4 c5 12 ♞g5 h6 13 ♖h7+ ♗h8 14 ♖c2, and it is hard for Black to find a

satisfactory plan of counterplay (Timoshchenko-Panbukchjan, Varna 1977).

6 ♖d3



One of the most dangerous setups for Black: White is ready to meet ...f7-f6 in the appropriate way.

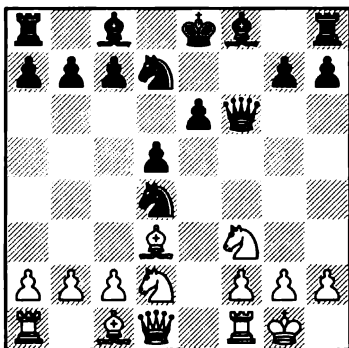
6 ... f6

Black's other counterattacking attempt is associated with ...c7-c5, but it involves a loss of precious time: 6...♟b4 7 ♙e2 c5 8 c3 ♟c6 9 0-0 cxd4 (9...♟b6 is inadequate in view of 10 ♟b3 a5 11 dxc5 ♟c7 12 ♙f4 ♟xc5 13 ♟bd4±, Geller-Vaganian, USSR 1975) 10 cxd4 f6 (here too Black fails to equalise after 10...♟b6 11 ♟b3 a5 12 a4) 11 exf6 ♟xf6 (11...♟xf6 does not change the character of the play - 12 ♟b3 ♙d6 13 ♙g5 ♟f7 14 ♙h4 ♟f6 15 ♙g3±, Gavrikov-Muratov, Beltsy 1977) 12 ♟b3 ♙d6 13 ♙g5 ♟c7 14 ♙h4 0-0 15 ♙g3 ♟h5 16 ♙xd6 ♟xd6 17 ♙b5. White has provoked the important exchange of dark-square bishops and hindered Black's

freeing advance ...e6-e5. His chances are better (V.Spasov-Johansen, Manila 1992).

7 exf6 ♟xf6

8 0-0 ♟xd4

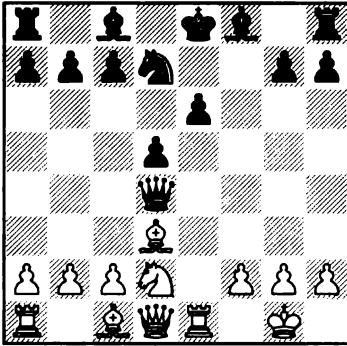


White has given up his central pawn, relying on the opening of the position and his lead in development. The attempt by Black to complete his kingside development is also inadequate: 8...♙d6 9 c4! 0-0 (here too it is dangerous to take on d4 - 9...♟xd4 10 ♟xd4 ♟xd4 11 ♟f3 ♟f6 12 ♙g5 ♟f7 13 cxd5 0-0 14 dxe6 ♟xe6 15 ♟e1±, Dimitrov) 10 ♟b3 ♟b4 11 c5 ♟xd3 12 ♟xd3 e5 13 ♟g5 e4 14 ♟h3, and it is hard to offer Black any good advice (Dimitrov-Carpintero, Linares 1994).

9 ♟xd4 ♟xd4

10 ♟e1

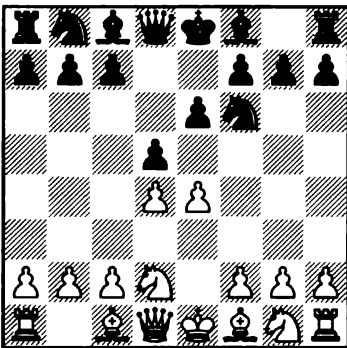
The critical position of the 6 ♙d3 variation. What should Black do? If 10...♟c5 (10...e5 11 ♟h5+±) there follows 11 ♟h5+ g6 12 ♙xg6+ hxg6 13 ♟xg6+ ♟d8 14 ♟f3±.



The game Ghinda-Urzica (Romania 1984) went 10...Nf6 11 Nf3 Bb4 12 Ng5 Bc5, when the time had come for tactics: 13 Nxe6 Bxe6 14 Bxe6+ Qf7 15 Bxf6+! It is doubtful whether Black can overcome his difficulties.

3.2 (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 Nf2)

3 ... Nf6



An old continuation, which today is still one of Black's most popular replies to the Tarrasch Variation.

Black immediately attacks the e4 pawn, provoking a closing of the centre on which he then launches a counterattack. However, the closing of the centre occurs here in fairly favourable circumstances for White – he gains the opportunity to deploy his forces harmoniously for the defence of his centre and to hinder Black's queenside counterplay. A complex battle ensues, in which the prolonged tension demands great accuracy of White.

4 e5 Nfd7

Other replies are less popular:

4...Ng8 5 Bd3 c5 (or 5...b6 6 c3 Bd7 7 Bb2 a5 8 Nh3! Bb6 9 Bxa6 Bxa6 10 0-0 h5 11 Nf4 with the better chances for White, Suetin-Gorenstein, Moscow 1968) 6 c3 Qc6 7 Qe2 Bd7 8 0-0 Bc7 9 Qf3, and White's strong centre gives him the advantage (Stein-Bagirov, Leningrad 1963).

4...Nf4 5 Nxe4 dxe4 (at the cost of a worsening of his pawn structure, Black hopes to gain counterplay against d4 and to hinder the normal development of White's kingside) 6 Bc4 (the knight is allotted the e2 square), and now:

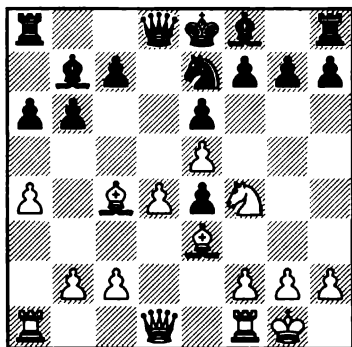
(a) 6...c5 7 d5 Qd7 8 dxe6 fxe6 9 Nh3 Qxe5 10 Wh5+ Qf7 11 Ng5 g6 12 Bg4 Qe5 13 Bb5+ and Black is in difficulties (Kindermann-Dobosz, Bern 1995);

(b) other counterattacking attempts against the white centre also fail to equalise: 6...Nd7 7 Qe2 c5 8 c3 cxd4 9 cxd4 Bb4+ 10 Bd2

♚a5 11 ♘c3 ♘b6 12 ♖b3 ♖xc3 13 bxc3± (Olenin-Moskalenko, Yalta 1995);

(c) 6...♗d7 7 ♘e2 b5 8 ♖b3 c5 9 c3 ♘c6 10 0-0 cxd4 11 cxd4 ♘b4 12 ♘f4 ♖c6 13 ♖e3 ± (Smagin-Zach, Biel 1995);

(d) 6...a6 7 a4 (essential prophylaxis) 7...b6 8 ♘e2 ♖b7 9 ♘f4 ♘c6 (9...c5 is met by the planned 10 d5) 10 ♖e3 ♘e7 11 0-0.



The critical position of the 4...♘e4 variation. White has a lead in development and his pieces are more harmoniously placed, whereas it is not easy for Black to find a good post for his king (on the queenside it will feel insecure). There can follow:

(d1) 11...g6 12 ♚g4 h5 13 ♚e2 ♖h6 14 ♜ad1 ♘f5 15 d5! (a typical breakthrough) 15...♖xf4 16 ♖xf4 exd5 17 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 18 c4 c6 19 cxd5 cxd5 20 f3± (Pedzich-Przewoznik, Warsaw 1990);

(d2) 11...♘d5 12 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 13 ♘h5 (the alternative is 13 b3!?)

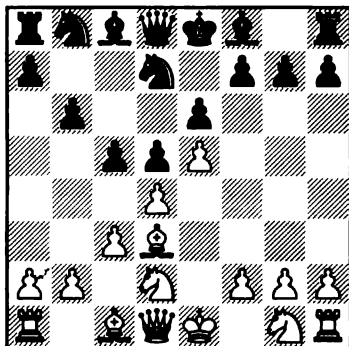
13...♚d7 14 b3 0-0-0 15 c4 ♖b7 16 a5, and White initiated action against the enemy king (Rayner-Minero, Novi Sad 1990).

5 ♖d3 c5

5...b6 leads after 6 ♘e2 c5 (or 6...♖a6 7 ♖xa6 ♘xa6 8 0-0 c5 9 f4 g6 10 ♘f3 ♖e7 11 ♖e3±, Radulov-Atanasov, Bulgaria 1977) 7 c3 to positions considered in the main line under 6...b6.

6 c3 ♘c6

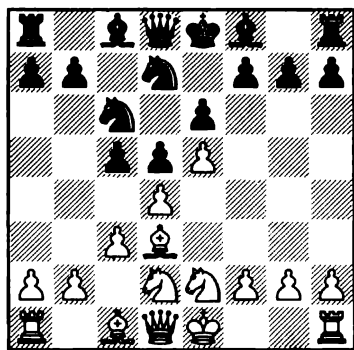
The most logical reply, leaving Black a wide choice of continuations. We will also examine the idea of exchanging the light-square bishops - 6...b6.



Exploiting his spatial advantage and solid position in the centre, White begins active play on the kingside: 7 ♘e2 ♖a6 8 ♖xa6 ♘xa6 9 0-0 b5 (Black aims for counterplay on the queenside, but his actions are too late; however, 9...♘c7 also does not promise an easy life: 10 ♘f4 ♖e7 11 ♚g4 g6 12 ♜e1 c4 13 ♘f3 b5 14 h4 h5 15 ♚g3 b4

16 ♖h3 with strong pressure – analysis by Zlotnik) 10 f4 g6 11 g4 h5 12 f5 ♖h4 13 fxe6 fxe6 (or 13... ♖xg4+ 14 ♖h1 ♖xe6 15 ♖f3 ♗e7 16 ♖f4 ♖c6 17 e6, and Black's position begins to crack) 14 ♖f4 hxg4 15 ♖e2 g3 16 h3 ♖h7 17 ♖g4. White has a clear advantage (Campora-Bator, Belgrade 1988).

7 ♖e2



White harmoniously deploys his cavalry – his queen's knight will be comfortably stationed at f3.

7 ... cxd4

Other moves restrict Black's options, without giving him any particular advantages (in some cases White has dxc5), although they do occur in practice:

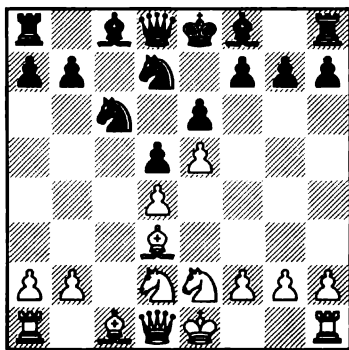
7... ♖b6 8 ♖f3 f6 9 exf6 ♖xf6 10 0-0 ♗d6 (if 10...cxd4, here 11 ♖exd4 is good) 11 dxc5 ♗xc5 12 ♖ed4 and White has strong pressure (Bolbochan-Vade, Teplice 1949).

7...f6 8 ♖f4 ♖e7 9 exf6 ♖xf6 (weaker is 9...♖xf6 10 ♖f3 e5 11 dxe5 ♖xe5 12 0-0 ♖xf3+ 13 ♖xf3

♗g4 14 ♗b5+ ♗d7 15 ♗xd7+ ♖xd7 16 ♗d1 0-0-0 17 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 18 c4±) 10 ♖f3 cxd4 (10...♗d6 11 ♖h5±) 11 0-0! ♖de5 (11...dxc3 is strongly met by 12 ♖xe6!) 12 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 13 ♗b5+ ♖c6 (13...♗d7 loses quickly to 14 ♗xd7+ ♖xd7 15 ♗e1 dxc3 16 ♖xd5 exd5 17 ♖xd5+ ♗d6 18 ♖xb7+ ♖e6 19 f4!) 14 ♗e1 with the initiative for White (Uhlmann).

7...a5 transposes into the main line after 8 0-0 cxd4 9 cxd4, while 7...♖b6 is well met by 8 ♖f3 cxd4 9 ♖exd4.

8 cxd4



Black has a choice: 8...a5 (3.21), 8...♖b6 (3.22) or 8...f6 (3.23).

3.21 (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2 ♖f6 4 e5 ♖fd7 5 ♗d3 c5 6 c3 ♖c6 7 ♖e2 cxd4 8 cxd4)

8 ... a5

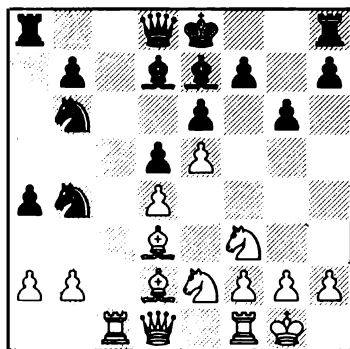
Black avoids ...f7-f6, intending to concentrate his forces for counterplay on the queenside.

8...♘b6, with the same idea, is also possible: 9 a3 a5 10 b3 (useful prophylaxis) 10...♙d7 11 0-0 a4 (also insufficient is 11...♞c8 12 ♙b2 ♙c7 13 f4 0-0 14 ♞c1 a4 15 b4, Estrin-Arapovic, Lublin 1978) 12 b4 ♙c7 13 f4 f5 14 exf6 ♙xf6 15 ♖f3 0-0 16 ♗c2, and 16...g6 allows 17 ♙xg6 hxg6 18 ♗xg6+ ♙g7 19 ♕g5 with a very strong attack (Ivkovic-Hecht, Vrsac 1983).

9 0-0 a4
 10 ♖f3 ♙b6
 11 ♖f4 ♙e7

11...g6 is also insufficient. After 12 ♖h3 h6 13 ♖f4 ♙e7 14 g3 ♖b4 15 ♙b1 ♖c4 16 a3 ♖c6 17 ♙c2 White's chances are preferable – his play on the kingside outweighs the opponent's actions on the queenside (Marjanovic-Lalic, Yugoslavia 1983).

12 ♙d2 ♙d7
 13 ♞c1 g6
 14 ♖e2 ♖b4



The opponents are operating on opposite wings, but White has made slightly more progress. After 15

♙xb4 ♙xb4 16 h4 Black faces a passive defence (Sax-Böhm, Amsterdam 1984).

3.22 (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2 ♖f6
 4 e5 ♖fd7 5 ♙d3 c5 6 c3 ♖c6 7
 ♖e2 cxd4 8 cxd4)

8 ... ♗b6

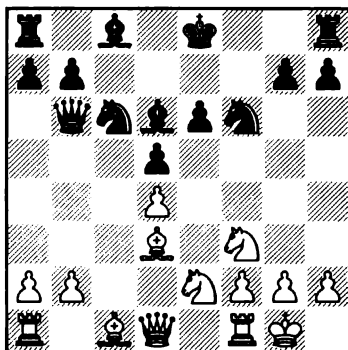
Black intensifies the pressure on the centre and sets his sights on the b2 pawn.

9 ♖f3 f6

Other tries are clearly inadequate: 9...♙e7 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♖f4, with excellent prospects on the kingside.

9...♙b4+ 10 ♖f1! ♙e7 (or 10...f6 11 ♖f4 fxe5 12 ♖xe6 ♖f6 13 ♖xg7+ ♖f8 14 ♙h6 ♖g8 15 ♗c1 e4 16 ♗g5 ♖f7 17 ♖h5±, Rotaru-Diaconescu, corr. 1961) 11 a3 ♖f8 12 b4 ♙d7 13 ♙e3 ♖d8 14 ♖c3 a5 15 ♖a4, with powerful pressure on the opponent's position (Alekhine-Capablanca, AVRO 1938).

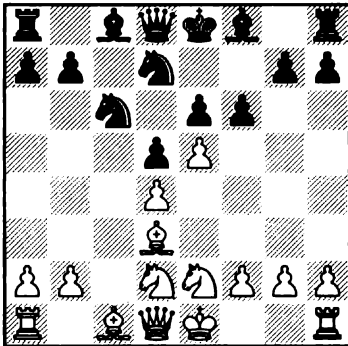
10 exf6 ♖xf6
 11 0-0 ♙d6



The critical position of the variation. We can recommend the plan involving the exchange of the dark-square bishops: 12 ♖f4!? (the alternative is 12 ♘c3) 12...♗xf4 (weaker is 12...♝c7 13 ♖g3 0-0 14 ♜c1, when White retains strong pressure) 13 ♘xf4 ♝xb2 (if 13...0-0 the simplest is 14 ♜e1, transposing into the main line) 14 ♜e1 0-0 15 ♜e3! (an interesting attempt to 'arrest' the black queen from b3) 15...♝b4 (15...♘g4? 16 ♜e2 ♝b6 17 ♘xe6 ♖xe6 18 ♜xe6 ♜ae8 is bad in view of 19 ♖xh7+!, or 15...♗d7 16 ♖f5! exf5 17 ♜b3±) 16 ♘xe6 ♖xe6 17 ♜xe6 ♜ae8 18 ♜xe8 ♜xe8 19 ♜b1 with pressure for White (Glatt-Weijerstrass, corr. 1992/4).

3.23 (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘d2 ♘f6
4 e5 ♘f7 5 ♗d3 c5 6 c3 ♘c6 7
♘e2 cxd4 8 cxd4)

8 ... f6

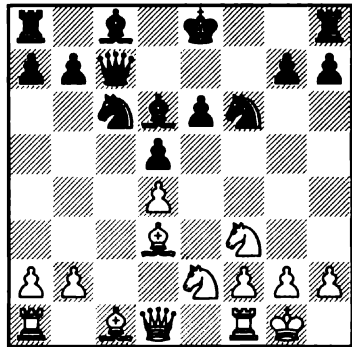


The fashionable response. Black immediately attacks White's centre.

9 exf6 ♘xf6

The alternative 9...♝xf6 leads after 10 ♘f3 ♖b4+ (or 10...♗d6 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♘g3 e5 13 ♝b3!±, Müller-Donner, Helsinki 1952) 11 ♗d2 ♖xd2+ 12 ♝xd2 0-0 13 0-0 e5 14 dxe5 ♘dxe5 15 ♘xe5 ♝xe5 (15...♘xe5 16 ♘d4±) 16 ♖b5 to a slight but enduring advantage for White – Black has insufficient play with his 'isolani' (Matulovic-Korchnoi, Yugoslavia 1972).

10 0-0 ♗d6
11 ♘f3 ♝c7



The most popular continuation, preventing the thematic exchange of dark-square bishop by ♖f4.

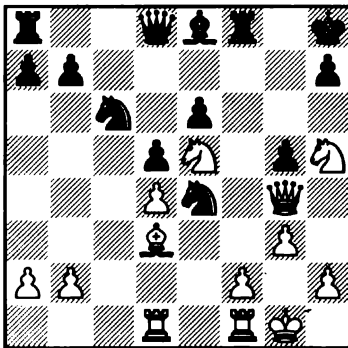
However, the plan with 11...0-0 also has its supporters. After 12 ♖f4 ♗xf4 13 ♘xf4 Black has various possibilities:

(a) 13...♝b6 14 ♜e1, transposing into variation 3.22;

(b) 13...♘g4 14 ♘e2!? e5 15 ♘xe5 ♘cxe5 16 dxe5 ♘xe5 17 ♘d4± (Kruczynski-Laptev, Krakow 1991);

(c) 13...♖d6 14 g3 ♗b4 15 ♜b1 ♙d7 16 ♜e1 ♜ae8 17 a3 ♗b6 18 ♙c2, and White's pieces are more harmoniously placed (Tivyakov-Ulybin, Chelyabinsk 1990);

(d) 13...♗e4 14 g3 g5 (Black is aiming for activity on the kingside, but White's forces are solidly placed and able to repel the black attack to his advantage; after 14...♗g5 15 ♗e5 ♗xe5 16 dxe5 ♜xf4 17 gxf4 ♗h3+ 18 ♖h1 ♗xf4 19 ♜g1 ♙d7 20 ♜g4! Black's offensive again peters out, Shchekachev-Kuzovkin, Moscow 1989) 15 ♗h5 ♙d7 (15...e5 requires an accurate response: 16 ♗xe5! ♗xd4 - or 16...♗xe5 17 dxe5 ♙h3 18 ♙xe4± - 17 ♗a4 ♗b6 18 ♜ad1 ♗xf2 19 ♜xf2 ♗e2+ 20 ♖h1 ♗xf2 21 ♗c2!±, Styazhkin-Basin, Russia 1992) 16 ♗e5 ♙e8 17 ♗g4 ♖h8 18 ♜ad1.



White's superiority in the centre gives him the advantage (Shchekachev-Andrienko, *Jurmala* 1991).

12 ♗c3

White provokes a weakening of the opponent's kingside and activates his knight with gain of tempo.

12 ... a6
13 ♙g5 0-0

With his development incomplete, it is dangerous for Black to launch into tactical complications: 13...♗g4 14 ♗h4! ♙xh2+ 15 ♖h1 ♙g1 16 g3 ♗xf2+ 17 ♜xf2 ♙xf2 18 ♗h5+ g6 19 ♙xg6+ ♖d7 20 ♗xd5!± (Psakhis-Doroshkevich, USSR 1978).

14 ♙h4 ♗h5

The most common reaction, depriving the white bishop of g3.

Other tries:

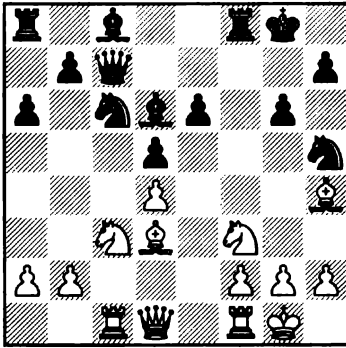
14...♙f4 15 ♜e1 ♖h8 16 ♙g3 ♗h5 17 ♗e2! ♗xg3 18 ♗xf4 ♗e4 19 g3, and Black, who has been unable to prevent the exchange of the dark-square bishops, has no way of opposing the opponent's mounting pressure on the e-file (Karpov-Chen, Hannover 1983).

14...♙d7 15 ♜e1 ♜ae8 (or 15...♖h8 16 ♙g3 ♙xg3 17 hxg3 ♗b6 18 ♗a4±, Balashov-Vaganian, USSR 1976) 16 ♜c1 ♗b8 17 ♙b1 ♖h8 18 a3 ♙f4 19 ♜c2 ♗g4 20 h3 ♗h6 21 ♙g5, and again White's positional superiority is evident (Karpov-Ostos, Malta 1980).

14...g6 transposes into the main line after 15 ♜c1 ♗h5.

15 ♜c1 g6

The critical position of the variation, where White's most logical plan is that involving piece pressure on the queenside:



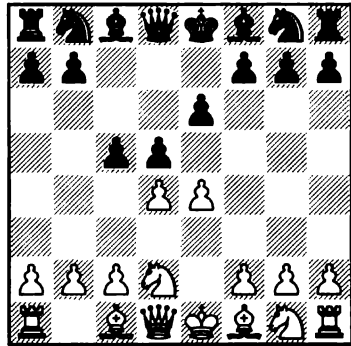
16 ♖a4!? b5 (or 16...♗d7 17 ♗c5±) 17 ♗c5 ♗xd4!? (the point of Black's previous move) 18 ♗xd4 ♗xc5 19 ♖c2 ♗f4!? (19...♗f4? is poor in view of 20 ♗f3 ♗b6 21 ♖c6 ♖b8 22 ♗e7!±, Matulovic-S.Marinkovic, Yugoslavia 1994) 20 ♗fd1! ♗xd3 21 ♗xd3 ♖f4 22 ♗g3 ♖e4 23 ♖d2! Black's position is not easy. His bishop is hanging, and its exchange by 23...♗xd4 24 ♗xd4 ♖f5 25 ♗f4 ♖h5 26 ♗xf8+! allows a terribly strong attack – he has not yet completed his queenside development, and he has a 'yawning' weakness on the dark squares (Kalinichenko-Wakolbinger, corr. 1996).

3.3 (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♗d2)

3 ... c5

Exploiting the fact that at d2 the knight does not control d5, Black takes immediate action in the centre. In the opinion of GM Sveshnikov,

3...c5! is the only correct reply to 3 ♗d2, almost enabling him to equalise. However, even here all is not so simple...



4 ♗g3

A dangerous plan, of which Alekhine was a supporter. Without removing the pawn tension in the centre, White aims to complete the development of his kingside pieces as quickly as possible.

Black's main replies are 4...a6 (3.31), 4...♗f6 (3.32), 4...♗c6 (3.33) and 4...cxd4 (3.34).

After 4...dxe4 5 ♗xe4 cxd4 6 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 7 ♗xd4 Black faces difficulties, despite the simplification (Grünfeld-Tartakower, Debrecen 1925).

In the event of 4...c4 5 g3 (5 ♖e2!? is an interesting alternative) 5...♗f6 6 e5 ♗f7 7 a4 ♗c6 8 ♗g2 ♗e7 9 0-0 ♗b6 10 ♗e1 a5 11 b3 cxb3 12 c3 0-0 13 ♖xb3 ♗d7 14 ♗b1 ♗c8 15 ♗a3 White has the better chances (Adams-Korchnoi, Biel 1993).

3.31 (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2 c5 4 ♜gf3)

4 ... a6

In this way Black prevents the white bishop from going to b5, and in some cases provides a retreat for his own bishop at a7.

5 dxc5 ♙xc5

6 ♙d3 ♜c6

After 6...♜f6 we can recommend 7 0-0:

(a) 7...dxe4 8 ♜xe4 ♙e7 (the ending after 8...♜xe4 9 ♙xe4 ♜xd1 10 ♜xd1 is cheerless for Black – White controls the d-file and exerts pressure on the opponent's queen-side) 9 ♜e2 ♜bd7 10 c4 0-0 11 ♙g5 h6 12 ♜xf6+ ♜xf6 13 ♙h4 ♙d7 14 ♜ad1± (Gelfand-Dolmatov, Moscow 1989);

(b) 7...♜c7 8 a3 ♜bd7 9 b4 ♙e7 10 ♙b2 dxe4 11 ♜xe4 0-0 12 ♜e1 a5 13 ♜xf6+ ♙xf6 14 ♙xf6 ♜xf6 15 c4 ♜d8 16 ♜e2 b6 17 ♜e5, and the dominating position of the knight at e5 secures White a solid advantage (Frolov-Dreev, Helsinki 1992);

(c) 7...♜c6 8 e5 ♜d7 9 ♜e2 0-0 (9...♜d4 10 ♜xd4 ♙xd4 11 ♜f3±) 10 ♜b3 ♙e7 11 c3 f6 12 exf6 ♜xf6 13 ♜bd4 with strong piece pressure in the centre (Hutchenson-Rahman, Manila 1992).

7 a3

The idea of the extended fianchetto, together with c2-c4, is quite unpleasant for Black. The alternative is the simple 7 0-0.

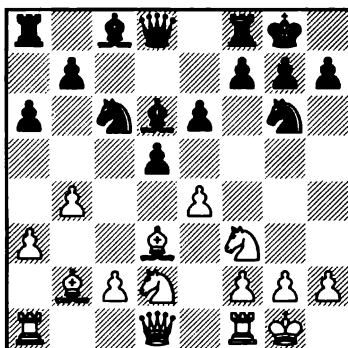
7 ... ♜ge7

8 0-0 0-0

9 b4 ♙d6

The character of the position is not changed by 9...♙a7 10 ♙b2 ♜g6 11 ♜b3± (Matanovic-Kupper, Opatia 1953).

10 ♙b2 ♜g6



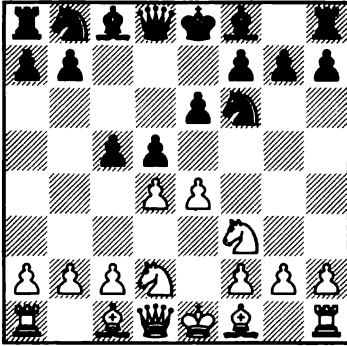
This position was reached in the game Gufeld-Lutikov (Jurmala 1978). After 11 ♜e1 ♜c7 12 exd5 exd5 13 c4! dxc4 14 ♜xc4 ♙f4 15 g3 ♙h6 16 ♜fe5! the position was opened up to White's clear advantage – cf. *Illustrative Game No.3*.

3.32 (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2 c5 4 ♜gf3)

4 ... ♜f6

Black tries to provoke e4-e5, in order to transpose into a favourable version of the 3...♜f6 variation (the placing of White's knights at d2 and f3 is less harmonious). In accordance with his chosen strategy,

it is better for White to exchange in the centre.

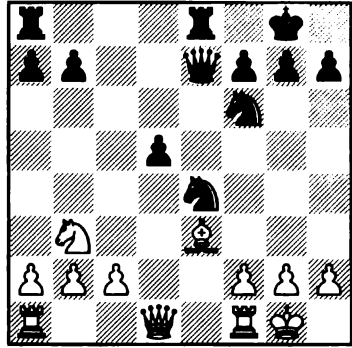


5 exd5 6 Qxd5

The alternative is to go into a position with an isolated d-pawn by 5...exd5 6 Qb5+:

(a) 6...Qc6 7 0-0 Qe7 8 dxc5! 0-0 (8...Qxc5 9 Qb3 Qe7 10 Qe5 Qd7 11 Qxd7 Qxd7 12 Qxf3± is unpleasant for Black – White has two bishops and pressure on the d-file) 9 Qb3 Qe4 10 Qe3 Qg4 11 Qxc6 bxc6 12 c3 Qe8 13 Qd4± (Pachman-Opcensky, Brno 1944);

(b) 6...Qd7 7 Qxd7+ Qbxd7 8 0-0 Qe7 9 dxc5 Qxc5 10 Qb3 Qce4 (10...0-0 11 Qxc5 Qxc5 12 Qg5 favours White) 11 Qfd4 0-0 (or 11...Qd7 12 Qf3 – the idea of White's previous move was to vacate f3 – 12...0-0 13 Qf5 with the initiative, Keres-Ivkov, Bamberg 1968) 12 Qf5 Qe8 13 Qxe7+ Qxe7 14 Qe3 (see diagram next column). White has an enduring positional advantage (Parma-Puc, Lublin 1969).



As usually happens in positions where Black has an isolated d-pawn, simplification has favoured White.

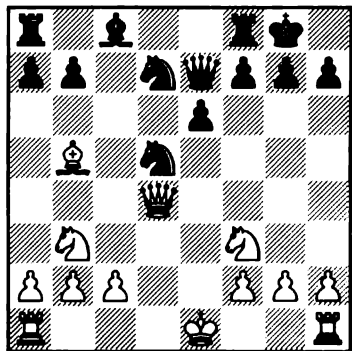
6 Qb3 7 Qd7

6...cxd4 7 Qbxd4 transposes into a favourable position for White that we examine on p.56.

7 Qg5 Qe7
8 Qxe7 Qxe7
9 Qb5!

Practically forcing Black to make concessions in the centre.

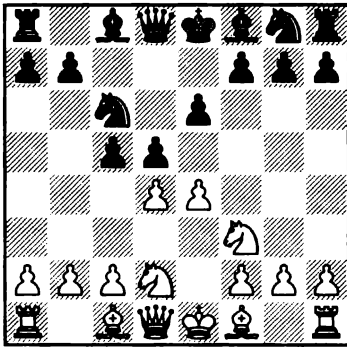
9 ... cxd4
10 Qxd4 0-0



White has the freer game and is better mobilised. P.Popovic-P.Nikolic (Yugoslavia 1991) continued 11 0-0-0 a6 12 ♖c4 ♘5f6 13 ♜he1 b5 14 ♗d5! with strong pressure.

3.33 (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘d2 c5 4 ♘gf3)

4 ... ♘c6



5 ♗b5

Alekhine's recommendation. White intensifies the piece pressure in the centre and concludes his kingside development.

Black must declare his intentions in the centre with 5...dxe4 (3.331) or 5...cxd4 (3.332).

Other tries:

5...♞b6 6 ♞e2 dxe4 7 ♘xe4 cxd4 8 0-0 ♗d7 9 ♗f4±.

5...♗d6 6 e5 ♗b8 7 dxc5 ♘ge7 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♜e1 ♘g6 10 ♗xc6 bxc6 11 h4 f6 12 ♗b2±.

5...a6 6 exd5 axb5 7 dxc6 bxc6 (7...c4 8 cxb7 ♗xb7 9 0-0 ♘f6 10 ♜e1±) 8 dxc5 ♗xc5 9 0-0 ♘f6 10

♘b3 ♗d6 11 ♗e3, controlling the important c5 square.

3.331 (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘d2 c5 4 ♘gf3 ♘c6 5 ♗b5)

5 ... dxe4
6 ♘xe4 ♗d7
7 ♗e3

This move is aimed at defending the d4 pawn, and at e3 the bishop is more securely placed than at g5.

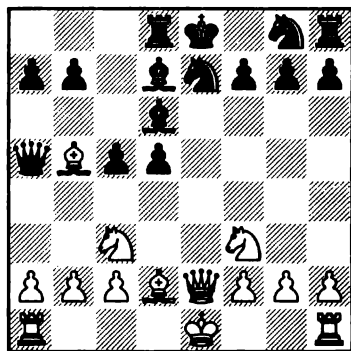
7 ... ♞a5+
8 ♘c3 ♜d8

The exchange 8...cxd4 favours White: 9 ♘xd4 ♗b4 10 0-0 ♗xc3 11 bxc3 ♘ge7 12 ♞b1 0-0 13 ♗d3± (Stein-Uhlmann, Moscow 1971).

9 d5! exd5
10 ♗d2

By tactical means White has rid himself of the unpleasant opposition of his queen and the enemy rook, and he now aims to exploit the position of the enemy queen.

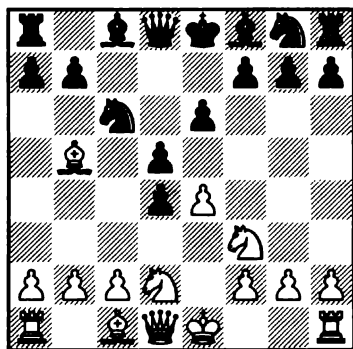
10 ... ♗d6
11 ♞e2+ ♘ce7



White regains his pawn while maintaining the advantages of his position: 12 ♖xd7+ ♜xd7 13 ♘xd5 ♜a4 (the black queen is temporarily out of play) 14 ♖c3 f6 15 ♜d1 ♜c6 16 ♘e3 ♘h6 (Black is unable to complete his development, being obliged to keep an eye on the frisky white knight) 17 ♘c4 0-0 18 0-0 ♜fd8 19 ♜xd6, and Black suffered loss of material (Kengis-K.Petrosian, Belgorod 1989).

3.332 (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘d2 c5 4 ♘gf3 ♘c6 5 ♖b5)

5 ... cxd4



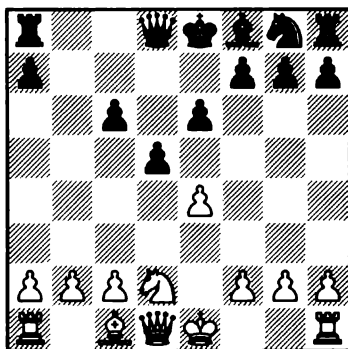
6 ♘xd4 ♖d7
7 ♘xc6

The most popular continuation. White reinforces the opponent's centre, in order then either to attack it by c2-c4, or else, after stabilising the position in the centre, to transfer his active aspirations to the kingside.

7 ... ♖xc6

After 7...bxc6 8 ♖d3 ♜c7 9 ♜e2 ♖d6 (or 9...♘e7 10 ♘f3 ♘g6 11 0-0 ♖e7 12 c4! dxe4 13 ♖xe4 f5 14 ♖c2±, Shamkovich-Vaganian, Dubna 1973) 10 ♘f3 dxe4 11 ♜xe4 ♘f6 12 ♜h4 Black runs into difficulties (Yudasin-Gulko, Biel 1993).

8 ♖xc6+ bxc6



The critical position of the variation.

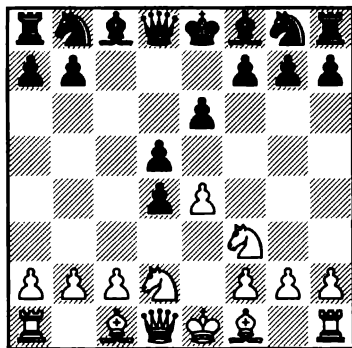
In the event of 9 c4 ♖c5! (weaker is 9...♘f6 10 ♜a4 ♜d7 11 e5 ♘g8 12 0-0 ♘e7 13 ♘f3±, Oll-Rozentalis, Antwerp 1993, or 9...dxe4 10 ♘xe4 ♜xd1+ 11 ♘xd1 ♜d8+ 12 ♖e2 ♜d4 13 ♘g5 ♜xc4 14 ♖e3 ♖c5 15 ♜hc1 with very strong pressure, Yemelin-Frolov, St. Petersburg 1994) 10 cxd5 cxd5 11 exd5 ♜xd5 12 ♜a4+ ♜d7 Black maintains the balance (Glek-Yusupov, Germany 1991).

White played more interestingly in the game Mark Tseitlin-Korchnoi (Beer Sheva 1992): 9 0-0 ♖d6 10 ♜e2 ♘e7 11 e5 ♖c7 12 b3 ♘g6 13 ♘f3 0-0 14 ♖b2 ♘h4 15 ♜ad1,

when Black found himself in difficulties – White's chances on the kingside are more real than Black's counterplay on the queenside.

3.34 (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖d2 c5 4 ♗g3)

4 ... cxd4



A popular continuation.

5 ♗xd4 ♗f6

The alternative 5...♗c6 transposes after 6 ♗b5 into variation 3.332.

6 exd5 ♗xd5

The most approved course. In the event of 6...♗xd5?! (6...exd5 leads to set-ups similar to those after 4...♗f6 5 exd5 exd5, examined earlier in section 3.32) 7 ♗b5 ♗d8 (or 7...♗a6 8 ♗e2 ♗xg2 9 ♗f3 ♗g5 10 a4 ♗e5+ 11 ♗f1 ♗d5 12 ♗c4 ♗b8 13 ♗g5 h6 14 ♗h4 ♗f4 15 ♗cd6+!±, Yemelin-S.Ivanov, St. Petersburg 1994) 8 ♗c4 ♗d5 9 ♗e3 ♗c7 10 ♗d2 ♗xb5 11 ♗xb5+ ♗d7 12 ♗xd7+ ♗xd7 13 ♗g4 ♗c6 14

0-0-0 White gains an appreciable advantage (Adams-Levitt, Ireland 1993).

7 ♗2f3 ♗e7

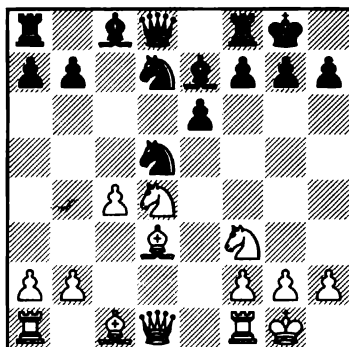
The exchange of bishops also fails to solve Black's problems: 7...♗b4+ 8 ♗d2 ♗xd2+ 9 ♗xd2 0-0 10 ♗c4 b6 11 0-0-0 ♗b7 12 ♗he1, and White's centrally placed forces exert strong pressure (Kengis-Glek, Godesburg 1993).

8 ♗d3 ♗d7

9 0-0 0-0

After 9...♗f6 10 ♗e1 ♗b4 11 ♗e4 it is difficult for Black to complete his development without making positional concessions (King-Dolmatov, Reykjavik 1990).

10 c4



White, with his slight territorial superiority and prospects of a queenside pawn offensive, has the better chances. For example: 10...♗5f6 11 ♗f4 ♗h5 12 ♗e3 g6 13 ♗e1 a6 14 ♗c1 ♗e8 15 ♗f1 ♗f8 16 a3 b6 17 b4 ♗b7 18 ♗b3 (V.Spasov-Dreev, Moscow 1994).

Game 3 (p.52)
Gufeld-Lutikov
Jurmala 1978

- 1 e4 e6
2 d4 d5
3 ♘d2 c5
4 ♘gf3 a6
5 dxc5

The alternative is 5 exd5, transposing into an 'isolani' structure.

- 5 ... ♗xc5
6 ♗d3 ♘c6

6...♗f6 is more usual, as examined in the analysis.

- 7 a3 ♘ge7

7...♗f6 transposes into the 6...♗f6 variation, examined in the analysis.

The prophylactic 7...♗a7 looks to be well met by 8 0-0 ♘ge7 9 exd5 exd5 10 c4!? (the opening of the position favours White – it is not easy for Black to find a comfortable post for his queen) 10...dxc4 11 ♘xc4 0-0 12 ♖c2±.

- 8 0-0 0-0
9 b4 ♗d6

In Kalinichenko-Rabin (Moscow 1997) Black played 9...♗a7, and after 10 ♗b2 ♘g6 11 ♘b3 he tried to block the position by 11...d4. However, 12 e5! (not allowing Black to support his d4 pawn) 12...♘cx5 13 ♘xe5 ♘xe5 14 ♗xh7+ ♗xh7 15 ♖h5+ ♗g8 16 ♖xe5 gave White the advantage.

- 10 ♗b2 ♘g6
11 ♖e1 ♖c7
12 exd5 exd5

- 13 c4

White opens the c-file.

- 13 ... dxc4
14 ♘xc4 ♗f4

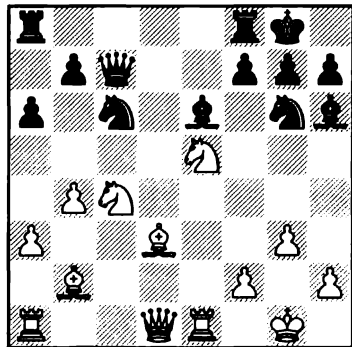
Black does not want to allow the unpleasant opposition of his queen with a white rook on the c-file, but after the next move his bishop proves to be out of play. However, his position is already rather unpleasant and it is hard to suggest a reasonable plan of counterplay.

- 15 g3 ♗h6

15...b5!? is somewhat more tenacious, although even here after 16 ♘e3 ♗xe3 17 ♖xe3 White's chances are better.

- 16 ♘fe5! ♗e6

The variation 16...♘gxe5 17 ♘xe5 ♘xe5 18 ♗xe5 clearly favours White – his bishops dominate the board.



- 17 ♘xc6!

A subtle positional decision. With all his forces White attacks Black's weakness – his b7 pawn.

- 17 ... ♖xc6

18 ♖a5 ♜b6

18...♜c7 is no better in view of

19 ♙c1! ♙xc1 20 ♜xc1.

19 ♜f3 ♜ad8

20 ♜ad1

Black no longer appears to have any good moves. 20...♜d7 is strongly met by 21 ♙f5!, while after 20...♙d5 21 ♙e4 ♙xe4 22 ♜xe4 the b7 pawn is in danger.

20 ... ♜xd3

Desperation, but Black wants to create at least some counterplay.

21 ♜xd3 ♜b5

22 ♖xb7 ♜c4

23 ♖c5 ♙h3

24 ♜d4 ♜a2

25 ♜c3 f6

26 ♖b3

The door slams shut.

26 ... ♖e5

27 ♜a1 ♖f3+

28 ♖h1 ♜xa1+

29 ♙xa1 ♖xd4

30 ♖xd4 ♜c8

31 ♜b3+

Black resigns

4 Caro-Kann Defence

1 e4 c6
 2 d4 d5
 3 e5

Against the Caro-Kann Defence we recommend Short's Variation. For a long time it was considered completely harmless, but by the efforts of the strongest English player it has been transformed into a formidable weapon for White.

3 ... ♗f5

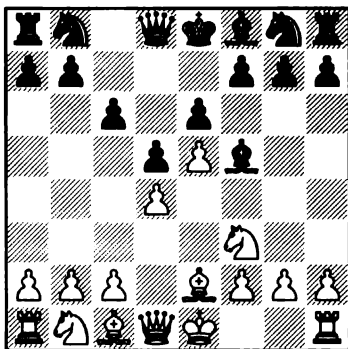
In recent times new tries for Black have appeared in the variation 3...c5. After 4 dxc5 ♖c6 5 ♗b5 e6 6 ♗e3 (this move has come to the fore; it is not easy for Black to regain his pawn) 6...♖ge7 7 c3 ♗d7 8 ♗xc6, and now:

(a) 8...♗xc6 (this is insufficient for equality) 9 ♖f3 ♖f5 10 ♗d4 ♖xd4 11 ♗xd4 (11 cxd4 b6!? transposes into variation 'b') 11...a5 12 a4 ♗e7 13 b4 axb4 14 cxb4 b6 15 cxb6! ♗xb4+ 16 ♖bd2 ♗a6 17 ♖b1 with a clear advantage to White (Galdunts-K.Arkell, Gelsenkirchen 1994);

(b) 8...♖xc6 9 ♖f3 (9 f4 can be met by 9...g5! 10 ♖f3 gxf4 11 ♗d4, Peng Xiaomin-K.Arkell, Hong Kong 1997, and now 11...♗g8! would have given Black a good game) 9...♗c7! (attacking the e5 and c5 pawns) 10 ♗d4 ♖xd4 11 cxd4 b6! 12 cxb6 ♗xb6 13 ♗b3 ♗a6 (Kaminsky-Timoshchenko, Yerevan

1996). Black has two bishops and an active queen, while White has retained his pawn in a quiet position. He faces a painstaking task to neutralise the opponent's initiative, but a pawn is a pawn, and his chances are slightly better.

4 ♖f3 e6
 5 ♗e2



In contrast to the 4 ♖c3 variation, White does not chase after the opponent's light-square bishop, but prefers the solid development of his pieces (in particular his kingside) in order to prepare an offensive, based on his solid pawn outpost at e5 and territorial superiority.

Sometimes (when Black is wanting to counterattack in the centre) White opens the position (with c2-c4), which, with his good development, gives him excellent chances.

Short's plan is not easily countered, as was shown by the Gelfand-Karpov Candidates Match (1995), where Karpov, a major expert on the Caro-Kann, was unable fully to solve Black's problems.

Now Black has a choice: 5...c5 (4.1) or 5...d7 (4.2).

5...d7 can lead after 6 0-0 d7 to positions from variation 4.2. However, deviations are also possible:

5...h6 6 0-0 d7 7 d2 c5 8 c4! d7 9 b3 cxd4 10 bxd4 dxc4 11 xc4 c8 12 b3 g4 13 e1 d6 14 dxc6 cxc6 15 a4 c8 16 b3 with strong pressure (Radu-Schulze, Berlin 1994).

5...d7 6 e3 c5 7 d3 h6 8 0-0 c8 9 dxc5 xc5 10 xc5 dxc5 11 b5, invading at d6 (Mounji-Lutzka, Belgium 1994).

After 5...d7 6 0-0 it is dangerous for Black to begin play in the centre with 6...c5. White is better prepared for the opening of the position: 7 c4! dxc4 8 d5 exd5 9 xd5 c7 10 xc4 e6 11 e4 xc4 12 xc4 b6 13 e4 d7 14 e6± (Tkachiev-Natanbaatar, Moscow 1994).

Black gained a solid, but passive position in Nevednichy-Savon (Tiraspol 1994): 5...a6 6 0-0 d7 7 h3 h5 8 c3 d6 9 g5 e7 10 d2 g6 11 f4. White's spatial superiority gives him a minimal advantage.

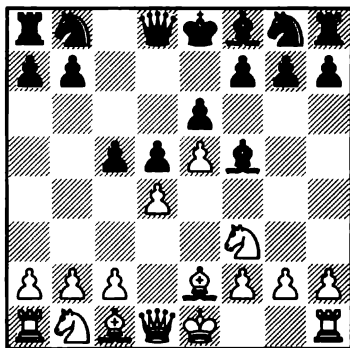
In Anand-Karpov (Tilburg 1991) Black tried 5...a6 6 0-0 d7 (or

6...g4 7 d2 c5 8 c4 cxd4 9 dxd4 xe2 10 xe2 de7 11 cxd5 xd5 12 c4 dec6 13 dxc6 xc6 14 e3, when the position is opened to White's advantage – the c- and d-files are in his possession, and will quickly be occupied by his heavy pieces) 7 d2 (7 c4!?) 7...g6 8 a3 d6 9 c4 e7 10 b3 0-0 with approximate equality. However, the move 5...a6 has not found favour, and Karpov himself has not played it again.

5...b6 also does not secure Black a satisfactory game (the centre remains under White's control) – 6 0-0 d7 7 d3 h6 8 a3 d7 9 e3 dg6 10 e1 d7 11 g4 h7 12 d3 xd3 13 dxd3 h5 14 h3 g6 15 g2 h6 16 f4 (Tolnai-Eperjesi, Hungary 1992).

4.1 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 f5 4 d3 e6 5 e2)

5 ... c5



6 e3

The alternative is **6 0-0** ♖c6 7 c3. The text move is aimed at possible clashes in the centre and intensifies the pressure on c5.

6 ... ♗d7

The attempt to attack White's queenside by **6...♗b6** is not the best way of countering the opponent's plan – after 7 ♖c3! Black is seriously behind in development:

(a) 7...cxd4 8 ♙xd4±;

(b) 7...♗xb2 8 ♖b5 ♗a6 9 dxc5 ♙xc2 10 ♗d4 ♗xd4 11 ♗fxd4 ♙g6 12 ♗d6+ ♙xd6 13 ♙b5+! ♗f8 14 cxd6 with powerful pressure for the pawn (Kalinichenko-Goldberg, Moscow 1995);

(c) 7...♗c6 (Black avoids going pawn-grabbing) 8 0-0 c4 9 b3 (also good is 9 ♗h4!?) ♙g6 10 ♗b1 ♙e7 11 ♗xg6 hxg6 12 ♗d2 ♗a5 13 a3 a6 14 f4 b5 15 ♙f3 ♗d8 16 g4±, Short-Burmakin, Moscow 1995) 9...♗a5 (dubious is 9...cxb3?! 10 axb3 ♗ge7 11 ♖b5 ♗g6 12 c4 ♙e7 13 c5, when White has a clear advantage, Iordachescu-S.Guliev, Nikolaev 1995) 10 ♙d2 ♙b4 11 ♗e1 b5 12 a3 ♙xc3 13 ♙xc3 ♗b6 (13...♗d8 frees White's hands on the queenside – 14 a4! a6 15 ♗a2 ♗ge7 16 ♙b4 0-0 17 ♙c5±, Ibragimov-Ivacic, Bled 1995) 14 ♗d2 ♗ge7 15 ♗ab1 (15 ♙b4 ♗xb4 16 axb4 0-0 gives no advantage, but interesting is 15 ♗fb1 0-0 16 bxc4 dxc4 17 a4, when Black still faces a battle for equality, Granda-Magem, Pamplona 1995/6) 15...0-0 16 bxc4 dxc4 17 ♙xc4 bxc4 18 ♗xb6 axb6,

when Black's compensation for the queen (well placed pieces, including the excellent square d5 for his knight, and pressure on the queenside) is not fully equivalent, as White has prospects of a pawn storm on the kingside, and his chances are better (Nijboer-Magem, Linares 1995).

Removing the tension in the centre allows White enduring pressure: **6...cxd4** 7 ♗xd4 ♗e7 8 c4! (a typical way of opening the centre) 8...♗bc6 9 ♗a4 dxc4 10 ♗a3 ♗a5+ 11 ♗xa5 ♗xa5 12 ♗ab5 ♗d5 13 ♗xf5 exf5 14 ♙d2, and Black was unable to hold this ending (Gelfand-Karpov, Sanghi Nagar 1995).

6...♗e7!? is an interesting set-up (the king's knight aims for c6 and the queen's knight is developed at d7, putting strong pressure on the e5 pawn): 7 dxc5 ♗d7 8 ♗a3! (Khalifman-Epishin, Elista 1995, was agreed drawn after 8 c4 dxc4 9 0-0, but 9 ♗a3!?) would have been interesting, with sharp play) 8...♗c6 9 ♖b5 ♗xc5 10 ♗fd4 ♙e4 11 0-0 a6 (capturing on e5 is dangerous in view of the swift advance of the white f-pawn, breaking up Black's centre) 12 ♗d6+ ♙xd6 13 exd6 ♗xd6 14 ♗xc6 bxc6 15 f3 ♙g6 16 ♗d4 ♗d7 17 ♗xg7 ♗e5 18 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 19 ♙d4, and White, with his two bishops, looks to have the better chances (Ehlvest-Khalifman, Parnu 1996).

7 c4

Familiar motifs – White aims to open up the position. Less clear is 7 0–0 a6!? 8 c4 dxc4 9 d5 ♖e7 10 ♗c3 b5 11 ♜e1 exd5 with a complicated game (Sho t-Adianto, Moscow 1994).

7 ... cxd4

7...dxc4 8 ♗c3 a6 9 ♖xc4 ♗e7 10 d5! leads to a sharp game with attacking chances for White (Spraggett-Magem, Manresa 1995).

8 ♗xd4 ♖xb1

8...♗xe5 is dangerous in view of 9 ♗xf5 exf5 10 cxd5, when White has a clear advantage.

9 ♜xb1 ♖b4+

Now White is obliged to give up the right to castle, since 10 ♖d2 ♖xd2+ and 11...♗e7 relieves Black of any problems. Why did Black not take on e5? In this case the absence of his light-square bishop tells: 9...♗xe5 10 cxd5 followed by 11 ♜a4+, and Black is in difficulties.

10 ♖f1 ♗e7

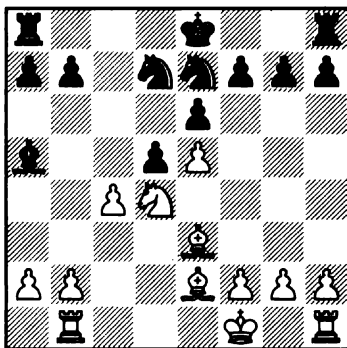
11 ♜a4

White defends his e5 pawn and tries to exploit the insecure position of the enemy bishop at b4. Thus the natural retreat 11...♖c5 allows 12 ♗xe6!

11 ... ♜a5

12 ♜xa5 ♖xa5

The game has gone into a complicated ending with a slight initiative for White (see diagram next column). Ehlvest-Gulko (Riga 1995) continued 13 b4 ♖c7 (13...♖b6? 14 c5±) 14 f4 dxc4 15 ♖xc4±.



13 f4!? is a further improvement:

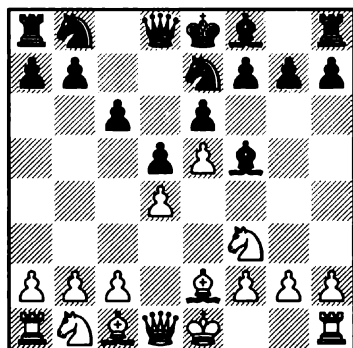
(a) 13...♖b6 14 ♖f2 ♗c5 15 ♖f3 dxc4 (Black is forced to make concessions – b2-b4 was threatened) 16 ♖xc4. White has the better chances – the pawn storm g2-g4 and f4-f5 is now a reality, further extending the influence of his bishops (Vasyukov-Vyzhmanavin, Elista 1995);

(b) 13...dxc4 14 ♖xc4 0–0, although slightly more accurate, does not completely solve Black's problems: 15 b4 (alas, 15 ♗xe6 ♗xe5! 16 fxe5 fxe6+ leads only to equality – the e5 pawn is doomed) 15...♖b6 16 ♖e2 ♜ac8 17 ♖b3!± – the white bishops area dangerous (Kalinichenko-Vefling, corr. 1996) – cf. *Illustrative Game No.4*.

4.2 (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 ♖f5 4 ♗f3 e6 5 ♖e2)

5 ... ♗e7

Black aims to keep the position closed, by delaying somewhat the attack on the centre by ...c6-c5.



6 0-0 ♖d7

6...c5 is premature, in view of the familiar 7 c4! ♗bc6 (or 7...dxc4 8 ♜a4+ ♜d7 9 ♜xc4 cxd4 10 ♗xd4 ♗g6 11 ♗c3, and the position is opened to White's advantage) 8 dxc5 dxc4 (8...d4 does not solve Black's problems, Bologan-Haba, Germany 1992/3; after 9 ♗d3 ♗g4 10 ♗f4± White retains control over e5) 9 ♜a4 ♗g6 10 ♜xc4 ♗e7 11 ♜c3 0-0 12 ♗a3!, and White is more actively placed (Bologan).

In Kamsky-Karpov (Groningen 1995) Black chose the solid 6...♗g6, leaving himself the option of developing his knight at c6: 7 ♗bd2 (7 c3!? is also good) 7...c5 8 c4! cxd4 9 ♗xd4 ♗ec6 10 ♗2f3 dxc4 11 ♗xc4 ♗e7 12 ♗e3 0-0 13 ♜c1 a6 (13...♗a5 14 ♜a4! followed by ♜fd1 is good for White) 14 a3, and White retained his opening initiative thanks to his spatial advantage and harmonious placing of his forces.

7 ♗h4 ♗e4

Other possibilities:

7...c5 8 ♗g5 f6 (8...♜b6?! is dangerous in view of 9 ♗xe7 ♗xe7 10 ♗xf5 exf5 11 ♗c3, when the threat of ♗xd5 is highly unpleasant) 9 exf6 gxf6 10 ♗xf5 ♗xf5 11 ♗h5+ ♗e7 12 ♗c1!, and the insecure position of the black king gives White the advantage (Vozka-Buchnichek, corr. 1992/3).

7...♗g6 8 ♗d2 c5 9 c3 ♗c6 (after 9...cxd4 10 cxd4 ♗f5 11 ♗xg6 hxg6 12 ♗f3 Black runs into difficulties, Anand-Karpov, Brussels 1991) 10 ♗xg6 hxg6 11 ♗f3 ♜b6 (or 11...♗e7 12 ♗e3 a6, Khalifman-Lobron, Munich 1992, and here 13 ♜d2, preventing ...g6-g5 and ensuring ♗g5, would have enabled White to hope for an advantage) 12 ♜b1 ♗e7 13 ♗e3 ♜c8 14 g3 cxd4 15 cxd4 ♜a5 16 a3 a6 17 h4 b5 18 ♜a1 (Lutz-Rogers, Germany 1995). White, who controls more space and has good prospects on the queenside (a3-a4), has the better chances.

8 ♗d2 ♗f5

This manoeuvre is the point of vacating the f5 square.

9 ♗h3

White, who controls more space, quite naturally avoids exchanges.

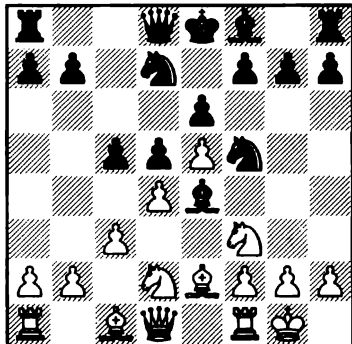
9 ... c5

Black has no other play.

10 c3

This position (see diagram next page) was reached in Shirov-Adams (Wijk aan Zee 1996), where after 10...♗e7 the typical manoeuvre 11 g4! ♗xf3 12 ♗xf3 ♗h4 13 ♗xh4 ♗xh4 14 f4 enabled White to

exchange two pairs of minor pieces and to gain space for an attack with pawns and pieces on the kingside.



However, even after Shirov's recommendation of 10...♖b6, Black does not solve completely his opening problems: 11 g4! cxd4 12 ♖xe4 dxe4 13 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 14 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 15 cxd4 leaves him with a difficult ending.

Game 4 (p.62)
Kalinichenko-Vesling
Correspondence 1997

- | | | |
|---|-----|-----|
| 1 | e4 | c6 |
| 2 | d4 | d5 |
| 3 | e5 | ♗f5 |
| 4 | ♖f3 | e6 |
| 5 | ♗e2 | c5 |
| 6 | ♗e3 | ♖d7 |

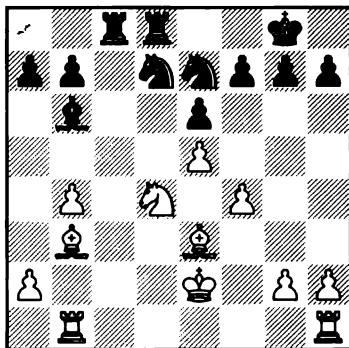
After 6...♖e7 White demonstrated in interesting plan in Bolochan-Asrian, Krasnodar 1997): 7 dxc5 ♖d7 8 ♖d4 ♖xe5 9 ♗f4 ♖5c6 10 ♖b5 ♖g6 11 ♗d6, with a sharp game, where his chances are better.

7 c4

Another possibility is 7 0-0 ♖e7 8 c4 dxc4 9 ♗xc4 (9 d5 is unclear – see the analysis) 9...a6 10 ♖c3 b5 11 ♗e2 b4 12 ♖a4 ♖d5 13 ♗g5± (Kamsky-Adianto, Amsterdam 1996).

But Black can play more accurately: 10...♖c6! (intensifying the pressure on e5) 11 d5 ♖cxe5 12 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 13 ♗a4+ ♖d7 14 dxe6 fxe6 15 ♗b3 ♗b6!, when White has to demonstrate that he has compensation for the pawn.

- | | | |
|----|------|------|
| 7 | ... | cxd4 |
| 8 | ♖xd4 | ♗xb1 |
| 9 | ♗xb1 | ♗b4+ |
| 10 | ♖f1 | ♖e7 |
| 11 | ♗a4 | ♗a5 |
| 12 | ♗xa5 | ♗xa5 |
| 13 | f4 | dx4 |
| 14 | ♗xc4 | 0-0 |
| 15 | b4 | ♗b6 |
| 16 | ♖e2 | ♗ac8 |
| 17 | ♗b3 | ♗fd8 |



Black has a difficult choice. The attempt to complicate the play merely leads to simplification

favourable for White: 17...♞c3 18 ♞hd1! ♞xe3+ 19 ♖xe3 ♜f5+ 20 ♖e4 ♜xd4 21 ♞xd4 ♙xd4 22 ♖xd4 ♞c8 (or 22...♞d8 23 ♖e4) 23 ♞d1 – White has an active king, a strong bishops, and prospects of seizing control of the d-file.

18 ♞hd1 ♜f8

Black tries to consolidate his grip on d5.

19 ♜b5 ♙xe3

20 ♖xe3 ♜d5+?!

An inaccuracy, which probably loses the game. A tougher defence was offered by 20...♜f5+ 21 ♖e4 a6 22 ♜d6 ♜xd6+ 23 ♞xd6 ♞xd6 24 exd6 ♜d7 25 ♞d1, when although Black's chances are not brilliant (the strong passed pawn at d6 combined with the activity of his other pieces gives White a clear advantage), resistance is still possible.

21 ♙xd5

It is a pity, of course, to part with such a bishop, but on the other hand White transforms his dynamic advantage into a stable one (the pawn at d5 will be a chronic weakness).

21 ... exd5

An attempt to retain as many pieces as possible. After 21...♞xd5 22 ♞xd5 exd5 23 ♞b2! (covering the invasion square c2) Black's position is again cheerless.

22 ♞bc1!

Exchanging a pair of rooks and seizing control of the c-file.

22 ... ♞xc1

23 ♞xc1 f6!?

Black tenaciously seeks counter-

chances. He aims to give White a weakness at e5 and to activate his ♜f8.

24 g3!

A precise reaction. After 24 ♜d6 g5!? (or 24...fxe5 25 fxe5 ♜g6) Black would have gained counter-play.

24 ... fxe5

25 fxe5 ♜g6

In certain variations the strength of the prophylactic g2-g3 is seen: 25...♜e6 26 ♜xa7 d4+ 27 ♜d3 and there is no check at f4.

26 ♜d4 ♜e7

27 ♜d6 ♞d7

Going totally onto the defensive fails to save the game, but also after 27...♜c6+ 28 ♖xd5 ♜xb4+ 29 ♖e6 ♜xa2 30 ♞a1 White dominates the board, and the e5 pawn is practically unstoppable.

28 b5 b6

29 g4 g5

There is practically nothing that Black can move. Little would have been changed by 29...g6 30 ♜e8 ♞d8 31 ♜f6+ ♖g7 32 ♞c7+–.

30 ♜e8! ♞b7

After 30...♞d8 the same manoeuvre as indicated after 29...g6 is possible.

31 ♞c7 ♞xc7

32 ♜xc7 ♖f7

33 e6+!

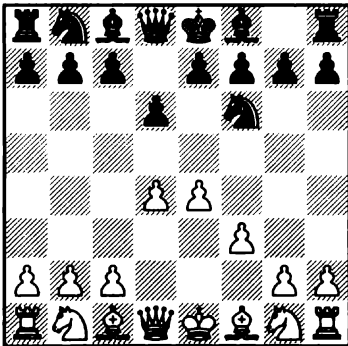
A little finesse. After 33...♖f6 34 ♜xd5+ ♖xe6 35 ♜xe7 ♖xe7 36 ♖e5! the pawn ending is absolutely hopeless for Black, and so he **resigned**.

5 Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence

1 e4 d6

In the event of the Modern Defence 1...g6 we recommend 2 d4 g7 3 c3 d6 4 f3!?, transposing into the Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence, since Black has nothing better than 4...f6, which after 5 e3 c6 6 d2 0-0 7 h4! leads to a favourable position for White from the Comas-San Segunda game considered below.

2 d4 f6
3 f3



A fashionable variation, in which White does not aim to extend his presence in the centre, but concerns himself primarily with supporting his d4+e4 pawn pair, completing his development, and retaining control of the centre.

Black, in turn, has two ways of trying to hinder White's harmonious development and of attacking his

pawn centre: 3...e5 (5.1) and 3...d5 (5.2).

3...c5 can be met by either 4 d5 followed by c2-c4 and c3, seizing space, or 4 dxc5!? dxc5 (if 4... a5+ 5 c3 xc5 6 e2!? c6 7 e3 d4 8 xd4 xd4 9 b5+ d7 10 d5±) 5 xd8+ xd8 6 e3, retaining a slight advantage in the endgame: White can quickly occupy the d-file, which in combination with c3-b5 will cause Black definite problems.

Against 3...g6 we can recommend the set-up 4 e3, and now:

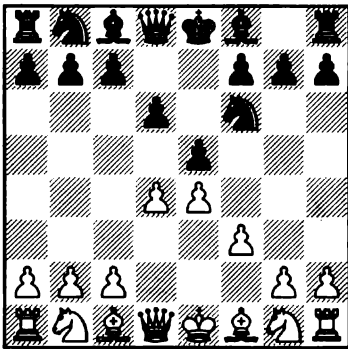
(a) 4...c6 (this attempt to begin immediate play on the queenside does not give the desired effect – White is solidly placed in the centre, and his king can take shelter on either wing) 5 d2 bd7 6 c3 b5 7 a3 b7 8 h3 eg7 9 e2 0-0 10 0-0 e5 11 ad1 e8 12 h1 a6 13 f2 d5 14 dx5 dx5 15 eg5 c7 16 f4 with strong pressure (D.Olafsson-Torsson, Reykjavik 1994);

(b) 4...eg7 5 d2 (the play takes a rather different direction after 5 c3 c6 6 d2 0-0 7 h4! h5 8 h3 b5 9 dg5 db7 10 a4 b4 11 d1 e5 12 f2 exd4 13 xd4 d5 14 d1 e7 15 e2, when Black's activity on the queenside and in the centre has led to the creation of numerous pawn weaknesses, which in combination with the better placing of

the white pieces gives White an enduring advantage, Comas-San Segunda, Zaragoza 1992) 5...e5 (fearing an attack on the kingside, Black goes into an endgame) 6 dxe5 dxe5 7 ♖xd8+ ♔xd8 8 ♗c4 ♗e6 9 ♗xe6 fxe6 10 ♘d2 ♘c6 11 c3 b6 12 ♔e2 ♔e7 13 a4. Black faces a difficult battle for a draw (Kasparov-Bartosik, Katowice 1993).

5.1 (1 e4 d6 2 d4 ♘f6 3 f3)

3 ... e5



4 dxe5

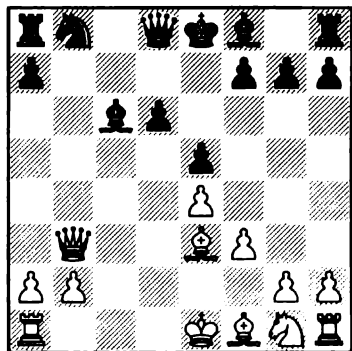
White does not try for too much. Going into an endgame gives him a slight but persistent advantage, thanks primarily to the better placing of his king.

Since such early simplification may not be to everyone's taste, we can also suggest the space-gaining 4 d5 c6 5 c4 ♖b6 (hindering the development of the bishop at c1; alternatives are 5...♗e7 6 ♘c3 0-0 7 ♗e3 a6 8 ♗d3 cxd5 9 cxd5 b5 10 b4

♖c7 11 ♘ge2 ♖b7 12 ♖d2 ♗d7 13 0-0±, or 5...♘h5 6 ♗e3 g6 7 ♘c3 f5 8 exf5 gxf5 9 ♗d3±, Psakhis) 6 ♘c3, and now:

(a) 6...♗e7 7 ♘ge2 (or 7 ♖e2!? followed by ♗e3 and ♖d2) 7...0-0 8 ♘g3 cxd5 9 ♘a4! ♖c7 10 cxd5 ♗d7 11 ♗e3 ♗c8 12 ♘c3 with the better chances for White – he can increase the pressure on the queenside, whereas Black's counterplay on the kingside is problematic (Kasparov-Wahls, Baden Baden 1992);

(b) 6...♗d7 (Black wants to attack a4, for where the white knight is aiming) 7 ♘a4 (here too 7 ♖e2!? is possible) 7...♖d8 8 ♗e3 cxd5 9 cxd5 ♘xd5 (a clever attempt to gain counterplay, which is nevertheless insufficient to equalise; after 9...♗e7 10 ♖b3 White keeps his opening advantage, since 10...♖a5+ 11 ♗d2 ♗xa4 fails to 12 ♖xb7 ♖b6 13 ♖xa8 0-0 14 ♖c1 ♘c6 15 ♖xc6!) 10 ♖xd5 (10 exd5? ♖h4+!) 10...♗xa4 11 ♖xb7 ♗c6 12 ♖b3.

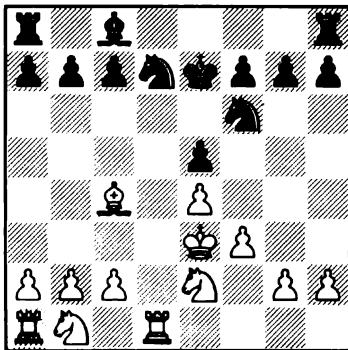


We are following the game Psakhis-Sturua (Biel 1995). White has the better chances – he has hindered the freeing advance ...d6-d5 (if 12...d5 13 exd5 ♖xd5 14 ♜b5+! or 13...♜xd5 14 ♖c4 ♜a5+ 15 ♖d2 ♜c7 16 ♖e2, and White's lead in development and harmoniously placed pieces give him the advantage), which puts Black in the position of the defending side.

- 4 ... dx e5
- 5 ♜xd8+ ♔xd8
- 6 ♖c4 ♔e8

6...♖e6 also leaves White with the better chances: 7 ♖xe6 fxe6 8 ♖e3 (8 ♖h3 followed by ♖f2 is also good) 8...♖d6 9 ♖d2 ♔e7 10 ♖h3 ♖bd7 11 ♖f2 ♖hg8 12 0-0-0 g5 13 g4! ♖af8 14 h4 with strong pressure on the kingside (Arkhipov-Panchenko, Russia 1993).

- 7 ♖e3 ♖bd7
- 8 ♖e2 ♖c5
- 9 ♔f2 ♔e7
- 10 ♖d1 ♖xe3+
- 11 ♔xe3

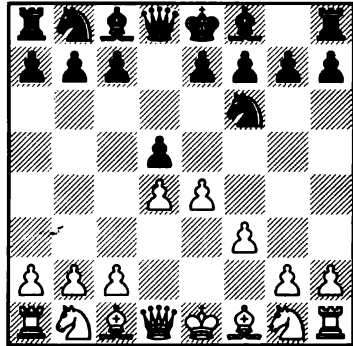


The critical position of the variation, which can be assessed as slightly better for White. His pieces are more actively and harmoniously placed. He is already occupying the d-file, where the doubling of rooks is possible, his king stands well at e3, and Black also has to keep an eye on the light-square bishop.

However, readers who do not like an early exchange of queens and prefer more active play can be referred to the Psakhis-Sturua game examined above.

5.2 (1 e4 d6 2 d4 ♖f6 3 f3)

3 ... d5



An interesting idea, leading to more complicated play than 3...e5. Black is ready to go in for positions similar to the Steinitz Variation of the French Defence (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♖f6 4 e5 ♖fd7), compensating for the loss of a tempo (...d6-d5) by the fact that the white f-pawn also takes two moves to go to f4.

4 e5 ♖fd7

With the original, Nimzowitsch-style 4...♗g8 Black aims for a blocked position and intends to play his knight to f5 via h6 or e7. Even so, White's powerful central pawn wedge and spatial advantage enable him to play actively on the wings: 5 c3 (5 ♖e3 is a good alternative) 5...c5 6 f4 cxd4 7 cxd4 ♗c6 8 ♗c3 ♗h6 9 ♖e2 ♗f5 10 ♗f3 e6 11 a3 ♗d7 12 b4 ♖c8 13 ♗d2 ♖e7 14 ♗b2 0-0 (14...h5!? is more accurate, but 15 0-0 0-0 16 ♗d1 followed by ♗e3 still leaves White with a slight advantage – Black's kingside pawns are weakened) 15 0-0 a5 16 g4 (Gofstein-Beim, Tel Aviv 1992). Black is in difficulties – his knight has to retreat to the edge of the board (h6), since after 16...♗h4 17 ♗xh4 ♖xh4 18 g5! White for a time can shut the bishop out of the game. The position is very close in structure to the 3 e5 variation of the French Defence, which should undoubtedly facilitate the readers' understanding of it.

5 f4

This position was interpreted in interesting fashion by Kasparov in his game with Curt Hansen (Denmark 1990): 5 c4!? dxc4 6 ♖xc4 e6 7 f4 c5 8 dxc5! (not allowing the opponent to initiate counterplay against d4) 8...♖xc5 9 ♗f3 a6 10 ♗c3 b5 11 ♖d3 ♖b7 12 a3 ♗c6 13 ♗e4 0-0 14 h4! (the black king will not find peace on the kingside) 14...♖e7 15 ♖e3 f6 16 ♖c2 fxe5

17 ♗fg5 ♗e8 18 ♗d3 with a very strong attack. It is worth noting White's pretty, although typical actions, enabling him to transform a slight initiative into a powerful offensive.

5 ... c5

If 5...e6 it is best to transpose into the Kasparov-Hansen game by 6 c4.

6 ♗f3 ♗c6

7 ♖e3!

An accurate response. After the natural 7 c3 cxd4 8 cxd4 ♗b6 9 ♗c3 ♖f5 Black frees his light-square bishop and obtains a satisfactory game (Hoeksema-Hodgson, Leeuwarden 1993).

7 ... cxd4

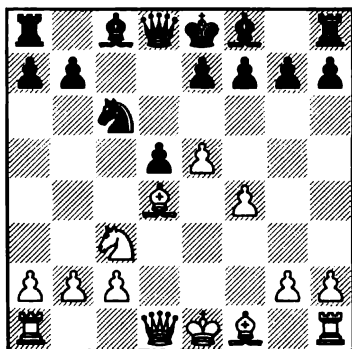
If Black does not wish to transpose into the French Defence by 7...♗b6 8 ♗c3 e6, then the text move is practically forced. However, in the French too things are not easy for him after 9 ♗a4 ♗a5+ 10 c3:

(a) 10...cxd4 (this variation with a piece sacrifice, which used to be fashionable, is not often seen now – White gains a stable advantage) 11 b4 ♗xb4 12 cxb4 ♖xb4+ 13 ♖d2 ♖xd2+ 14 ♗xd2 b6 15 ♗b3 g5 16 ♗b5 gxf4 17 ♗xa5 bxa5 18 ♗f3 ♖b8 19 ♖cl± (Yudasin-Palatnik, USSR 1987);

(b) 10...c4 11 b4 ♗c7 12 ♖e2 ♖e7 13 a3!? f5 14 ♖g1 (an interesting plan, but it proves effective only due to Black's inaccurate play; after 14 ♗b2!? White would have retained an

opening advantage) 14...♘f8 15 g4 (15 h3!?) 15...fxg4 16 ♖xg4 g6 17 ♙f2 b6 (after 17...♘d8!?! 18 ♘b2 a5 Black would have succeeded in gaining counterplay) 18 ♘b2 ♙d7 19 a4 a6 20 ♗b1, and White has a solid initiative (Short-Psakhis, Moscow 1994).

8 ♘xd4 ♘xd4
9 ♙xd4 ♘b8
10 ♘c3 ♘c6



The resulting 'French-style' position can be assessed as favourable to White: he is slightly ahead in development and the e5-f4 pawn pair puts pressure on Black's position. After 11 ♙b5 (11 ♙f2!?! is also good) 11...e6 12 a3 ♙d7 13 ♙xc6 ♙xc6?! 14 ♗d2 Black's position became unpleasant – his slight-square bishop resembles a pawn (Gelfand-Adams, Wijk aan Zee 1994) - cf. *Illustrative Game No.5*.

Slightly better was 13...bxc6 14 ♗a4 ♗a5+ 15 c3 c5 16 ♘xc5 ♙xc5 17 b4, but here too Black faces a difficult defence.

Game 5 (p.70)
Gelfand-Adams
Wijk aan Zee 1994

1 d4 d6
2 e4 ♘f6
3 f3

From an Indian set-up the game has transposed into a Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence, which is a typical feature of modern chess – the players aim for as long as possible to camouflage their opening intentions.

3 ... d5
4 e5 ♘fd7
5 f4 c5
6 ♘f3 ♘c6
7 ♙e3 cxd4
8 ♘xd4 ♘xd4
9 ♙xd4 ♘b8
10 ♘c3 ♘c6
11 ♙b5

White consistently carries out the plan of maintaining his strong bishop at d4. 11 ♙f2 e6 12 ♙d3± was also quite good.

11 ... e6
12 a3

As shown by Gelfand, after 12 ♗d2 ♗a5 13 a3 ♙d7 14 ♙xc6 bxc6 15 0-0 c5 16 b4 ♗c7! or 12 0-0 ♙d7 13 f5 ♗h4!?! Black would have gained counterplay.

12 ... ♙d7
13 ♙xc6 ♙xc6?!

A serious inaccuracy, after which this bishop has no future.

Essential was 13...bxc6! 14 ♘a4 ♗a5+ 15 c3 c5 16 ♘xc5 ♙xc5 17 b4, and now 17...♙xd4! (the best

practical chance) 18 bxa5 ♖xc3+ 19 ♕f2 0-0! 20 ♜c1 ♖xa5, when the two bishops and the pawn give Black some compensation for the queen (analysis by Gelfand).

14 0-0 g6
 15 ♗d2 ♗c7
 16 ♠f3 b6
 17 ♘d1!

The knight is transferred to e3 from where it will have an active influence on both wings.

17 ... h5

Black is condemned to passive defence. After 17...♖c5 18 ♜c3 ♖xd4+ 19 ♗xd4 the white knight is an order of magnitude stronger than the ♖d7.

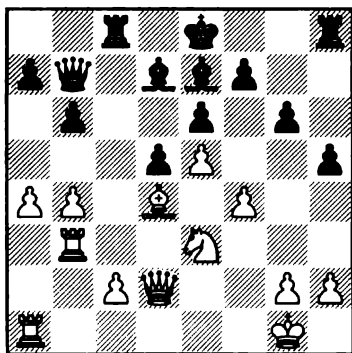
18 a4!

A subtle move, beginning an attack on the b6 pawn.

18 ... ♖c5
 19 ♜c3 ♖e7
 20 b4! ♗b7

Or 20...♖xb4 21 ♜xc6!±.

21 ♜b3 ♖d7
 22 ♘e3 ♜c8



White has carried out a great deal of preparatory work – the opponent's pieces have moved across to the queenside and now was the right time to land a tactical blow: 23 f5! ♖g5 (23...gxf5 24 ♘xf5! exf5 25 e6±) 24 fxg6 fxg6 25 ♗d3 with an obvious advantage. But he misses this opportunity.

23 a5 ♖b5!?
 24 axb6 a6!

This move is the point of Black's defence. He is able to consolidate his defensive lines on this part of the board, almost nullifying White's attacking efforts.

25 ♜c3 ♘d7?

Black loses the thread. Correct was 25...♜xc3 26 ♗xc3 ♘d7 (26...0-0 is bad in view of 27 g4 with an attack for White) 27 ♖c5 ♜c8 28 ♗d4 and now 28...♜xc5!! (a difficult move to find) 29 bxc5 ♗c6 30 c4 ♖xc4 31 b7 ♘c7 32 ♗b2 ♖b5 would enable him to set up a practically impregnable position.

26 ♜c5! ♜xc5
 27 bxc5

27 ♖xc5 with the idea of c2-c4 was stronger.

27 ... ♜c8
 28 c4 dxc4

Or 28...♖xc4 29 ♘xc4 dxc4 30 ♖f2+ ♘e8 31 ♗b4±.

29 ♜c1 ♘e8
 30 ♘xc4 ♗d5
 31 ♘a5 ♖c6

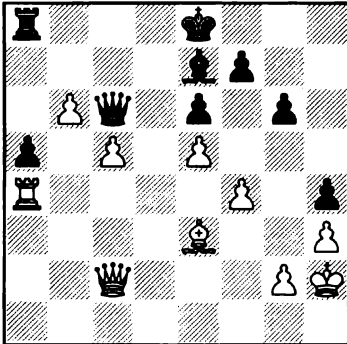
White would have had to act precisely after 31...♜xc5 (31...♖xc5? 32 ♜xc5! ♜xc5 33 b7 and

wins) 32 ♖d1! (32 b7?! ♖xc1+ 33 ♗xc1 ♗xd4+ 34 ♕h1 ♗b6! 35 ♗c8+ ♔d8 36 b8=♗ ♗xa5) 32...♔a4 33 b7 ♖b5 34 ♖c1 ♔b4 35 ♗f2 ♔xa5 36 ♖c8+ ♕d7 37 b8=♗ ♖xb8 38 ♖xb8, when he retains an advantage.

- | | | |
|----|------|------|
| 32 | ♔e3 | ♗e4 |
| 33 | ♖xc6 | ♗xc6 |
| 34 | h3 | ♗b5 |
| 35 | ♗c2 | ♗c6 |
| 36 | ♕h2 | |

Now, or on the next move, 36 ♗e2! was more accurate, controlling b5.

- | | | |
|----|-----|-----|
| 36 | ... | a5 |
| 37 | ♖a1 | ♖a8 |
| 38 | ♖a4 | h4 |



- | | | |
|----|-----|-----|
| 39 | ♗a2 | ♗b5 |
| 40 | ♗c4 | ♗c6 |
| 41 | ♗a2 | ♗b5 |
| 42 | c6! | |

After repeating moves to gain time, White carries out the correct winning plan – by diverting the black queen he breaks through with his rook on the a-file.

- | | | |
|----|------|-----|
| 42 | ... | ♗c6 |
| 43 | ♖xa5 | ♖b8 |
| 44 | ♖a7 | ♗e4 |

44...♔d8 is strongly met by 45 ♗a3!, controlling the a3-f8 diagonal.

- | | | |
|----|------|-----|
| 45 | ♗b3 | ♕f8 |
| 46 | ♖d7 | g5 |
| 47 | ♖d4! | |

The rook operates successfully over the whole board.

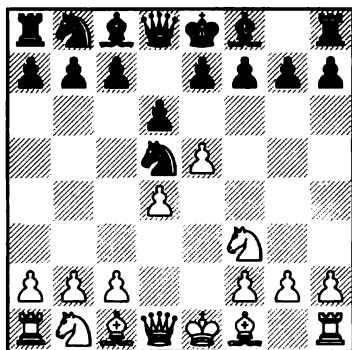
- | | | |
|----|------|------|
| 47 | ... | ♗f5 |
| 48 | ♖c4 | ♖b7 |
| 49 | ♖c8+ | ♕g7 |
| 50 | ♖c7 | gxf4 |
| 51 | ♔d4 | ♗e4 |
| 52 | ♗f3! | |

Black resigns

After 52...♗xd4 53 ♖xb7 ♔c5 54 ♗g4+ further resistance is impossible.

6 Alekhine Defence

- | | | |
|---|-----|-----|
| 1 | e4 | ♘f6 |
| 2 | e5 | ♘d5 |
| 3 | d4 | d6 |
| 4 | ♗f3 | |



This system of development is considered one of the strongest for White. He does not hurry with c2-c4, but first completes the mobilisation of his kingside and supports his e5 pawn. This method of play is very popular, which is explained by the fact that White does not take too much of a risk – he wants to gain a slight, but enduring advantage.

Black's main responses are 4...♘c6 (6.1), 4...dxe5 (6.2), 4...g6 (6.3) and 4...♗g4 (6.4).

Other tries:

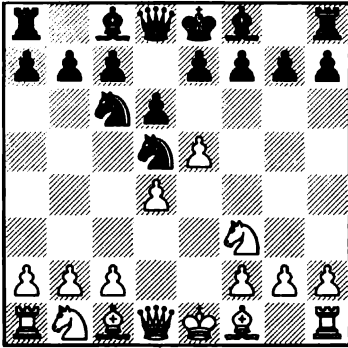
4...♗b6 5 a4 (before Black has managed to deploy his forces comfortably, it is good to harass the knight) 5...a5 (5...♗g4 is risky on account of 6 a5 ♗b6d7 7 h3 ♗h5 8

g4 ♗g6 9 e6!±, when the threat of ♗g5 is very dangerous) 6 exd6 (6 ♗b5+, with the idea of denying the black knight the c6 square, is also good) 6...cxd6 7 d5 ♗a6 8 ♗e3 ♗d7 9 ♗g5 ♗b4 10 ♗c3 g6 11 ♗f3 f6 12 ♗e6 ♗xe6 13 dxe6 ♗g7 14 ♗b5+ (Kovalev-Leko, Tilburg 1992). Black stands worse – the e6 pawn splits his position in two, and the white bishops are very dangerous).

4...c6 (vacating c7 for the retreat of the knight) 5 c4 ♗c7 (the less logical 5...♗b6 6 ♗e2 ♗g4 7 ♗bd2 dxe5 8 ♗xe5 ♗f5 9 ♗df3 e6 10 ♗g5! gave White the advantage in Kovalev-Dreev, USSR 1986) 6 h3 (preventing ...♗g4) 6...dxe5 7 ♗xe5 ♗d7 8 ♗f3 g6 9 ♗c3 ♗g7 10 ♗e2 0-0 11 ♗f4 ♗e6 12 ♗e3 ♗c7 13 ♗c1 c5 14 dxc5 ♗dxc5 15 0-0 (Anand-Suba, Palma de Mallorca 1989). By simple, natural moves White has gained a marked advantage: a lead in development, strong-points for his queen's knight, and the possibility of a pawn offensive on the queenside. In addition, it is not easy for Black to develop his queen's bishop.

6.1 (1 e4 ♗f6 2 e5 ♗d5 3 d4 d6 4 ♗f3)

4 ... ♗c6



This move, attacking the central squares, allows a standard pawn sacrifice which significantly hinders the opponent's development and secures White an enduring initiative.

5 c4 ♖b6
6 e6! ♗e6

White's attacking possibilities are based on the insecure position of the black king. The main blow must be prepared along the b1-h7 and h5-e8 diagonals, and it is this that explains his subsequent moves.

7 ♘c3 ♗g6

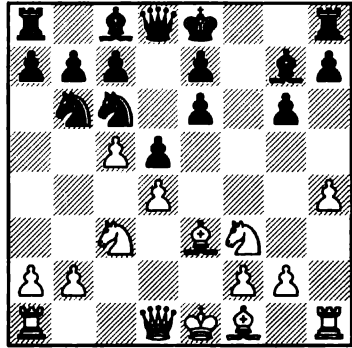
The freeing attempt 7...e5 is also insufficient for equality: 8 d5 ♘d4 9 ♘xd4 exd4 10 ♗xd4 e5 11 dxe6 ♗xe6 12 ♗e2± (Vogt-Böhm, Polanica Zdroj 1980)

8 h4 ♗g7
9 ♗e3 d5

After 9...♘d7 10 h5 ♘f8 11 ♗d2 followed by queenside castling, White retains strong pressure.

10 c5

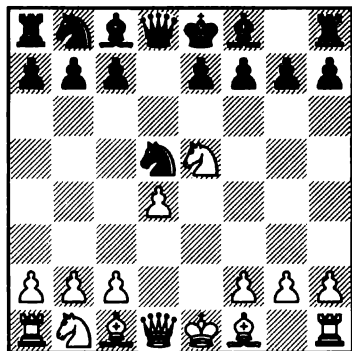
Black has to decide where to move his knight.



After 10...♘c4?! 11 ♗xc4 dxc4 12 ♗a4 ♗d7 13 0-0-0 White has a clear advantage (Nunn-Vaganian, London 1986). Nunn suggests 10...♘d7, but then 11 h5 e5 12 h6 ♗f6 13 ♘xd5 exd4 14 ♘xf6+ exf6 15 ♘xd4 leaves White with the two bishops and the better placed king.

6.2 (1 e4 ♘f6 2 e5 ♘d5 3 d4 d6 4 ♘f3)

4 ... dxe5
5 ♘xe5



After relieving somewhat the situation in the centre, Black will try to arrange play against the knight at e5 with 5...♘d7 (6.21) or 5...g6 (6.22).

After 5...e6 6 ♖f3 ♗f6 7 ♗g3 h6 8 ♘c3 ♘b4 (the exchange on c3 merely strengthens White's centre) 9 ♙b5+ c6 10 ♙a4 ♘d7 11 ♘e4 ♗f5 12 f3 ♘xe5 13 dxe5 ♙d7 14 a3 ♘d5 15 c4 ♘b6 16 ♙c2 White stands better, according to analysis by Tal – Black is behind in development, and his queen, under cross-fire, is badly placed in front of his other pieces.

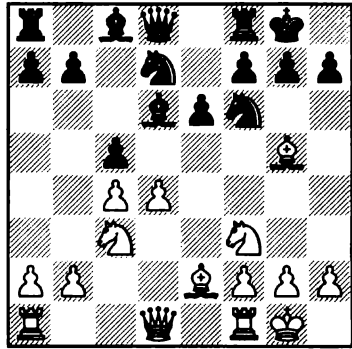
6.21 (1 e4 ♘f6 2 e5 ♘d5 3 d4 d6
4 ♘f3 dxe5 5 ♘xe5)

5 ... ♘d7

Black provokes his opponent into making the typical sacrifice 6 ♘xf7. According to current analysis this gives White the advantage, but we consider it impractical to study long and complicated variations when there is little probability of them being encountered in practice. We therefore recommend another way of fighting for an advantage.

6 ♘f3!? e6
7 c4 ♘5f6
8 ♙e2 c5
9 0-0 ♙d6
10 ♘c3 0-0
11 ♙g5

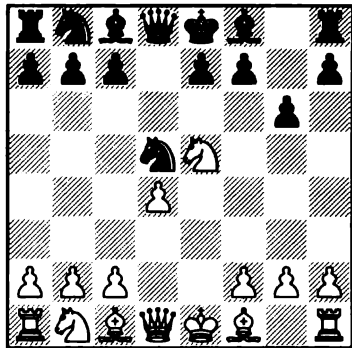
It is not easy for Black to find a successful arrangement of his pieces.



The game Lautier-Shirov (Biel 1992) continued 11...h6 12 ♙h4 g5 13 ♙g3 ♙xg3 14 hxg3 b6 15 d5, and White's advantage became clear.

6.22 (1 e4 ♘f6 2 e5 ♘d5 3 d4 d6
4 ♘f3 dxe5 5 ♘xe5)

5 ... g6



Black tries to solve the problem of developing his kingside without playing ...e7-e6.

6 c4

The most practical 'central' arrangement of the forces.

6 ... ♖b6

6...♗f6 also does not promise equality: 7 ♖e2 ♗g7 8 ♗c3 0-0 9 ♗f4 c6 10 0-0 ♗a6 11 ♖d2 ♗f5 12 ♗ad1± (Dolmatov-Kengis, USSR 1980).

7 ♗c3 ♗g7

8 ♗e3 c5

Black's lack of space tells in the variation 8...♗e6 9 f4 c6 10 b3 ♗d7 11 ♗e2± (Vitolinsh-Kengis, Riga 1988).

9 dxc5

White goes into a slightly better ending.

9 ... ♖xd1+

10 ♖xd1 ♗xe5

11 cxb6 ♗xc3+

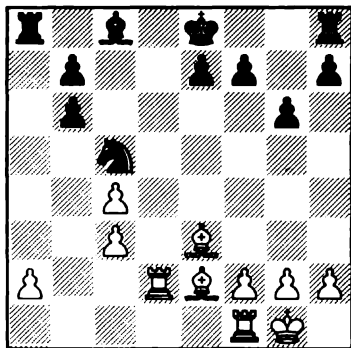
11...axb6 12 ♗d2 is no better.

12 bxc3 axb6

13 ♗d2 ♗d7

14 ♗e2 ♗c5

15 0-0

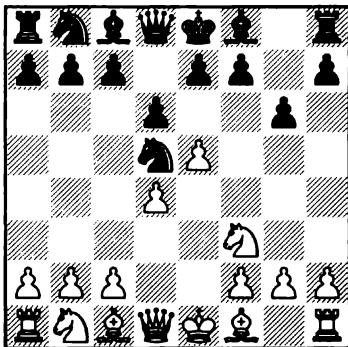


We are following the game Ernst-Bagirov (Helsinki 1992). White,

with his two active bishops and control of the d-file, has the better chances.

6.3 (1 e4 ♗f6 2 e5 ♗d5 3 d4 d6 4 ♗f3)

4 ... g6



Black intensifies the pressure on the opponent's centre and prepares to castle quickly.

5 ♗c4

The most popular continuation, recommended by Keres.

5 ... ♗b6

The attempt to support the centralised knight also does not promise equality: 5...c6 6 0-0 ♗g7 7 exd6 (Black is unable to recapture with the pawn, and now White's pressure on the e-file will have definite significance; the less common 7 h3 0-0 8 exd6 exd6 is examined in *Illustrative Game No.6*, Kasparov-Ivanchuk, Las Palmas 1996) 7...♖xd6 8 ♗g5 (8 h3 is also good, not allowing ...♗g4) 8...♗g4

9 ♖bd2 ♗d7 10 ♜e1 e6 11 h3 ♙xf3
 12 ♗xf3 0-0 13 ♙h4 ♜ac8 14 ♙g3
 with the initiative for White, who
 has the two bishops (V.Spasov-
 Kengis, Manila 1992).

6 ♙b3 ♙g7
 7 a4

Before completing the deploy-
 ment of his forces, White aims to
 provoke ...a7-a5, since Black
 should not allow the cramping
 advance of the white a-pawn.

7 ... a5

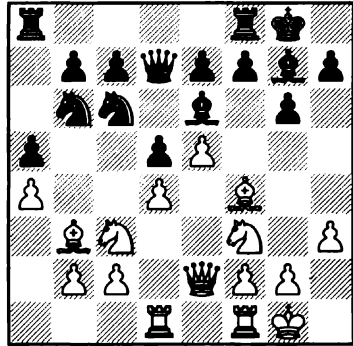
In the event of 7...d5 8 a5 ♗c4 9
 ♖bd2 ♗xd2 (or 9...b5 10 axb6
 ♗xb6 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♜e1 ♙a6 13
 c3 ♙b5 14 e6!±, Short-Alburt,
 Foxboro 1985) 10 ♙xd2 0-0 11 0-0
 ♙g4 12 h3 ♙xf3 13 ♜xf3 e6 14
 ♙b4 ♜e8 15 ♙a4 c6 16 c3 White's
 two powerful bishops give him the
 advantage (Zapata-Alburt, New
 York 1988).

Black also fails to solve his
 problems with 7...dxe5 8 a5 ♗d5
 (8...♗d6d7 runs into a combination -
 9 ♙xf7+! ♗xf7 10 ♗g5+ ♗g8 11
 ♗e6 ♜e8 12 ♗xc7 ♜d8 13 ♗xa8
 exd4 14 c3 ♗c5 15 cxd4 ♙xd4 16
 0-0±, Christiansen-Alburt, USA
 1990) 9 ♗xe5 0-0 10 0-0 c5 11
 ♗xf7! (such blows are fairly
 common in positions of this type)
 11...♗xf7 (11...♜xf7 is strongly met
 by 12 dxc5! e6 13 c4±, exploiting
 the undefended black queen) 12
 ♜f3+ ♗g8 13 ♜xd5+ ♜xd5 14
 ♙xd5+ e6 15 ♙e4 cxd4 16 ♙g5,
 when White has a clear advantage
 (Nunn-Stohl, Ankenbrot 1991).

8 0-0 0-0
 9 h3 ♗c6
 10 ♜e2 d5

After 10...dxe5 11 dxe5 ♗d4 12
 ♗xd4 ♜xd4 13 ♜e1 e6 14 ♗d2
 White stands better.

11 ♗c3 ♙e6
 12 ♙f4 ♜d7
 13 ♜ad1



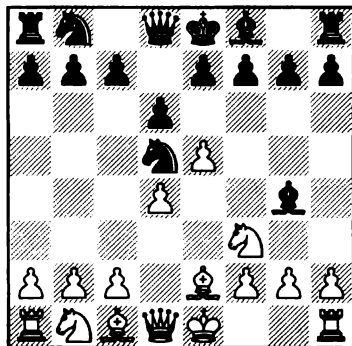
White controls more space, and
 his opponent has practically no
 counterplay. Keres-Kupka (Kapfen-
 berg 1970), the game where this
 position first occurred, continued
 13...♙a6 14 ♜d2 ♗d8 15 ♙h6 c6 16
 ♜f4 ♙a8 17 ♜fe1 f6 18 ♙xg7 ♗xg7
 19 ♜e2 with advantage to White.

6.4 (1 e4 ♗f6 2 e5 ♗d5 3 d4 d6 4
 ♗f3)

4 ... ♙g4

The Modern Variation. Almost
 every other game played with the
 Alekhine Defence reaches this
 position – hence the name of the
 variation.

5 ♖e2



The most logical and accurate move, after which Black has a choice: 5...c6 (6.41) or 5...e6 (6.42).

The exchange on e5 is premature: 5...dxe5 6 ♘xe5 ♙xe2 7 ♚xe2 c6 8 ♚xf3! ♘f6 9 ♚b3!, and Black can resign (Golovei-Lemachko, Kalinin-grad 1970).

5...♘c6 is best met by 6 0-0:

(a) 6...dxe5 7 ♘xe5 ♙xe2 8 ♚xe2 ♘xd4, when Black wins a pawn but condemns himself to a difficult defence - 9 ♚c4 c5 10 ♙e3! a6 11 ♘c3 e6 12 ♙xd4 ♘b6 13 ♚b3 cxd4 14 ♘a4! ♘xa4 15 ♚xb7 with a very strong attack (Gofstein-Hansen, Reykjavik 1985);

(b) 6...g6 7 e6! fxe6 8 ♘g5, and if 8...♙xe2 9 ♚xe2 ♘xd4 10 ♚d3!, when the position of the knight at d4, forced to cover e6, is too insecure;

(c) 6...♘b6 7 h3! ♙xf3 (7...♙h5 8 c6!) 8 ♙xf3 dxe5 9 dxe5 ♚xd1 10 ♚xd1 e6 11 b3 (or 11 ♙xc6+!?) 11...♙c7 12 ♙b2. This position is

preferable for White. He exchanges on c6, spoils Black's pawns and gains a slight but enduring advantage (analysis by Bagirov).

6.41 (1 e4 ♘f6 2 e5 ♘d5 3 d4 d6
4 ♘f3 ♙g4 5 ♙e2)

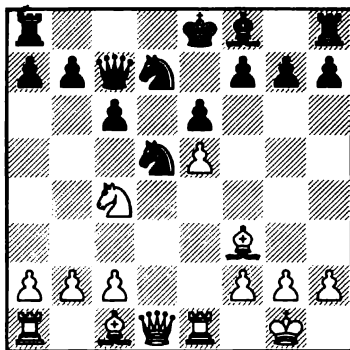
5 ... c6
6 0-0 ♙xf3

An idea of Grandmaster Flohr. Initially he played 6...dxe5 against Botvinnik (Moscow 1936), but after 7 ♘xe5 ♙xe2 8 ♚xe2 ♘d7 9 f4 e6 10 c4 ♘f6 11 ♙e3 ♙e7 12 ♘c3 White gained the advantage.

7 ♙xf3 dxe5
8 dxe5 e6
9 ♘d2 ♘d7

The idea of Black exchanging on f3 is to attack the e5 pawn. White has found a successful antidote to this plan.

10 ♚e1 ♚c7
11 ♘c4



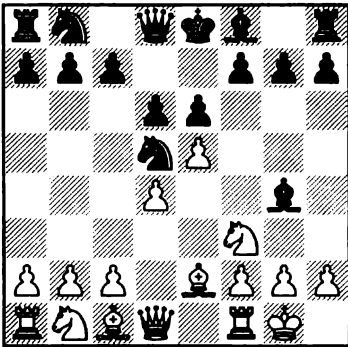
This position was reached in the game Gufeld-Goh (Penang 1991),

where 11...b5 encountered the excellent reply 12 ♙xd5 cxd5 13 ♘d6+! ♙xd6 14 ♚xd5!, winning material.

11...♙e7 was better, although here too 12 ♘d6+ ♙xd6 13 exd6 guarantees White a solid advantage.

6.42 (1 e4 ♘f6 2 e5 ♘d5 3 d4 d6 4 ♘f3 ♙g4 5 ♙e2)

5 ... e6
6 0-0



The most popular line of the Alekhine Defence. White gains a strong centre and good prospects of play on the queenside. Black is cramped and must try to resist the opponent's growing initiative.

6 ... ♙e7

The most topical continuation. After 6...♘c6 White advances his c- and d-pawns and gains the advantage: 7 c4 ♘b6 (or 7...♘de7 8 exd6! ♚xd6 9 ♘c3 ♙xf3 10 ♙xf3 ♘xd4 11 ♙xb7 ♚b8 12 ♙e4 with advantage to White, Ciocaltea-

Knezevic, Vrnjacka Banja 1975) 8 exd6 cxd6 9 d5! exd5 10 cxd5 ♙xf3 11 gxf3! (although risky-looking, the doubling of the pawns seriously hinders Black's normal development) 11...♘e5 12 ♙b5+ ♘ed7 13 ♚d4 ♚f6 14 ♚e1+ ♙e7 (according to analysis by Boleslavsky, Black ends up in a difficult position after 14...♘d8 15 ♚d1! ♚f5 16 ♘c3 ♘e5 17 f4 ♚g4+ 18 ♚xg4 ♘xg4 19 ♘a4!) 15 ♚xf6 gxf6 16 ♘c3 a6 17 ♙e2 ♘e5 18 f4, and the advantage of the two bishops is very perceptible (Vogt-Heidenfeld, Skopje 1972).

If 6...a6 the most accurate is 7 c4 ♘b6 8 exd6 cxd6 9 ♘c3±, while 6...♘b6 (6...dxe5 7 ♘xe5 ♙xe2 8 ♚xe2 ♘d7 9 ♚d1!±) 7 c4 dxe5 8 ♘xe5 ♙xe2 9 ♚xe2 ♚xd4 is risky in view of 10 ♚d1 ♚c5 11 b4! ♚e7 (11...♚xb4 12 ♚f3) 12 ♘c3 g6 13 c5 (Ambroz-Neckar, Czechoslovakia 1978). White's attack is very dangerous – it is difficult for Black to disentangle his pieces.

7 c4 ♘b6

8 h3

This modest move is the most unpleasant for Black.

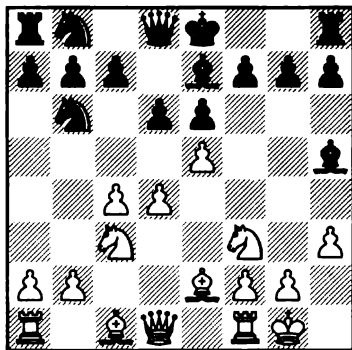
8 ... ♙h5

After 8...♙xf3 9 ♙xf3 ♘c6 10 ♙xc6+ bxc6 11 ♘c3 0-0 12 b3 a5 13 ♙e3 ♘d7 14 ♚h5 White gains the advantage (Vasyukov-Torre, Manila 1974).

9 ♘c3

White does not exchange on d6, but calmly continues his develop-

ment, which sets Black obvious problems.



9 ... 0-0

9...dxc6 is strongly met by 10 exd6 cxd6 11 d5! exd5 12 dxd5, and 9...dxe5 10 dxe5 e2 11 xxe2 xxd4 12 d1± is no better.

10 e3 d5

The recurring theme of Black's play is the d5 square.

It should be mentioned that 10...dxc6 is very strongly met by 11 exd6 cxd6 12 d5 exd5 13 dxd5 dxd5 14 xxd5! In view of his badly placed bishop at h5, Black stands worse.

10...dxe5 is also unpromising: after 11 dxe5 e2 12 xxe2 d8d7 13 ad1 c6 14 e4 d8c8 15 d5c5 White has a clear positional advantage (Geller-Vaganian, Leningrad 1971).

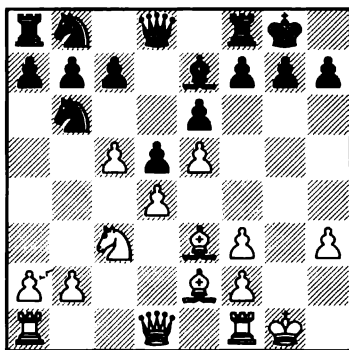
10...a5 is often played, although here too White retains the initiative with accurate play: 11 b3 da6 (or 11...d5 12 c5 d8c8 13 e1 e2 14 xxe2 b6 15 cxb6 dxb6 16 d3±,

Tivyakov-Yermolinsky, New York 1994; if 12...d6d7 the most accurate is 13 d2±) 12 g4! e6g6 13 h4! h5 (bad, of course, is 13... e4h4? 14 g5 or 13...dxe5? 14 h5 e4b4 15 hxg6 e3c3 16 gxf7+ xf7 17 dxe5 e1a1 18 dxf7 cxf7 19 xa1, Dorfman-Bagirov, Moscow 1989) 14 g5 e5f5 15 exd6 cxd6 16 d5 e5 17 d2d2 g6 18 dde4 with a positional advantage (analysis by Dorfman).

11 c5 e3f3

11...d6d7 is passive: 12 c1 b6 13 c6!±.

12 gxf3!?



White's main continuation in this variation. The basic idea is that Black cannot play 12...dxc4? on account of 13 e4c4 dxc4 14 a4, winning a pawn, which means that he is obliged to retreat virtually his only developed piece, leaving him cramped.

12 ... d8c8

12...d6d7 can be met by 13 h1 b6 14 b4 a5 15 a3 c6 16 d2 f5 17

♖ab1 ♜f7 18 f4 (Ciocaltea-Pribyl, Bucharest 1975), when White retains the advantage thanks to his spatial advantage and possibility of play on either flank.

13 f4 ♝c6

13... $\text{g6}?!$ is an indifferent move, since on the whole it does not prevent f4-f5 . The game Levitina-Alexandria (Moscow 1975) continued 14 ♞h2 ♞h8 15 f5! gxf5 (15... exf5 16 ♞b3!) 16 ♜g1 ♜g8 17 ♞xg8+ ♞xg8 , and now, according to Bagirov, 18 ♞b3! b6 19 ♜g1 ♞f8 20 ♞xd5! exd5 21 ♞xd5 c6 22 $\text{♞g2}\pm$.

After 13... ♞h4 14 ♞d3 g6 15 ♞g4 ♞h8 16 b4 ♝c6 17 a3 f5 18 ♞d1 ♞g7 19 ♞h2 Black is seriously cramped (Solozhenkin-Bagirov, USSR 1986).

The play is similar after 13... f5 14 b4 b6 15 a3 c6 16 ♞h2 ♜f7 17 ♞a4 ♞f8 18 ♜c1 ♞b7 19 ♞d2 g6 20 $\text{♞d3}\pm$ (R.Byrne-Vukic, Bugojno 1978).

13... ♞e8 is well met by the typical 14 f5! exf5 15 $\text{♞b3}\pm$ (Noble-Briao, corr. 1990/4).

14 f5 exf5

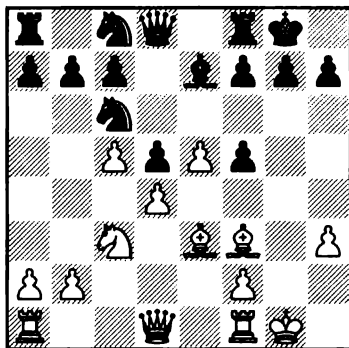
15 ♞f3

The critical position of the variation (see diagram next column). White breaks though on d5 , which gives him the initiative:

15... $\text{♞h4}?!$ 16 ♞xd5 ♞8e7 17 ♞xc6 bxc6 18 $\text{♞h5}\pm$ (Lukin-Yuneev, Daugavpils 1979).

15... f4 16 ♞xf4 ♞g5 17 ♞g3 ♞8e7 18 ♞g4 f5 (or 18... b6 19 f4

♞h6 20 cxb6 axb6 21 $\text{♞d3}\pm$) 19 $\text{exf6}\pm$ (Sax-Ivanchuk, Tilburg 1989).



15... ♞g5 16 ♞xd5 f4 17 ♞xf4 (17 ♞c1 ♞d7 18 $\text{b4!}\pm$ is also good, Copie-Pena Gomez, corr. 1989) 17... ♞xf4 18 ♞xf4 ♞xd4 19 ♞g3 ♞8e7 20 $\text{♞c2}\pm$ (Tsheshkovsky-Albur, USSR 1978).

Game 6 (p.76)

Kasparov-Ivanchuk

Las Palmas 1996

1 e4 ♞f6

The Alekhine Defence rarely occurs at such a high level.

2 e5 ♞d5

3 d4 d6

4 ♞f3 g6

5 ♞c4 c6

6 0-0 ♞g7

7 h3

The immediate 7 exd6 is more usual – see the analysis. The point is that if 7... exd6 the check 8 ♞e1+ is unpleasant.

7 ... 0-0
8 exd6 exd6

8...♖xd6 would have transposed into familiar set-ups. Now, however, the play takes an unexplored course, which was evidently part of Ivanchuk's plans.

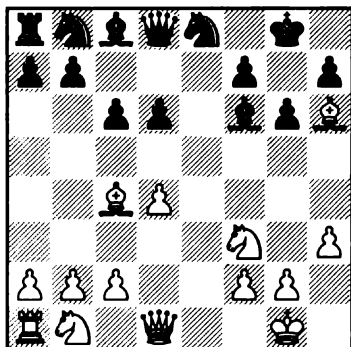
9 ♖e1

Of course, the exchange on d5 is unjustified – after 9 ♖xd5 cxd5 the d5 pawn cannot be approached, and the two black infantrymen successfully control the central squares.

9 ... ♘c7
10 ♖g5

Black's position looks solid, but White skilfully increases the pressure.

10 ... ♖f6
11 ♖h6 ♖e8
12 ♖xe8+ ♘xe8



13 ♖b3!?

A critical moment. Kasparov finds a plan for activating his pieces in almost all variations, involving a subtle pawn sacrifice.

The alternative was 13 ♘c3 d5 14 ♖d3 ♘d6 15 ♖f4 with some initiative for White.

13 ... d5
14 c4

A typical way of attacking the centre, but here it involves a sacrifice of material.

14 ... dxc4

The alternative was 14...♖e6!? 15 cxd5 cxd5 16 ♘c3 ♘c6 with a passive position. On the other hand, the ♖b3 would not have been freed.

15 ♖xc4 ♘d6
16 ♖b3 ♘f5
17 ♖d2! ♘d7

After lengthy consideration Black decides against winning the d4 pawn: 17...♘xd4 18 ♘xd4 ♖xd4 19 ♖e1 ♖e5 20 ♘c3 ♖f5 21 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 22 g4 ♖e6 23 ♖d1 ♘a6 24 ♖xe6 fxe6 25 ♘e4, or 17...♖xd4 18 ♖g5 ♖d6 19 ♘c3 ♖g7 20 ♖xd6 ♘xd6 21 ♖d1 ♖f8 22 ♖f4 – in both cases with a dangerous initiative for White (analysis by Dokhoian).

18 ♘c3 ♘xb6
19 ♖xb6 ♘f8
20 ♖d1 ♖e6
21 d5!

Again very strong – White opens up the position, disregarding the possible loss of his b2 pawn.

21 ... cxd5
22 ♘xd5 ♖c8

Capturing on b2 is risky – 22...♖xb2 23 ♖f4 ♖b8 (after 23...♖a5 24 ♘e5 or 23...♖xd5 24 ♖xd5! White's initiative is very dangerous) 24 ♘c7 ♖xb3 25 axb3

♘e6 26 ♘xe6 fxe6 27 ♖e4 ♖e8 28 ♖xb7 ♜d8 29 ♜e1, and White has strong pressure.

But after the text move the situation is still rather difficult for Black – White has no real weaknesses, and he retains unpleasant pressure on the central files.

23 ♖e3!

A multi-purpose move – the advance of the b-pawn is provoked, and the queen supports the advance of the knight into the centre.

23 ... b6
24 ♘e5 ♜c5
25 ♘g4 ♙xg4
26 hxg4 ♚g7
27 f4!

Tightening the ring.

27 ... h6

27...♙xb2 is dangerous in view of 28 ♖f2 (28 g5!?) 28...♙f6 (28...♙a3 29 ♖d4+) 29 g5.

28 f5 g5

The b2 pawn is still poisoned: 28...♙xb2 29 f6+! ♙xf6 30 ♘xf6

♖xf6 31 ♜f1, and disaster strikes on f7.

29 ♖e2 ♘h7?

In terrible time-trouble Black commits a decisive mistake. Essential was 29...♜c8! (covering the back rank) 30 ♖a6 ♙xb2 31 ♖xa7 ♜c1 (31...♘d7 can be met by 32 ♘f4!?) 32 ♜xc1 ♙xc1 33 ♘f4!? ♙e3+ 34 ♚h1 ♖d7 35 ♘h5+ ♚h8 36 ♖b8 when White has the advantage, but it is still possible to hold on.

30 ♘xf6 ♖xf6
31 ♜d7 ♜e5
32 ♜xf7+ ♖xf7
33 ♖xe5+ ♖f6
34 ♖c7+ ♚h8
35 ♚h1!

Preventing the black queen from actively joining the play on the long diagonal.

35 ... a5
36 ♙e6

Black resigns

PART II: BLACK REPERTOIRE

7 Sicilian Defence

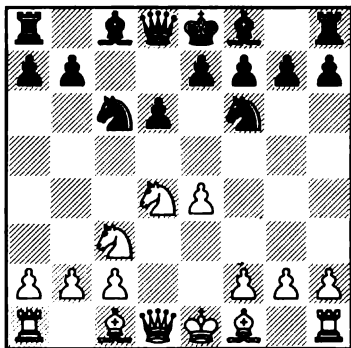
1 e4 c5
2 ♘f3

All deviations by White on moves 2 and 3 are examined in detail in our companion volume *An Opening Repertoire for the Attacking Player*. By following the course indicated there you will obtain a normal game.

2 ... d6

This move order avoids the rather fashionable 2...♘c6 3 ♖b5, where Black encounters certain problems.

3 d4 cxd4
4 ♘xd4 ♘f6
5 ♘c3 ♘c6



The introductory moves are complete and the two sides are at the crossroads. White has some spatial advantage and a slight lead in

development, but Black, in turn, has the superior pawn formation.

White must aim to sharpen the situation with active piece play, while Black should develop while simultaneously trying to suppress the opponent's activity.

White's aims are best met by 6 ♖g5 (7.1), the Rauzer Attack, and 6 ♖c4 (7.2), the Sozin Attack.

If 6 ♖e2 or 6 f4 Black's simplest is 6...g6, transposing into the Classical Dragon (cf. our companion volume), which gives him a safe game 'on his own territory'.

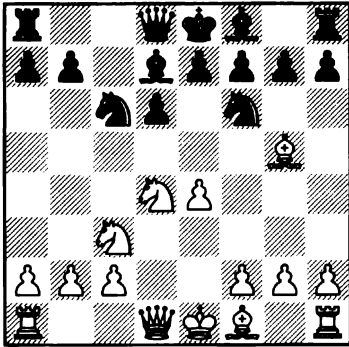
6 ♖e3 is occasionally played, when Black's most critical reply is 6...♘g4!?, e.g. 7 ♖g5 ♜b6 8 ♖b5 ♖d7 9 0-0 h6!? (9...♜xd4 10 ♖xc6 ♜xd1 11 ♖xd7+ ♜xd7 12 ♜axd1 allows White a minimal advantage) 10 ♖e3 ♘xe3 11 fxe3 g6!? 12 ♘d5 (or 12 ♜f3 ♘e5∞) 12...♜d8 13 ♖xc6 bxc6 14 ♜f3 f6 with a complicated game in which he has sufficient chances (Lugo-D.Gurevich, Chicago 1996).

7.1 (1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4
4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 ♘c6)

6 ♖g5

White intends to complete his development with the minimum expenditure of time and then begin play in the centre or on the kingside.

6 ... ♖d7



We recommend that our readers adopt this simple and logical continuation, without worrying that it occurs much less frequently than the popular 6...e6.

The move 6... ♖d7 is positionally well-founded – Black immediately sets about using his trumps (the c-file plays an important role) and begins play on the queenside. He thereby excludes an enormous number of fashionable variations of the Rauzer, where memory and knowledge often play a decisive part, and the opponent will not always be prepared for such a sideline, giving Black an additional psychological advantage. But all these arguments would be worthless, were it not for the fact that the variation is in itself viable, giving Black quite adequate chances.

White's possibilities are: 7 ♖xf6 (7.11), 7 ♖e2 (7.12) and 7 ♗d2 (7.13), the most popular.

Other tries:

7 ♖c4 (after 7 ♗d3 ♜c8 8 ♘xc6 bxc6!? both sides have chances) 7... ♗a5 8 ♖xf6 gxf6 9 0-0 (9 ♖b3 ♜g8!∞; 9 ♘b3 ♗g5 10 g3 h5!? 11 f4 ♗g4 12 ♖e2 ♗g6 13 ♗d2 f5! 14 ♖d3 fxe4 15 ♖xe4 ♖f5 16 ♖xf5 ♗xf5 17 0-0-0 0-0-0, M. Brodsky-Nevednichy, Bucharest 1994; Black has easily solved his opening problems and can face the future with confidence) 9... ♗c5 10 ♘xc6 ♗xc4!? 11 ♘a5 ♗c7 12 ♘b3 e6. Chances are roughly equal. Black has a powerful pawn centre and the two bishops, while White has the better pawn structure and more space.

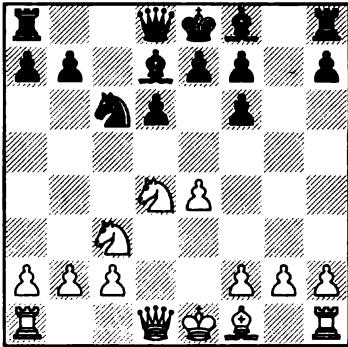
7 f4 ♗b6 (the alternative 7... ♜c8 is more risky – cf. *Illustrative Game No. 7*, Damjanovic-Stein, Havana 1968) 8 ♘b3 ♘g4 9 ♗e2 (after 9 ♗d2 ♗e3+ 10 ♗xe3 ♘xe3 ♢ Black seizes the initiative) 9... ♘d4 10 ♗d2 (10 ♘d5? ♘xe2 11 ♘xb6 axb6 12 ♘xe2 h6 13 ♖h4 g5! ♢, Matulovic-Masic, Sombor 1968) 10... ♘xb3 11 axb3 ♗e3+ 12 ♗xe3 ♘xe3 13 ♘d2 ♘xf1+ 14 ♜hxf1 e6 ♢ (Polugayevsky-Stein, Riga 1968). This typical Sicilian endgame is favourable for Black – the c-file, his superior pawn structure and the long-range bishops make White's defence difficult.

7 ♘b3 ♜c8 8 ♖e2 (this allows Black to begin sharp play on the

kingside, but also after 8 f4 ♘g4 9 ♙d3 h6 10 ♙h4 g5 11 fxg5 hxg5 12 ♙xg5 ♜xh2 13 ♜xh2 ♚b6! 14 ♙d2 ♚f2+ 15 ♚e2 ♚xe2+ 16 ♙xe2 ♘xh2 he seizes the initiative, Mosionzhik-Stein, Riga 1968) 8... h6!? 9 ♙h4 g5 10 ♙g3 h5 11 h4 g4 12 ♙f4 ♘e5 13 ♚d4 ♘g6 14 ♙g5 ♙g7 15 0-0-0 a5 16 ♙b1 0-0 (Damjanovic-Stein, Tallinn 1969). Both sides have chances – it is not easy for White to approach the black king, and the c-file and the ♙g7 may cause him serious problems.

7.11 (1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 ♘c6 6 ♙g5 ♙d7)

7 ♙xf6 gxf6



A situation fairly typical of the Sicilian: White has spoiled the opponent's kingside pawns, but in return has given Black the advantage of the two bishops and the open g-file, factors which roughly balance.

8 ♘f5

After other moves Black quickly carries out the freeing advance ...f7-f5 and gets rid of his doubled pawns:

8 ♙e2 ♚b6 (8...♜g8!?) 9 ♘b3 f5 10 exf5 ♙xf5 11 ♘d5 ♚d8 12 0-0 e6, when his chances are not worse (Wade-Averbakh, Moscow 1962).

8 ♘b3 f5 9 exf5 ♙xf5 10 ♙d3 (White plays accurately, trying immediately to exchange one of the opponent's bishops; also possible is 10 ♘d5 ♙g7 11 c3 0-0 12 ♘e3 ♙g6 13 h4 h6 14 ♙d3 e6 15 ♙xg6 fxg6 16 ♚e2 a5 17 a4 ♚b6 18 ♜a3 d5 with a complicated game, Lobron-Cifuentes, Amsterdam 1987) 10...♚d7 11 ♘d5 0-0-0 12 ♙xf5 ♚xf5 13 ♘e3 ♚g6 14 ♚e2 ♙b8 15 0-0 ♜g8, and Black's chances are not worse (Bagirov-Furman, Tbilisi 1973).

8 ♚d2 ♘xd4 9 ♚xd4 ♙g7 10 ♙e2 0-0 11 ♚d3 f5! and Black opens the position to his advantage (Schreiber-Lanka, Cannes 1993).

8 ... ♚a5

9 ♙b5

White blocks the fifth rank, trying, if only temporarily, to maintain his knight in its active position.

The attempt to exchange queens surrenders the initiative: 9 ♚d5?! ♚xd5 10 ♘d5 0-0-0 11 ♘fe3 e6! 12 ♘f4 (12 ♘xf6 ♙g7 13 ♘d7 ♙xb2 14 ♜b1 ♙c3+ is dangerous for White) 12...♙h6 13 g3 ♘e5 14 ♙e2 ♙c6 15 f3 f5 (Fabritsius-Borisenko, corr. 1963), and Black

builds up strong pressure on the opponent's position.

After 9 ♙d3 e6 10 ♜e3 0-0-0 11 a3 ♚g5 both sides have chances (Huelgo-Vera, Cuba 1989).

9 ... a6

In the given situation it is appropriate to force the white bishop to declare its intentions immediately.

10 ♙xc6 ♙xc6

The alternative 10... bxc6 , leading to a more complicated game, is also adequate.

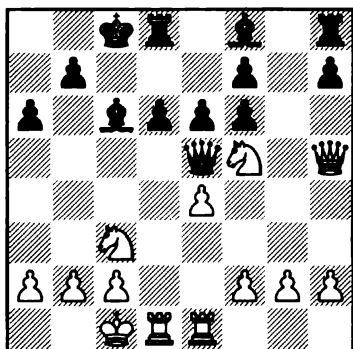
11 ♚h5

11 0-0 also achieves little. After 11...0-0-0 Black is ready to drive back the white knight from f5, which in combination with the g-file and the advance ...f6-f5 gives him interesting play.

11 ... ♚e5

12 0-0-0 e6

13 ♜he1 0-0-0

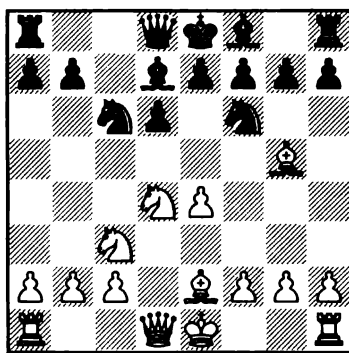


The opening can be regarded as completed, and its outcome is satisfactory for Black: his two

bishops, solid pawn centre and open g-file compensate for White's spatial advantage (Ribli-Ogaard, Athens 1971).

7.12 (1 e4 c5 2 ♜f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♜xd4 ♜f6 5 ♜c3 ♜c6 6 ♙g5 ♙d7)

7 ♙e2



This move, associated with free development, also does not cause Black any great problems.

7 ... ♚a5

The black queen comes into play with gain of time.

8 ♙xf6 gxf6

The resulting positions are similar to the preceding variation – Black aims for ...f6-f5.

9 ♜b3

Other tries by White:

9 f4 f5!? (the most thematic) 10 ♜b3 ♚d8 11 ♚d3 ♜b4 12 ♚d2 ♙g7 and Black easily solves his opening problems (Thipsay-Gufeld, New Delhi 1984).

9 0-0 ♖xd4 (useful simplification) 10 ♗xd4 ♜c8 (not 10... ♗c5?! 11 ♗xc5 dxc5 12 ♖b5!±, Short-Anand, Amsterdam 1992, but 10...♗g8!? comes into consideration) 11 ♖h1 (if 11 ♖d5, then 11... ♗c5 is now good, and Black has no problems, Timman-Salov, Amsterdam 1991; in Kotronias-Delchev, Peristeri 1996, White employed the new idea 12 ♗d3, and after 12...♗xc2 13 ♗e3 ♗c5?! 14 ♗b3! Black was in difficulties, but 13...f5! would have given him sufficient counterplay) 11...♗c5 12 ♗d2 (after the exchange on c5 Black has an excellent endgame – he has the two bishops, a solid centre and good prospects on the queenside) 12... ♖g7 13 ♖d3 f5 with a normal game for Black (Chandler-Zaichik, Palma de Mallorca 1989).

9 ... ♗g5
10 ♖d5

10 g3 also promises no advantage. After 10...f5 11 f4 ♗g6 (the alternative is 11...♗h6) 12 ♖h5 ♗e6 13 0-0 ♖g7 14 e5 0-0-0 15 exd6 ♖e8 Black's chances are not worse (Balashov-Robatsch, Munich 1979).

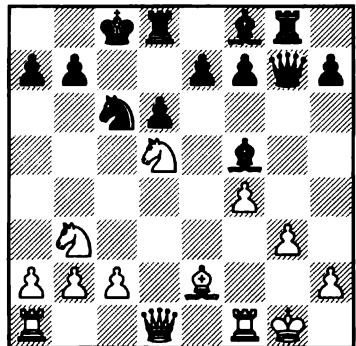
10 ... 0-0-0
11 0-0

After 11 g3 f5 12 exf5 ♖xf5 13 0-0 e6 White's active pieces are driven back and with simple, natural moves Black begins fighting for the initiative (McDonald-Wang Zili, London 1997).

11 ... ♗g8!

11...f5 has also been played, but the text move is more accurate.

12 g3 f5
13 f4 ♗g7
14 exf5 ♖xf5



We are following Short-Salov (Amsterdam 1991), which continued 15 ♖f3 ♖g4 16 c4 (Black is not set any problems by 16 ♖xg4+ ♗xg4 17 ♗d2 h5, when he begins action on the kingside) 16...h5 17 ♖xg4+ ♗xg4 18 ♖e3 ♗xd1 19 ♖axd1 ♖g7 with an equal ending.

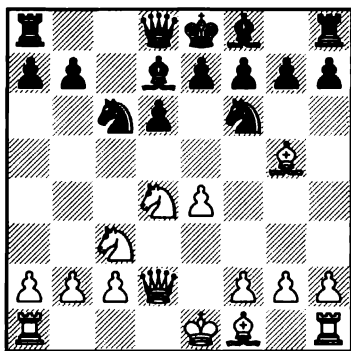
7.13 (1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♖xd4 ♖f6 5 ♖c3 ♖c6 6 ♖g5 ♖d7)

7 ♗d2

The most popular continuation. White plans the rapid evacuation of his king to the queenside. However, in so doing he has to reckon with the possible loss of a tempo after ...♖xd4, ♗xd4.

Black's plan is simple and logical enough – rapid counterplay on the

c-file, the exchange sacrifice on c3 being fairly typical.



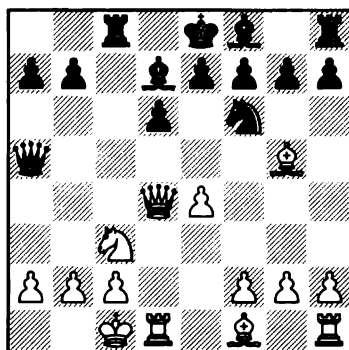
7 ... ♖c8
8 0-0-0

Other possibilities:

8 ♘b3 a6 9 0-0-0 e6 (or 9...b5!?)
10 f4 ♙e7 11 ♚b1 b5 12 ♙xf6 gxf6
13 ♙d3 ♘a5, and it is not easy to breach Black's position in the centre and on the kingside, while his initiative on the queenside should not be underestimated – both sides have chances.

8 f4 ♘xd4 9 ♗xd4 ♗a5 10 e5 (this is the point of 8 f4; 10 0-0-0 transposes into the main line) 10...dxe5 11 fxe5 e6! (the queen comes into play along the fifth rank) 12 0-0-0 ♙c6 13 ♘b5 ♙xb5 14 exf6 ♙c6 (or 14...♙a4!?) 15 h4 g6 16 ♙c4 ♙c5 17 ♗g4 h5 18 ♗g3 0-0 19 ♙xe6 ♙e4! 20 ♙d2 ♙d6 and it is White who has to fight for equality (Groszpeter-Gyorkos, Hungary 1994).

8 ... ♘xd4
9 ♗xd4 ♗a5



The introductory stage is complete – White has sheltered his king on the queenside, and Black is ready for play on the c-file. An interesting battle with chances for both sides is in prospect.

10 f4

The most consistent continuation, aiming for pawn activity in the centre.

The alternative is 10 ♙d2, reinforcing c3. After 10...e5 11 ♗d3 ♖xc3!? (nevertheless; the quiet 11...a6 is also possible) 12 ♙xc3 ♗xa2 13 f3 g6 14 ♚d2 ♗e6 15 ♚e1 ♙c6 16 ♙b4 d5 17 ♙xf8 ♚xf8 18 exd5 ♘xd5 Black gains compensation for the exchange, sufficient to maintain the balance (Hjartarson-Thorhallsson, Iceland 1994).

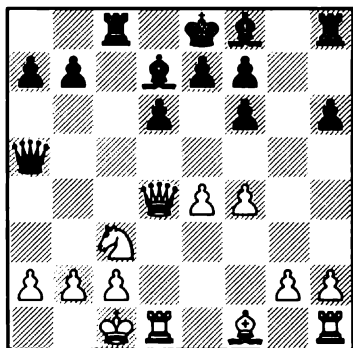
10 ... ♗b6

Determining the position of the white bishop. 10...e6 is also quite possible, transposing after 11 e5 dxe5 12 fxe5 ♙c6 into positions examined in the note to White's 8th move.

11 ♖xf6

The alternative is 11 ♖h4. After 11...g5 12 e5 (or 12 ♖e1 gxf4 13 ♘d5 ♜xa2 14 ♘xf6+ exf6 15 ♖c3 ♜g8 with chances for both sides, Dely-Pietrusiak, Poland 1965) 12...gxf4 13 exf6 e6 14 ♖e2 ♖c6 15 ♜he1 ♜g8 (Black must take control of the g-file; after 15...♖xg2? 16 ♖g4! there is the impending threat of ♖xe6) 16 ♖f3 ♖xf3 17 gxf3 ♜g2! 18 ♜e5 (after 18 ♜d3 ♜a6! 19 ♜e3 ♜c5 20 ♜d4 ♜c6 Black takes the initiative, Riemersma-Cifuentes, Amsterdam 1987) 18...♜c7 19 ♜e4 ♜c5 (Camp-Estevez, Kardenas 1988). And here, against M.Gurevich's recommendation of 20 f5±, possible is 20...♜xf5!? 21 ♜xa7 ♜xh2 22 ♜xb7 ♜c5 23 ♜a4 ♜c7 24 ♜a8+ ♘d7 when Black, after sheltering his king in the centre behind the pawn barricade, retains sufficient counter-chances.

11 ... gxf6



The critical position of the opening, which can be considered

roughly equal: to counter White's spatial advantage and more secure king position, Black has the c- and g-files, which in combination with ...♜c5 and the advance of the h-pawn makes his position quite defensible, for example:

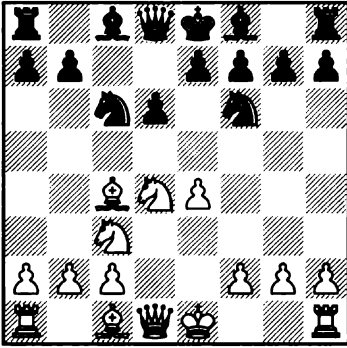
12 ♖c4 ♜c5 13 ♖b3 ♜xd4 14 ♜xd4 ♜g8 15 g3 h5± and Black successfully employs his trumps (Lahende-Wittmann, Moscow 1994).

12 f5 h5 13 ♘b1 ♜c5 14 ♜d3 h4 15 ♖e2 ♖h6 16 ♘d5 ♖g5 17 ♜hf1 a5! with chances for both sides (Dolmatov-Dorfman, Tashkent 1980).

12 ♘b1 ♜c5 13 ♜d2 (if 13 ♜xc5 the most accurate is 13...dxc5!, retaining the option of ...e7-e6 against f4-f5, while 13 ♜d3 is met by the usual 13...f5) 13...e6 (13...f5 is good enough to equalise; the text move aims for more complicated play) 14 ♖e2 h5 15 ♜he1 ♖e7 16 ♖f3 ♜c7 17 f5 ♖f8 18 ♜e2 h4 19 ♖h5 ♘e7 20 ♘d5+? (this attempt to break through to the black king does not succeed; however, against passive play Black would have gradually taken the initiative – his minority attack with the a- and b-pawns could have become unpleasant) 20...exd5 21 exd5+ ♘d8 22 ♖xf7 ♖b5, and White has nothing to show for his efforts (Torres-Ubilava, Linares 1994).

7.2 (1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 ♘c6)

6 ♖c4



The strategic basis of this continuation, developed by the Soviet master Sozin, is the battle for the light squares. The drawbacks of the move are that the position of this important bishop is determined early, and that it is rather insecurely placed at c4.

6 ... ♖b6

This move, immediately attacking the white knight, is becoming increasingly popular. In this way Black avoids the main lines of the Sozin Attack, in which, thanks in particular to the efforts of Nigel Short, a great expert on this variation, a difficult life awaits him.

Now White has to decide whether to exchange on c6 – 7 ♖xc6 (7.21), or to move his knight: 7 ♘de2 (7.22), 7 ♘db5(7.23) or 7 ♘b3 (7.24).

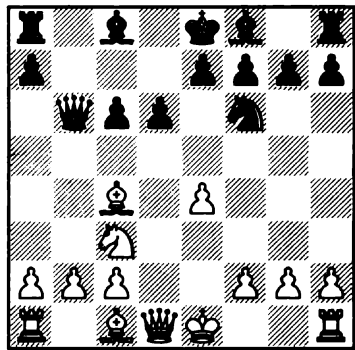
It is not possible to maintain the knight in the centre: 7 ♖e3?! ♜xb2 8 ♘db5 ♜b4 9 ♖d3 ♜a5 10 ♖d2 ♜d8 11 ♘d5 ♘xd5 12 exd5 ♘e5 13 ♖e2 a6 14 ♘d4 ♜c7 and White

does not have compensation for his material deficit (Velimirovic-Volvo, Krakow 1964).

In Dubinsky-Vasyukov (Moscow 1997) White tried to improve with 9 ♜e2 ♜a5! 10 ♖d2 ♜d8 11 ♘d5 ♘xd5 12 exd5 ♘e5 13 ♖b3 a6 14 f4!? It is possible that here he has some compensation for the pawn, but after, say, 14...♘g4!? 15 ♘a3 ♘f6 it is clear that he has to fight for equality, which indicates that 7 ♖e3 is inadequate.

7.21 (1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 ♘c6 6 ♖c4 ♜b6)

7 ♘xc6 ♜xc6



After strengthening Black's centre, White wants to restrict its mobility in order to begin play on the kingside. Black in turn must aim to advance his centre and not allow it to be fixed.

8 0-0 e6
9 b3

Other tries:

9 ♖e2 leads to the main variation after 9...♘d7 10 b3 ♙e7.

9 ♙f4 ♗c7 10 ♗e2 e5 promises White little.

9 ♙g5 is met by 9...♗c5!, when Black seizes the initiative (Stanciu-Mititelu, Romania 1966).

9 ... ♙e7
10 ♙b2 0-0
11 ♗e2 ♘d7

Black has two other alternatives:

The blockading 11...e5 12 ♖h1 ♗c7 13 ♖a1 ♘d7 (13...g6!?) 14 ♘a4 (Karpov-Stein, Leningrad 1971, and here he could have equalised by 14...♙f6 (Karpov).

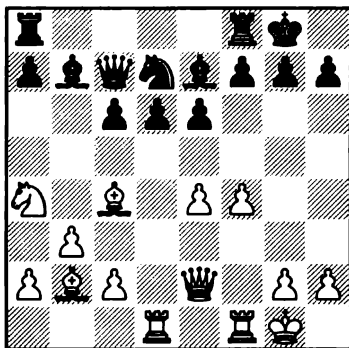
A demonstration on the queenside and in the centre: 11...♗a5 12 ♘a4 d5 13 e5 ♘d7 14 ♙d3 ♘b6 15 ♙c3 ♙b4 16 ♙xb4 ♗xb4 17 c3 ♗a3 18 ♘b2 ♙b7 19 c4 with a symbolic advantage for White (de Vreugt-Vander Wiel, Amsterdam 1996).

12 ♘a4 ♗c7

Also satisfactory is 12...♗a5!? 13 ♙c3 ♗d8 (Black has hindered White's c2-c4) 14 ♖ad1 ♙b7 15 ♖h1 d5 16 ♙d3 ♗e8 17 f4 ♗c7 18 ♖f3 g6 with a solid position (S.Salov-Kisilev, Moscow 1992).

13 f4 ♙b7
14 ♖ad1

The critical position of the variation (see diagram next column). Topalov-Kramnik (Novgorod 1996) continued 14...♖a8?! 15 ♖d3! c5 16 ♙b5 ♙c6 17 ♙xc6 ♗xc6 18 c4 with an enduring advantage for White.

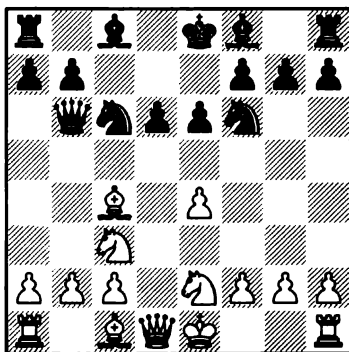


After Topalov's recommendation of 14...♖a8 15 ♖d3 d5 16 ♖h3 Black should play 16...♘f6 17 ♙d3 dxe4 18 ♙xe4 g6 19 ♙d3 c5 with an acceptable position.

However, he also has other reasonable ways of fighting for equality, given above.

7.22 (1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 ♘c6 6 ♙c4 ♗b6)

7 ♘de2 e6



After driving the white knight from the centre, Black restricts the opponent's light-square bishop and prepares the development of his kingside pieces.

8 0-0 ♖e7
9 ♗b3

Other possibilities:

9 ♗e3 ♜c7 10 ♖g3 a6 11 f4 b5 12 ♗b3 ♘a5 13 f5 ♗xb3 and Black stands slightly better – he has deprived the opponent of his main attacking weapon, the ♗b3, and White has not managed to achieve anything serious on the kingside (Ivanovic-Fedorowicz, Lone Pine 1981).

9 ♗g5 ♜c5 (a familiar idea, forcing White to exchange his bishop) 10 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 11 ♗b3 0-0 12 ♖h1 b5 13 f4 ♘a5 and Black's chances are not worse (Velimirovic-Al.Khasin, Belgrade 1988).

9 ♖g3 0-0 10 b3 a6 11 ♗b2 ♜c7 12 f4 b5 13 ♗d3 ♗b7 with approximate equality (Losev-Baikov, Moscow 1989).

9 a3 0-0 10 ♗a2 (A.Sokolov-Ruban, St Petersburg 1993) and here Black should consider the plan of neutralising the ♗a2 with 10...a6 followed by ...♜c7, ...b5 and ...♘a5-c4 with a normal game.

9 ... a6

Also satisfactory is 9...♗d7 10 ♗g5 ♜c5 11 ♗e3 ♜a5 12 ♖d4 ♖xd4 13 ♗xd4 ♗c6 14 ♜e1 ♗d8 15 ♜d1 0-0 with approximate equality (Hector-Damljanovic, Palma de Mallorca 1989).

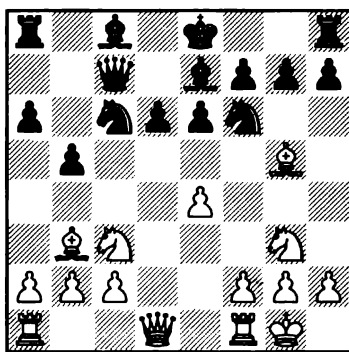
10 ♗g5

If 10 ♖g3 Black has the good reply 10...h5! 11 h3 h4 12 ♖ge2 ♜c7 13 f4 (13 a4 is more accurate, with chances for both sides) 13...b5 14 a3 ♘a5, taking the initiative (Hector-Lerner, Genova 1989).

10 ... ♜c7

Freeing the b-pawn.

11 ♖g3 b5



The critical position of the variation. In Kasparov-Timman (Manila 1992) White chose 12 ♖h1 and after 12...h5! 13 ♗xf6 gxf6 14 ♖xh5 ♗b7 15 ♖g3 0-0-0 Black gained excellent play for the pawn.

If 12 ♜d2, then 12...h5! is even more effective: 13 h4 ♗b7 14 f4 b4 15 ♖ce2 ♘a5, and it is only White who has problems.

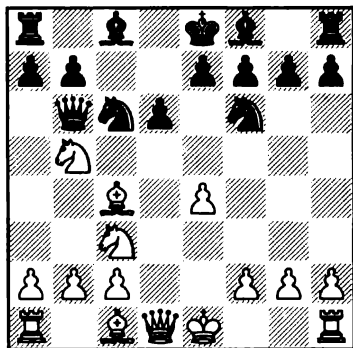
In W.Arencibia-Becerra (Havana 1993) White radically prevented ...h7-h5 by 12 ♖h5!? ♖xh5 13 ♗xe7 ♜xe7 14 ♜xh5 0-0 15 ♜ad1 ♗b7 16 f4 and took the initiative.

In view of this, Black should consider 11...h6!?, which after 12

♙xf6 ♙xf6 13 ♘h5 ♙e5 14 f4
♙d4+ 15 ♔h1 g6 gives him a
reasonable game.

7.23 (1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4
4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 ♘c6 6 ♙c4
♗b6)

7 ♘db5



White aims to exploit the position
of the ♗b6 to gain time (with ♙e3).

7 ... a6

8 ♙e3 ♗a5

8...♗d8 is also possible, but the
text move is more active.

9 ♘d4 ♘e5

Driving the bishop from its active
position with gain of time.

9...♘xe4? fails to 10 ♗f3 ♘e5
(or 10...f5 11 ♘xc6 bxc6 12 0-0-0
d5 13 ♘xe4! fxe4 14 ♗h5+ g6 15
♗e5 ♗g8 16 ♗xd5! cxd5 17 ♙xd5
with crushing threats, Kindermann-
Zueger, Mendoza 1985) 11 ♙xf7+!
♙xf7 12 ♗xe4±.

However, 9...e6 is a reasonable
alternative: 10 0-0 ♙e7 11 ♙b3 0-0

12 f4 ♙d7 13 f5 ♘xd4 14 ♙xd4
exf5!? 15 exf5 ♙c6 16 ♗d3 ♗ae8
17 ♗ad1 ♙d8!= (Kindermann-
Gulko, Munich 1990). Black has
successfully relieved the situation
and after the necessary regrouping
can face the future with confidence.

9...♘xd4 is also interesting. In
Onischuk-Yermolinsky (Wijk aan
Zee 1997) White chose the sharp 10
♙xd4!? (if 10 ♗xd4 e6 11 ♙b3
♙e7 12 0-0 0-0 13 f4 ♘g4 14 ♙d2
♗c7 with a complicated game, De
Firmian-Damljanovic, Yerevan
1996), and after 10...e5 11 ♙e3 ♙e6
12 ♗d3! he seized the initiative.
Black should have tried 10...♘xe4!?
11 0-0 ♘xc3 12 ♙xc3 ♗f5!, when
White still has to demonstrate that
he has compensation for the pawn.

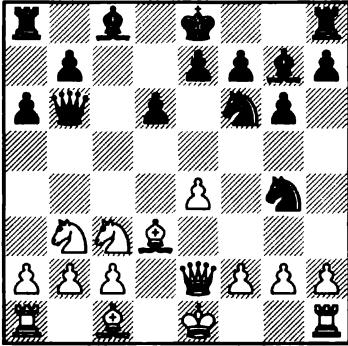
10 ♙d3

White has also played 10 ♘b3
♗c7 11 ♙d3 e6 12 f4 ♘c4 13 ♙c1
b5 14 ♗e2 ♙b7 15 a4± (Christ-
iansen-J.Armason, Reykjavik 1986),
when it is hard for Black to maintain
his position on the queenside.
10...♗d8!? 11 ♙d3 g6 would seem
to be more accurate, with a reason-
able game (after the exchange on d3
the black queen does not come
under attack on the c-file).

10 ... ♘eg4

The active knight manoeuvres
continue. Also possible is 10...e6 11
f4 ♘xd3+ 12 cxd3 ♙e7 13 0-0 0-0
with a complicated game (Kinder-
mann-Fedorowicz, Dortmund 1986),
and 10...g6!? too comes into
consideration.

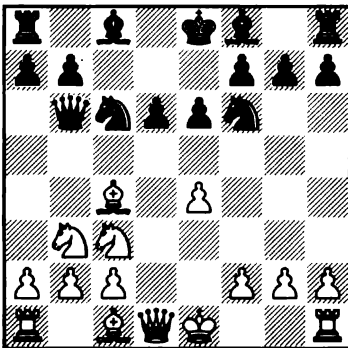
11 ♖c1 g6
 12 ♘b3 ♜b6
 13 ♜e2 ♙g7



We are following *Illustrative Game No.8*, Topalov-Kramnik (Belgrade 1995) where 14 f4 ♘h5!? led to double-edged play.

7.24 (1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 ♘c6 6 ♖c4 ♜b6)

7 ♘b3 e6



After driving the white knight

from the centre, Black prepares to develop his kingside forces. An important factor is that the opponent's light-square bishop is deprived of its convenient post at b3, and White's attacking potential is therefore markedly reduced.

White has three main continuations: 8 ♖e3 (7.241), 8 0-0 (7.242) and 8 ♖f4 (7.243).

Other possibilities:

8 f4 (after this Black can manage for the moment without ...a7-a6) 8...♙e7 9 ♜f3 0-0 10 ♖e3 ♜c7 11 ♖d3 ♘b4 12 g4 ♘d7 13 0-0-0 ♖f6 14 ♘b5 ♜c6 (S.Gross-Michenka, Czechia 1994). Black has achieved a flexible position of dynamic balance.

8 g4, when Yermolinsky has made the interesting recommendation of 8...♙e7 9 g5 ♘e4 10 ♘xe4 d5 11 ♖xd5 exd5 12 ♜xd5 0-0, and Black's lead in development compensates for the pawn.

8 ♜e2 (the familiar idea of preparing queenside castling) 8...♙e7 9 f4 ♜c7 10 ♖e3 a6 11 0-0-0 b5 12 ♖d3 ♖b7 (12...♘b4 is also satisfactory) 13 ♘b1 0-0 14 g4 ♘d7 15 g5 b4 16 ♘a4 ♘a7 17 ♘d4 ♜a5, and Black begins active play on the queenside – he has the typical manoeuvre ...♘c5 as well as ...♘b5 (Ilincic-Kozul, Kladovo 1990).

8 ♙g5 does not promise White anything in view of 8...♘e5 9 ♖b5+ ♖d7 10 ♖xf6?! (better 10 ♖xd7+ with equality) 10...♖xb5! 11

♙xe5 dxe5 12 ♘xb5 ♚xb5 13 ♚e2 ♚a4! (Lukin-Oll, St Petersburg 1993). Black's position is preferable. He has a long-range bishop, good prospects on the queenside, and pawn control of the important central squares (in view of which the white knight has little scope).

7.241 (1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 ♘c6 6 ♙c4 ♚b6 7 ♘b3 e6)

8 ♙e3 ♚c7
9 ♙d3

Black opposes the manoeuvre of the white bishop to f3 by developing his own bishop at b7: 9 ♙e2 a6 10 f4 b5 11 ♙f3 ♙b7 12 e5 dxe5 13 fxe5 ♘d7 14 ♙xc6 ♚xc6 15 ♚g4 g6 16 0-0-0 ♘xe5 with play for both sides (Tate-Yermolinsky, Chicago 1994).

The attempt to temporarily maintain the bishop at c4 also promises little: 9 ♘d2 ♙e7 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♚e1 a6 12 a4 b6 13 ♙f1 ♘e5 14 h3 ♙b7 15 f4 ♘g6 and Black solves his opening problems (A.Sokolov-Khalifman, New York 1990).

9 ... a6
10 f4 b5
11 ♚f3 ♙b7
12 0-0

Other ideas are possible:

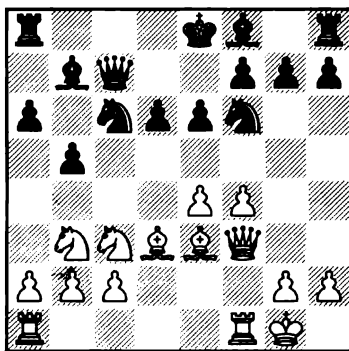
12 a4 (attacking Black's queenside pawn chain) 12...b4 13 ♘e2 ♘b8!? (aiming for c5) 14 c4 ♘bd7 15 0-0 ♘c5 16 ♘xc5 dxc5 17 ♘g3 h5 18 ♚fe1 0-0-0 19 ♙c2 ♘g4 and

Black already has the initiative (Brooks-Fedorowicz, USA 1989).

There is also the plan of a kingside pawn storm combined with queenside castling:

12 0-0-0 ♙e7 13 ♚b1 ♚c8 14 g4 0-0 15 g5 ♘d7 16 ♚hg1 ♘b4 17 f5 exf5 18 ♚xf5 ♘e5 19 ♚f2 ♚fe8 20 ♘d4 ♚a5 with approximate equality (Cebalo-Zivkovic, Pula 1985).

12 g4 h6!? 13 0-0-0 ♙e7 14 h4 h5!? 15 gxh5 ♚xh5 16 ♚b1 0-0-0 (in this set-up the black king often slips away to the queenside) 17 ♚dg1 g6 18 ♚f2 ♚dh8 19 a4 b4 20 ♘a2 ♚b8 with double-edged play (S.Polgar-Kotronias, Corfu 1990).



12 ... g6!?

Useful prophylaxis. Of course, 12...♙e7 looks natural and good, but it leads to lengthy, complicated and rather intensively investigated variations, and so the text move is more practical.

13 ♚ad1

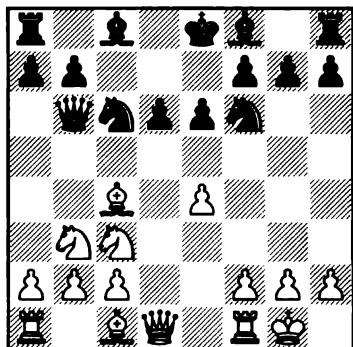
Or 13 ♚ae1 ♙g7 14 ♚h3 0-0 15 ♚h4 ♚ac8 16 g4 ♘b4 17 ♙d4

♟xd3 18 cxd3 ♜d8 19 ♞e3 ♟d7 20 ♜xd8 ♞fxd8= (Atek-Stajcic, Budapest 1991).

Rogic-Kozul (Bled 1994) now continued 13...♞d8 14 ♜h3 ♙e7 15 a4 b4 16 ♟e2 h5 17 ♟h1 d5 with reasonable counterplay for Black.

7.242 (1 e4 c5 2 ♟f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♟xd4 ♟f6 5 ♟c3 ♟c6 6 ♙c4 ♜b6 7 ♟b3 e6)

8 0-0



8 ... ♙e7

Black follows his planned program, hoping in some cases to avoid spending a tempo on ...a7-a6.

9 ♙e3

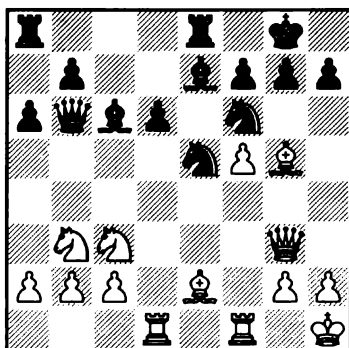
9 ♞e1 is adequately met by 9...0-0 10 ♙f1 ♙d7, when Black completes his development.

9 ♙g5 ♟e5 (or 9...0-0, also with fair counterplay) is quite popular:

(a) 10 ♙b5+ ♙d7 11 ♙xd7+ ♟exd7 12 ♙e3 ♜c7 13 f4 0-0 14 ♜e2 ♟b6 (Golubev-Serper, USSR 1989), or;

(b) 10 ♙d3 0-0 11 ♜e2 ♙d7 12 ♙e3 ♜c7 13 f4 ♟xd3 14 cxd3 b5 15 ♞a1 ♜b8 (Kovalev-Ruban, Budapest 1989), in both cases with adequate play for Black;

(c) 10 ♙e2 0-0 11 ♟h1 (after 11 ♜d2 ♙d7 12 ♞ad1 ♞ac8 13 ♙e3 ♜c7 14 f4 ♟eg4 15 ♙xg4 ♟xg4 16 ♙d4 ♙c6 17 ♜e2 ♟f6 18 e5, Velimirovic-Popovic, Vrsac 1989, Black can equalise by 18...♟e8!) 11...♙d7 12 f4 ♟g6 13 ♜d3 (White has opportunities to go wrong: 13 ♙h5?! ♟xh5 14 ♙xe7 ♟g3+ 15 hxg3 ♟xe7 16 g4 ♞ad8 17 ♜d2 f6, Rublevsky-Lukin, St Petersburg 1994, or 13 e5?! ♟e8 14 ♙xe7 ♟xe7 15 ♙d3 ♙c6 16 ♜h5 g6 17 ♜g5 ♟f5 18 ♙xf5 exf5 19 ♞ad1 dxe5, Minasian-Ruban, Moscow 1991) 13...♙c6 14 f5 exf5 15 exf5 ♟e5 16 ♜g3 ♞fe8 17 ♞ad1 a6.



Both sides have chances. Black's weakness at d6 is compensated by his good piece play and excellently placed knight at e5 (Paronian-Serper, Tashkent 1992).

The immediate **9 a4** is also played: 9...0-0 10 a5 ♖c7 11 ♙d3 (if 11 ♙e2 the most accurate is 11...♞d8 12 f4 ♘b4 13 ♙e3 e5 with an acceptable game, Nunn-I.Ivanov, Lugano 1982) 11...♘b4 12 f4 e5 13 ♙h1 d5 14 ♖e1 ♙e6 with chances for both sides (Dekic-Vukovic, Becici 1993).

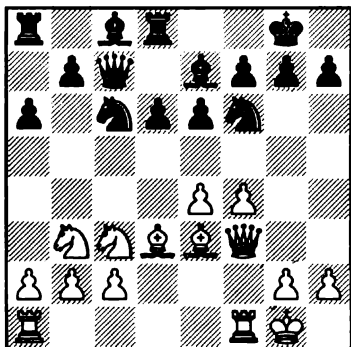
9 ... ♖c7
10 f4 0-0

Or 10...a6.

11 ♙d3 ♞d8

An interesting alternative is 11...a6 12 g4 d5 13 exd5 ♘b4!? 14 dxе6 ♙xe6 15 f5 ♙xb3 16 axb3 ♞ad8 (Minasian-Smirin, Moscow 1989). Black's active play and the slightly exposed position of the enemy king give him compensation for the pawn.

12 ♖f3 a6

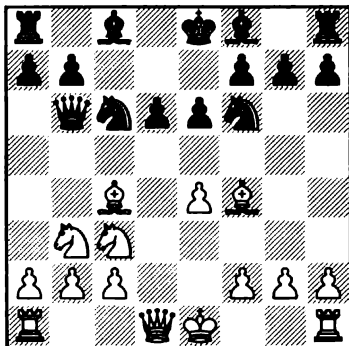


We are following Hartston-Dorfman (New Delhi 1982), where after 13 ♘a4 ♘d7 14 ♖f2 b5 15 ♘b6 ♞b8 16 ♘xc8 ♞dxc8 17 c3 ♘b6 Black solved his problems.

13 ♞ad1 (towards the centre) is also possible, but after 13...♘b4!? 14 f5 d5 15 fxе6 ♙xe6 16 ♘xd5 ♘fxd5 17 exd5 ♙xd5 Black equalises by simple means.

7.243 (1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 ♘c6 6 ♙c4 ♖b6 7 ♘b3 e6)

8 ♙f4



White completes his queenside development, immediately taking aim at Black's weak d6 pawn. However, Black has adequate resources to cover his central pawn and gain counterplay.

8 ... ♘e5
9 ♙e2

The capture on e5 is unfavourable: 9 ♙xe5 dxе5 10 ♙b5+ ♙d7 11 ♙xd7+ ♘xd7 12 ♖d3 a6 13 0-0-0 ♖c7 14 ♘a4 b5 15 ♖c3 ♞c8 16 ♖xc7 ♞xc7 17 ♘c3 ♙e7 18 ♞d3 0-0 19 ♘d1 ♘b6 and the endgame favours Black (Istratescu-Arsovic, Belgrade 1994).

The exchange of light-square bishops also achieves little: 9 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{b5+}$ $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{d7}$ 10 a4 (or 10 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{xd7+}$ $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{fxd7}$ 11 $\text{\textcircled{w}}\text{e2}$ a6 12 0-0 $\text{\textcircled{w}}\text{c7}$ 13 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{ae1}$ $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{e7}$ 14 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{c1}$ $\text{g5!?$ 15 $\text{\textcircled{q}}\text{h1}$ h5 16 $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{d4}$ 0-0-0, Milos-Yermolinsky, Groningen 1996) 10... a6 11 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{xd7+}$ $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{fxd7}$ 12 $\text{\textcircled{w}}\text{e2}$ $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{e7}$ 13 0-0 0-0 14 a5 $\text{\textcircled{w}}\text{c7}$ 15 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{c1}$ $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{c4}$ 16 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{d1}$ $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{ac8}$ 17 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{d3}$ $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{fe8}$ and Black's chances are not worse (Bischoff-Lau, Germany 1993).

9 ... $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{e7}$
 10 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{e3}$ $\text{\textcircled{w}}\text{c7}$
 11 f4

In this way White carries out one of the main ideas of his opening plan – after luring the black knight to e5 he advances his f-pawn with gain of time to begin an attack on the kingside.

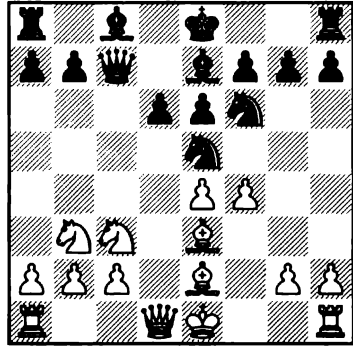
If 11 $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{b5}$ Black gains counter-chances by 11... $\text{\textcircled{w}}\text{b8}$ 12 f4 $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{g6}$ 13 $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{c3}$ 0-0 14 0-0 (14 g4 is strongly met by 14... d5!) 14... $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{d7}$ (Nikitin).

If 11 0-0 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{d7}$ 12 f4 $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{c4}$ 13 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{xc4}$ $\text{\textcircled{w}}\text{xc4}$ 14 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{d4}$ (little is promised by 14 e5 $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{e4}$ 15 exd6 $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{xd6}$ 16 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{c5}$ $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{f5=}$, Velimirovic-Damjanovic, Vrsac 1989) 14... 0-0 15 e5 dxe5 16 fxe5 $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{d5}$ with a good game for Black (Zaitsev-S.Kisilev, Podolsk 1991).

After 11 f4 the critical position of the variation is reached (see diagram next column). Where should the knight move?

In Kasparov-Anand (Linares 1994) Black chose 11... $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{c6}$ and after 12 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{f3}$ a6 13 0-0 0-0 14 a4 b6 15 g4 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{b8}$ (15... $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{b7!?$ came into

consideration) 16 g5 $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{d7}$ 17 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{g2}$ White retained an opening advantage – he controls more space and has chances of a kingside attack.



11... $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{g6}$, strengthening the kingside, is rather more solid: 12 0-0 0-0 13 g3 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{d7}$ 14 h4 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{fc8}$ 15 h5 $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{f8}$ 16 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{f3}$ h6 17 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{f2}$ e5 with counterplay (Zaitsev-M.Makarov, Podolsk 1992).

Game 7 (p.85)
Damjanovic-Stein
Havana 1968

1 e4 c5
 2 $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{f3}$ $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{c6}$
 3 d4 cxd4
 4 $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{xd4}$ $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{f6}$
 5 $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{c3}$ d6
 6 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{g5}$ $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{d7}$

Grandmaster Leonid Stein was one of the greatest experts on this variation.

7 f4 $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{c8}$

Sounder is 7... $\text{\textcircled{w}}\text{b6}$, as examined in the theoretical section.

8 ♖b3!

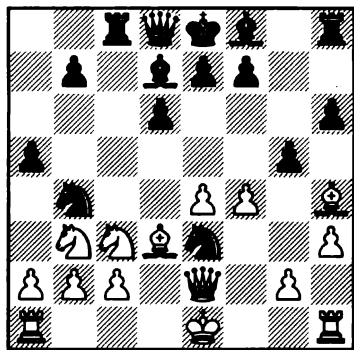
A strong reply to Black's plan, depriving him of tactical counter-chances associated with ...♗b6, since now he has to reckon with ♙xf6 and ♖d5.

Less good, therefore, is 8 ♖f3 ♗b6 9 ♗d2 ♖g4!, when Black provokes favourable complications (Aseev-Smirin, Lvov 1990).

8 ... a5
9 ♙b5 ♖g4

Black begins an audacious, risky raid on White's position, but in such situations Stein was in his element.

10 h3 ♖e3
11 ♗e2 ♖b4
12 ♙d3 h6
13 ♙h4 g5!



Any classic would be horrified by such play. Black has neglected all the principles of opening play: he has conceded the centre, moved only his knights and pawns, and created weaknesses. And now he simply gives up a pawn. For what? The answer is simple: now White

too faces difficult problems. Already here he has to decide: to take or not to take?

14 fxg5

A far from unequivocal decision. 14 ♙g3! looks more solid, retaining an opening advantage.

14 ... hxg5
15 ♙xg5 ♖g4!

The black knight returns from its dangerous raid completely unscathed, gaining as a reward the strong central square e5.

But the main thing is that White faces a mass of problems, the chief of which is where to hide his king. If 16 0-0-0 ♖e5 Black has the possibility of ...a5-a4-a3 combined with ...♙g7, putting into effect his opening idea. After 16 a3 ♖xd3+ 17 ♗xd3 ♗b6 18 ♖f1 ♖e5 followed by ...♙e6 the white king is obliged to remain for some time in the dangerous central zone.

Best was 16 0-0!?, when it is not easy for Black to demonstrate the correctness of his pawn sacrifice. Alas, White immediately made a mistake...

16 ♙b5? ♖xc2+!
17 ♗xc2 ♙xb5

Black has regained his pawn with positional gains. But to win he still has to display considerable resourcefulness and skill.

18 ♖d4 ♙d7
19 ♗d2 ♙g7
20 ♖d5

Castling on either side has its drawbacks. 20 0-0 can be met by

20...♘e5!, while after 20 0-0-0 ♘e5 21 ♖b1 ♘c4 followed by ...a5-a4 and ...♗a5 White's position is unenviable. Therefore he provokes a crisis by attacking the e7 pawn.

20 ... ♖c4!
21 ♗xe7 ♗xe7!

An excellent reply, fully in the style of Stein.

22 ♘xe7 ♖xd4
23 ♗xd4

If White defends with 23 ♗g5, then 23...♖xe4+ 24 ♖f1 ♗f6! 25 ♗xa5 ♖xe7 and his king comes under a very strong attack.

No better is 23 ♗e2 ♖xe7 24 0-0 ♘e5 with similar consequences.

Therefore Damjanovic prefers to return his queen, if only to go into an endgame.

23 ... ♗xd4
24 ♘d5 ♘f2
25 ♖f1 ♘xe4
26 0-0-0

The white king is finally safe, but Black already has a winning advantage.

26 ... ♗e5
27 ♖fe1 f5
28 ♖d3 ♖f7
29 g4 ♘f2
30 ♖f3 ♘xb3
31 ♘b6 ♗f4+
32 ♖b1 ♗c6

At this point **White overstepped the time limit.**

However, in any event his position was completely hopeless.

Game 8 (p.95)
Topalov-Kramnik
Belgrade 1995

1 e4 c5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 d4 cxd4
4 ♘xd4 ♘f6
5 ♘c3 d6
6 ♗c4

It is easy to forecast the Sozin Attack when Topalov is playing Kramnik.

6 ... ♗b6

This variation is Kramnik's patent weapon against the Sozin Attack.

7 ♘db5

An interesting theoretical duel developed between the same players in the Novgorod Super-Tournament (1997): 7 ♘xc6 bxc6 8 0-0 g6 (this move used to be considered insufficient for equality) 9 e5!? dxe5 10 ♗e2 ♗d4 11 ♗e3 ♗d6 12 ♖ad1 ♗c7 (with this subtle queen manoeuvre Black has hindered as far as possible White's typical advance f2-f4) 13 f4!? (nevertheless; White is prepared to give up the exchange) 13...♗g4 14 ♗f2 e4! (the most sensible decision; after 14...♗xd1 15 fxe5 ♗xe5 16 ♗d4 White has a strong attack) 15 ♖de1 ♗f5= (White regains the e4 pawn with complete equality).

7 ... a6
8 ♗e3 ♗a5
9 ♘d4 ♘e5
10 ♗d3 ♘eg4
11 ♗c1 g6

Here if 11...♖b6 White replies 12 0-0 and then h2-h3 (12...♖xd4? 13 ♙b5+).

12 ♘b3

White wishes nevertheless to play f2-f4 and then drive back the knight to h6 with h2-h3. If 12 f4 there follows 12...e5! 13 ♘b3 ♖b6 14 ♗e2 exf4 with counterplay.

12 ... ♖b6

13 ♗e2 ♙g7

14 f4 ♘h5!?

Black plays splendidly. If 15 ♗f3 there follows 15...♘h2!, while 15 h3? is bad in view of 15...♘g3.

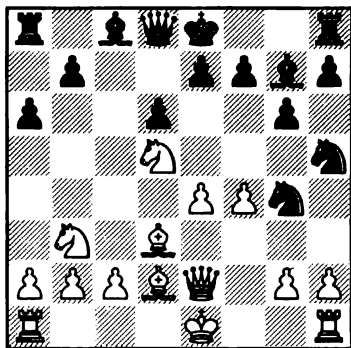
15 ♘d5

The alternative was 15 ♙d2!? ♙xc3!? 16 bxc3 0-0 17 c4∞.

15 ... ♖d8

16 ♙d2

The threat of 17 ♙a5 looks deadly.



16 ... e6!

17 ♙a5 ♗h4+

18 g3 ♘g3!

19 ♘c7+

If 19 hxg3 Black plays 19... ♗xg3+! (19...♗xh1+? 20 ♘d2

intending ♘c7+ favours White) 20 ♘d2 exd5 21 ♗af1 ♘f6! 22 exd5+ ♘f8 23 ♙b4 ♙g4! 24 ♙xd6+ ♘g8 with an unclear game (analysis by Kramnik).

19 ... ♘e7

20 hxg3 ♗xg3+

21 ♘d1 ♘f2+

22 ♘d2

After 22 ♘c1 ♘xh1 23 ♘xa8 ♗xf4+ 24 ♙d2 ♗e5 Black, with three pawns for the piece, stands at least equal.

22 ... ♘xh1

23 ♘xa8 ♗xf4+

24 ♗e3 ♗h2+

25 ♗e2 ♗f4+

26 ♗e3 ♗h2+

27 ♗e2 ♙h6+!?

After repeating moves to gain time on the clock, Kramnik decides to play on – a bold decision, since the consequences of this step are totally unclear.

28 ♘c3!

Too passive is 28 ♘d1 ♗g1+ 29 ♗e1 (29 ♙e1? e5!) 29...♗g4+ 30 ♙e2 ♗xe4∞.

28 ... ♗e5+

The alternative was the quiet 28...♗xe2 29 ♙xe2 ♘g3, when Black's chances look better.

29 ♘b4 ♘g3

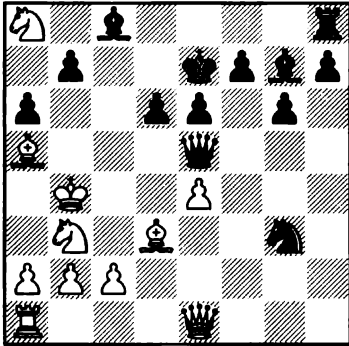
30 ♗e1

The e3 square has to be guarded - 30 ♗g2? ♙e3! intending ...♙c5+.

30 ... ♙g7!

Black has to play vigorously, otherwise White himself will begin an attack by ♘a3, ♘b6-c4 and ♙b4.

Therefore it is dangerous to play 30...♖xb2? 31 ♜b1 ♜e5 32 ♘b6 intending ♘c4∞.



31 ♘b6

White would have lost spectacularly after 31 ♘b6? ♜xb2! 32 ♜xg3 ♙c3+! 33 ♚c4 ♙d7 34 ♘c7 ♙d2!, but 31 ♜b1!? came into consideration, with reasonable chances of a defence.

31 ... d5!

Complicating the position still further.

32 ♚a4?

It is hard to believe, but this active move (with the idea of ♜b4+ or ♘b4+) is the decisive mistake.

White could have saved himself by 32 exd5 ♜d6+ 33 ♚c4! ♜f4+ 34 ♚c5 ♙d7 (34...♜d6+ with a draw is also possible) 35 a4! ♙xb2 36 ♜b1 ♙a3+ 37 ♘b4 ♜d6+ 38 ♚c4 with a very sharp game, but perhaps only a computer is capable of such 'superhuman' play.

32 ... ♙d7+

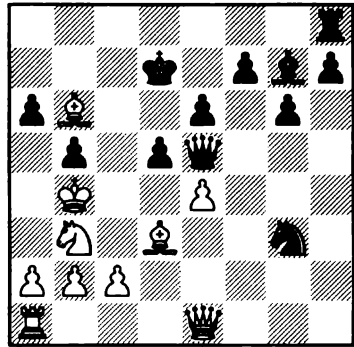
33 ♘d7 b5+!

A very important interposition.

34 ♚b4 ♚xd7

35 ♙b6

Making way for the king. 35 ♘c5+ ♚c6 36 exd5+ ♜xd5 37 ♙e4 ♘xe4 38 ♜xe4 ♙f8! does not help.



35 ... ♜xb2?

In time trouble Black overlooks a pretty win. As shown by Kramnik, he should have played 35...♘xe4! 36 ♙xe4 ♜xb2! with, for example, the following fantastic finish: 37 ♜b1 ♜c8! 38 ♙c5 (38 ♜xb2 ♜c4+) 38...♙c3+! 39 ♜xc3 a5+!

36 exd5 ♜c8!

Weaker is 36...exd5 37 ♙xb5+! axb5 38 ♜xg3∞.

37 dxe6+

At first sight White even appears to be winning...

37 ... ♚e8!

If 37...fxe6 38 ♙xb5+! axb5 39 ♜d1+ ♚e7 40 ♜xg3 with a counter-attack. Therefore the black king runs away from a possible rook check at d1.

38 ♙c5?

When he made this move, White reckoned that it was time for Black to resign – exf7+ etc. is threatened. But he overlooked a couple of fantastic checks. 38 ♖xb5+ axb5 39 exf7+ ♔xf7 40 ♗xg3 ♗c3+! 41 ♗xc3 ♖xc3+ 42 ♔xb5 ♖xa1 43 ♖xa1 h5! was essential – Black has

the advantage, but whether it is enough to win is not clear.

38 ... ♖c3+!

39 ♗xc3 a5+

40 ♔xb5 ♗xc3

White resigns

Since if 41 exf7+ ♔xf7 42 ♖c4+ ♔e8!

5 King's Indian Defence: Four Pawns Attack

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 g6
3 ♗c3 ♗g7

The King's Indian Defence, our recommendation against 1 d4, is played by World Champion Garry Kasparov as well many other leading grandmasters, and for three decades has been the choice of one of the authors of this book, Eduard Gufeld.

The success of the defence stems from its flexible and universal nature: against practically any move order (apart from 1 e4) Black can achieve his favourite positions, with a broad range of possibilities for counterplay over the entire board.

The different ways of countering the King's Indian are given in Chapters 8-13, and in Chapters 14 and 15 we cover the Torre and Trompowsky Attacks.

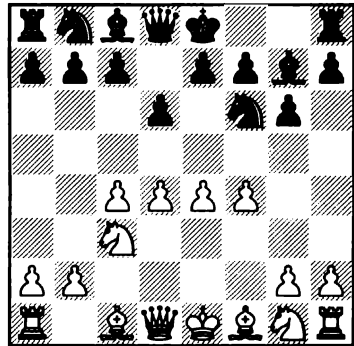
4 e4 d6
5 f4

The history of the Four Pawns Attack dates from the game Englisch-Tarrasch, played in 1885 in Hamburg. White's idea is very aggressive and extremely simple: 'the opponent has conceded the centre - let's occupy it'.

White's all-powerful pawn centre gives him a great spatial advantage.

This is obvious. But equally obvious are the drawbacks to such strategy. The time spent allows Black to develop quickly and, exploiting the lack of piece support, strike blows at the centre.

Experience has shown that Black's attack on the centre is effective enough, and the Four Pawns Attack is not often seen in modern tournaments.



5 ... 0-0

White faces a choice: 6 ♗f3 (8.1) or 6 ♗e2 (8.2).

8.1 (1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♗c3 ♗g7 4 e4 d6 5 f4 0-0)

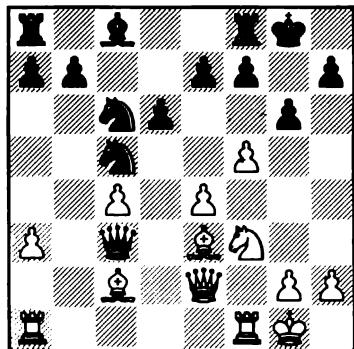
6 ♗f3 c5

The most logical continuation. Black strikes a blow at the centre,

offering to exchange his c-pawn for the central white d-pawn. At the same time he aims to extend the scope of his fianchettoed g7 .

7 d5

If 7 dxc5 Black bases his counterplay on pinning the c3 – 7... a5 8 d3 (8 cxd6 ? is bad in view of 8... dxe4 when c3 cannot be defended; if 8 d2 xc5 9 b4 b6 10 d3 g4 11 b1 c6 12 h3 xf3 13 xf3 e5 14 e3 d8 15 f5 a5 16 b5 b4 with adequate counterplay, Dorfman-Sznepik, Warsaw 1983) 8... xc5 9 e2 c6 10 e3 a5 (the alternative is 10... h5) 11 0-0 d7 ? (a typical manoeuvre in this type of position – the knight is played to c5 where it attacks the d3 , at the same time opening the diagonal of the g7 ; also good is 11... g4 12 a1 d7 13 f2 xf3 14 gxf3 c5 15 b1 a4 !?) and Black's chances are not worse, Topalov-Kasparov, Linares 1994) 12 a3 xc3 13 bxc3 c5 14 c2 xc3 15 f5 .

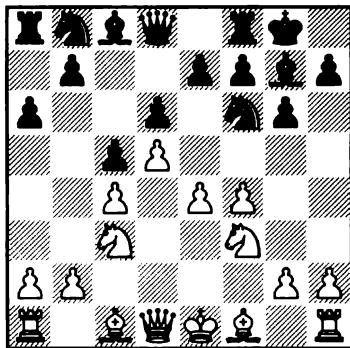


We are following Heuer-Zilber (USSR 1963) where after 15... d7 ? Black would have retained his pawn with a defensible position.

The positions arising after 7 e2 are considered in section 8.2.

It is clear that after 7 e5 fd7 White cannot maintain his centre.

7 ... a6



An interesting plan, demonstrating the wealth of counterplay available to Black with the given pawn formation. 7... e6 also gives sufficient play, e.g.:

(a) 8 e5 dxe5 9 fxe5 d4 10 g5 b6 ;

(b) 8 e2 exd5 9 cxd5 g4 – cf. section 8.21, p.108;

(c) 8 dxe6 fxe6 9 d3 c6 10 0-0 a6 11 h1 b4 12 e2 b6 13 a3 c6 14 e3 a7 ? with a complicated game in which Black's chances are not worse (Petronic-Nedev, Skopje 1995).

8 d3

The attempt to halt Black's queenside play by 8 a4 is not very

promising for White, especially as the inclusion of the moves a2-a4 and ...a7-a6 favours Black – the position of the pawn at a4 merely weakens White's queenside. After 8...e6 9 dxex6 fxe6!? 10 ♙d3 ♜h5 11 g3 ♜c6 12 0-0 ♙d7 13 ♜g5 ♙h6 Black has good piece play (Gerstenberger-Gheorghiu, Biel 1985).

If 8 e5 Black creates strong pressure on White's break-away central pawns – 8...dxe5 9 fxe5 ♜g4 10 ♙f4 ♜d7 11 ♚e2 ♚c7 ! (Kouatly-Gheorghiu, Bagneux 1983).

8 ... b5
9 e5

After 9 cxb5 axb5 the capture with the bishop leaves White in an inferior position: 10 ♙xb5 ♜xe4 ! and of his centre only ruins remain.

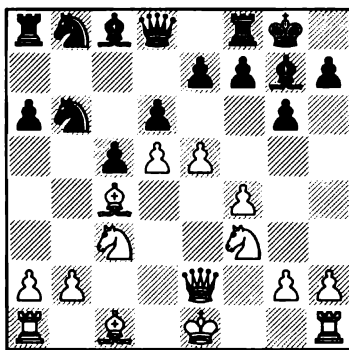
10 ♜xb5 sets more problems, but here too after 10...e6!? (Black aims to open the position and to win the battle for the centre thanks to the remoteness of the white knight) 11 dxex6 ♙xe6 12 ♜xd6 !? ♚xd6 13 e5 ♚e7 14 exf6 ♚xf6 Black has excellent play for the pawn – it is not easy for White to preserve his queenside from destruction.

After 9 0-0 bxc4 10 ♙xc4 ♜bd7 11 ♙d2 ♜b6 12 b3 ♜e8 13 ♚e2 ♜xc4 14 bxc4 ♜c7 White again does not achieve anything (Andersen-Engels, Nauheim 1935).

9 ... ♜fd7
10 ♚e2

White should play 10 e6!? fxe6 11 ♜g5 , but after 11... ♜f6 he can still hardly claim any advantage.

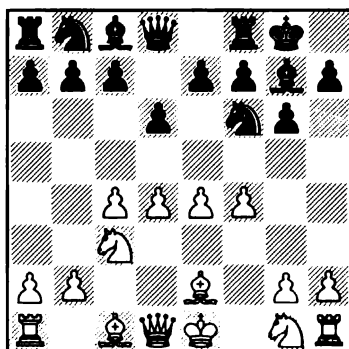
10 ... bxc4
11 ♙xc4 ♜b6



Black does not experience the slightest difficulty - on the contrary, it is White who has to make efforts to equalise. Vaganian-Sznapiak, (Mexico 1977) continued 12 b3 ♙g4 13 0-0 ♜d7 14 h3 ♙xf3 15 ♚xf3 dxex5 16 f5 e4! 17 ♚xe4 ♜f6 .

8.2 (1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♙g7
4 e4 d6 5 f4 0-0)

6 ♙e2



This move order is directed against the possibility in certain variations of ... g4 , but often things reduce to a transposition of moves and the set-up with e2 and f3 is reached.

6 ... c5

Here too this is the usual move, after which White has a choice – he can block the centre by 7 d5 (8.21) or maintain the tension with 7 f3 (8.22).

8.21 (1 d4 f6 2 c4 g6 3 c3
 g7 4 e4 d6 5 f4 0-0 6 e2 c5)

7 d5 e6

An alternative is 7... b5! ?, in the spirit of the Benko Gambit. But in contrast to variation 8.1, here 7... a6? ! is dubious in view of 8 e5 !, when Black does not have ... g4 , which is possible after 6 f3 .

8 f3

Little is achieved by removing the central tension. After 8 dxe6 fxe6 (the simple 8... xe6 is also possible) 9 f3 (or 9 g4 c6 10 h4 d4 11 h5 , Mariotti-Gligoric, Praia da Rocha 1969, and here 11... b5! ? would have given Black sufficient counterplay) 9... c6 10 0-0 we7 11 e5 dxe5 12 fxe5 g4 the e5 pawn cannot be defended. This variation occurred in the old game Zubarev-Verlinsky (Moscow 1925).

8 ... exd5

9 exd5

After 9 e5 the play favours Black: 9... e4! 10 cxd5 (or 10 cxd5

c6! , and it is only White who has problems) 10... xc3 11 bxc3 d7 , when the e -pawn is in danger:

(a) 12 0-0 dxe5 13 fxe5 (13 g5 h6 14 e4 f5 ?, Calvo-Diez del Corral, Malaga 1981) 13... xe5 14 e3 xf3+ 15 xf3 d6 (Li Zunian-Gheorghiu, Dubai 1986);

(b) 12 e6 fxe6 13 dxe6 b6 14 0-0 xe6 15 g5 d5! and White has insufficient compensation for the pawn (Badzarani-Verdikhanov, USSR 1989).

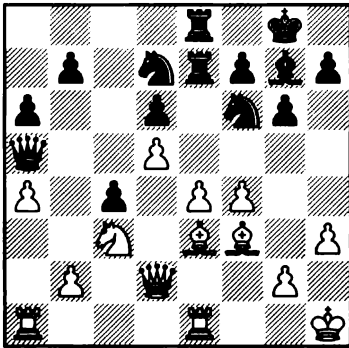
9 cxd5 leads to a reasonable version for Black of the Modern Benoni: 9... g4 (a sound reply – sometimes it is useful to exchange on f3) 10 0-0 (the central break is not dangerous for Black: 10 e5 dxe5 11 fxe5 fd7 12 g5 wb6 13 0-0 xf3 14 xf3 dxe5) 10... bd7 , and now:

(a) 11 d2 xe2 12 xe2 e8 13 f3 e7 14 e1 b6 15 e2 (Blokh-Plokhov, corr. 1987/90) 15... c4! with adequate play for Black;

(b) 11 h3 xf3 12 xf3 c4! ? (gaining the c5 square is a typical idea in this type of position) 13 e3 a5 14 d4 fe8 15 b4! (Black is not worse after 15 e1 c5) 15... xb4 16 b1 a5 17 xb7 a6 18 a4 xe4! 19 xg7 dc5 20 d4 xb7 21 h6 f6 (Kouatly-Nunn, Wijk aan Zee 1991);

(c) 11 e1 e8 (both sides act in accordance with the demands of the position – White must support his central pawns, and Black put pressure on them) 12 h3 xf3 13

♙xf3 a6 14 a4 c4 15 ♖e3 ♜a5 16 ♗h1 (after 16 ♜e2 ♞ac8 17 ♜f2, Lautier-Sutovsky, Tilburg 1996, 17...♞e7!? 18 ♖d4 ♞ce8 White does not have anything real) 16...♞e7 (Black must watch out for the e4-e5 breakthrough – after 16...♜c5?! 17 ♖xc5 ♜xc5 18 e5 he ends up in a difficult position; with the text move he prepares to intensify the pressure on the e-file) 17 ♜d2 (or 17 ♖d4 ♜c5 18 e5 ♜fd7 19 e6 ♖xd4 20 ♜xd4 ♜b3♣) 17...♞ae8!



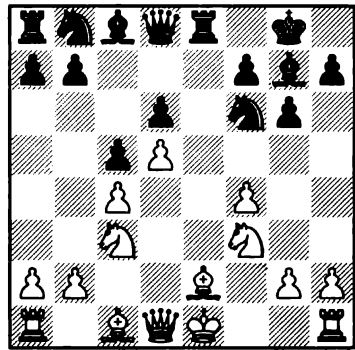
Black, whose forces are harmoniously deployed, can be satisfied with the outcome of the opening (Peicheva-J.Polgar, Novi Sad 1990). In the game White was unable to suppress Black on the e-file, and after 18 ♜f2 ♜xe4 19 ♜xe4 ♞xe4 20 ♖xe4 ♞xe4 ended up in an inferior position.

9 ... ♞e8

White has a protected pawn outpost at d5 and controls more space. But the advanced f4 pawn prevents him from bringing his ♖c1

into play, and his problem is to advance f4-f5, which will enable him to begin an attack both on the kingside, and on the d6 pawn.

Black, in turn, must to everything possible to restrict White's dark-square bishop and to exploit the open e-file, the occupation of the important e4 square playing a far from minor role.



10 0-0 ♖f5

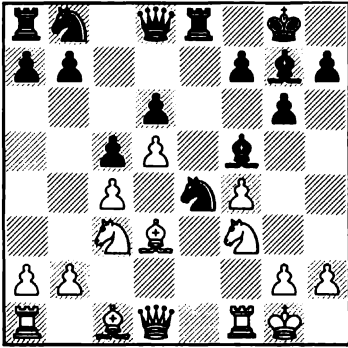
This same position can arise after 9...♖f5!? 10 0-0 ♞e8.

11 ♖d3

Black does not need to fear 11 ♜h4: 11...♜e4 (11...♜bd7 is also good – he controls e4, and so he has at least equality) 12 ♜xf5 gxf5 13 ♜xe4 fxe4 14 ♖e3 ♖xb2 15 ♞b1 ♜f6 16 ♜b3 ♖d4, when his chances are not worse (Antoshin-Boleslavsky, Leningrad 1956).

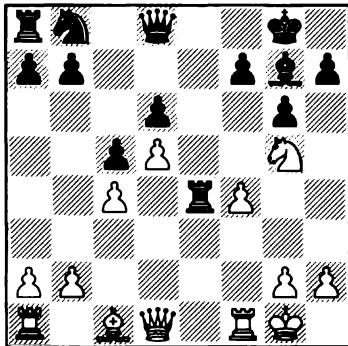
11 ... ♜e4

This variation is condemned by theory, yet it is the most consistent way for Black to carry out his plan, and his play can be improved.



- 12 ♖xe4 ♙xe4
- 13 ♙xe4 ♖xe4
- 14 ♖g5

After 14 ♖d3 ♖e7!? it is not apparent how the hanging position of the rook can be exploited. 15 ♖g5 is unpleasantly met by 15... ♖d4 16 ♖h3 h6 17 ♖c8+ ♙f8 (Black is threatening to capture the c4 pawn and exchange queens by ... ♖d7), while 15 f5 is parried by the calm 15... ♖d7 16 ♙g5 f6! and 17... ♖e8 (analysis by Y.Geller).

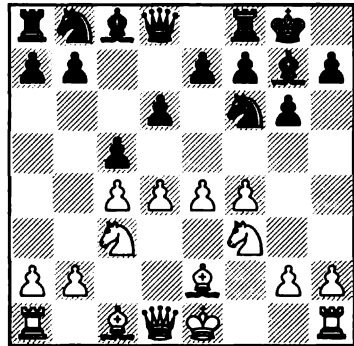


Here the game A.Geller-Feldman

(Leningrad 1965) continued 14... ♖e7 15 f5 ♖d7 16 fxg6 hxg6 17 ♖g4 with an attack for White, but after 14... ♖xc4! 15 f5 ♙d4+ 16 ♖h1 ♙f6 it is not easy for him to demonstrate that he has compensation for the pawn.

8.22 (1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5 f4 0-0 6 ♙e2 c5)

7 ♖f3



White maintains the tension in the centre, hoping to keep his pawn chain intact.

7 ... cxd4

By opening the a1-h8 diagonal Black begins play against the opponent's centre.

8 ♖xd4 ♖a6!?

An interesting idea of GM Leonid Stein. In its time the creative duo Stein-Gufeld worked very fruitfully for the benefit of the King's Indian. Black intends to put pressure on the e4 pawn and his knights will operate very harmoniously.

9 ♖e3

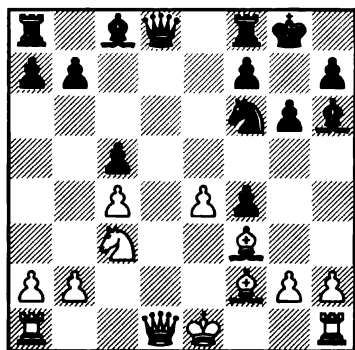
If 9 0-0 there follows 9...♗c5 10 ♖f3 ♗b6 with the threat of ...♗cxe4, while 9 ♖f3 is parried by 9...♖g4 10 ♖e3 ♗c8 11 b3 ♖xf3 12 ♗xf3 ♗b4 13 0-0 ♗g4, when the activity of the black pieces is not easy to suppress.

9 ... ♗c5
10 ♖f3 ♖h6!

A strong move, enabling Black to 'latch on' to the white centre and to exploit his lead in development.

11 ♗b3
11 ♗d2 e5 12 ♗de2 exf4 13 ♗xf4 ♖e8 leads to equality, as shown by Boleslavsky.

11 ... e5
12 ♗xc5 exf4
13 ♖f2 dxc5



The critical position of the variation. Stahlberg-Stein (Yerevan 1965) *Illustrative Game No.9* continued 14 ♖xc5 ♗d7! (a brilliant exchange sacrifice, based on the weakness of White's dark-square periphery and the insecure position

of his king) 15 ♖xf8 ♗h4+ 16 ♗d2 ♖xf8, and Black's initiative was very strong.

But also after 14 ♗xd8 ♗xd8 15 ♖xc5 ♖g7 Black's chances are not worse – he has active pieces and a slight lead in development.

Game 9 (p.111)
Stahlberg-Stein
Yerevan 1965

1 c4 ♗f6
2 ♗c3 g6
3 d4 ♖g7
4 e4

In a slightly 'roundabout' way, via the English Opening, the main line of the King's Indian has been reached.

4 ... 0-0!?

A flexible move, provoking White into premature activity in the centre. After 5 e5?! ♗e8 6 f4 d6! 7 ♖e3 c5! 8 dxc5 ♗c6! Black achieves his aim – the white centre collapses (Letelier-Fischer, Leipzig 1960). Therefore the move order chosen by Black usually reduces to the main variations.

5 ♖e2 d6
6 f4

Thus the basic position of the Four Pawns Attack has been reached.

6 ... c5
7 ♗f3 cxd4
8 ♗xd4 ♗a6

A variation developed by Stein.
9 ♖e3 ♗c5

10 ♖f3 ♕h6!

A subtle move, typical of Stein's deep and artistic style of play. He now threatens ...e7-e5.

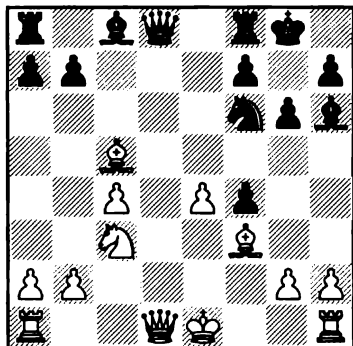
11 ♖b3 e5

This move must be considered in connection with Black's brilliant 14th move.

12 ♖xc5 exf4

13 ♕f2 dxc5

14 ♕xc5



14 ... ♖d7!

The move of a great master. This idea may have stimulated the brilliant discovery by Kasparov in his 1990 World Championship Match against Karpov (3rd game).

15 ♕xf8 ♖h4+!

An important interposition, which deprives the white king of a comfortable shelter.

16 ♖d2 ♕xf8

17 ♖e1 ♖e7

Black's attacking chances look very real in view of the insecure position of the white king.

18 ♖c2 ♖e5

19 ♖c1 ♕g7

20 ♖d5 ♖c5

21 ♖g1

21 b3 b5! 22 ♖g1 ♖a3 favours Black.

21 ... ♖xc4+

22 ♖b1 ♖d3+

23 ♖c2

After 23 ♖a1 ♖c4 the pressure on the b2 pawn is very strong.

23 ... ♕e6

24 ♕e2?

The decisive mistake. After 24 ♖d1!? White would have retained hopes of saving the game.

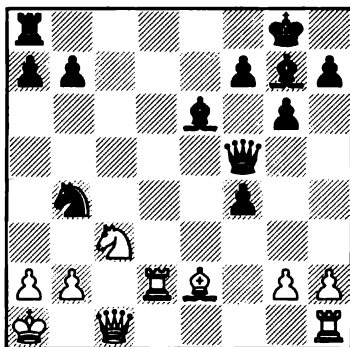
24 ... ♖xe4

25 ♖c3 ♖f5

26 ♖c1 ♖c6

27 ♖a1 ♖b4

28 ♖d2



28 ... ♖xa2!

This tactical stroke emphasises White's helplessness.

29 ♖xa2 ♖a5

30 ♕c4 ♕xc4

31 ♖xc4 ♖xd2

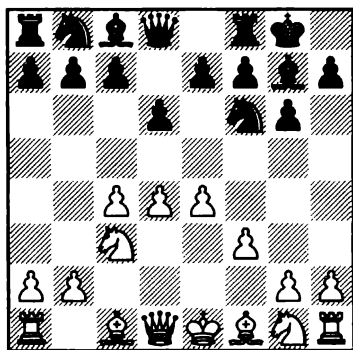
It is all over.

32 ♖b1 ♖d8
33 ♘c3 ♗xg2
34 ♘e4 h6

35 ♕c7 ♖d3
36 ♔a2 ♗xe4
White resigns

9 King's Indian Defence: Sämisch Variation

1	d4	♘f6
2	c4	g6
3	♗c3	♙g7
4	e4	d6
5	f3	0-0



Here we will consider 6 ♙e3 (9.1) and 6 ♙g5 (9.2).

6 ♗ge2, like the other two moves, is met by 6... ♗c6, transposing into one of the main variations, since after 7 d5 ♗e5 8 ♗d4 c5! Black makes this important advance with gain of tempo and solves his opening problems.

<p>9.1 (1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♗c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5 f3 0-0)</p>
--

6 ♙e3

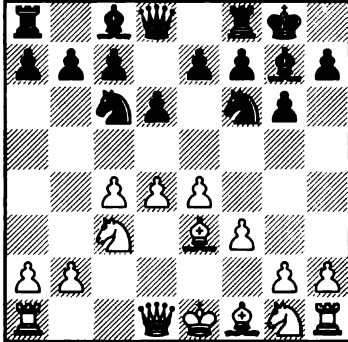
The basic position of the Sämisch Variation. White has securely

defended his e4 pawn and now has plans for a direct attack on the castled position. By h4-h5xg6 he intends to open the h-file for his heavy pieces, and at the same time to exchange the pieces defending the black king – the ♙g7 (by ♗d2 and ♙h6), and the ♗f6 (by ♗d5). If Black meets h2-h4 with ...h7-h5, White's attack loses in swiftness (to open the h-file he now has to play g2-g4 and ♗g3), but on the other hand he acquires the g5 square, the occupation of which by his dark-square bishop together with ♗d5 may cause Black definite problems.

Having said this, players with White are increasingly rejecting the idea of a direct attack in favour of positional methods of play. The main drawback of White's set-up is the delay in developing his kingside. The f3 pawn has taken away the lawful square of the ♗g1, and to complete his development he will often leave his king's bishop on its initial square, and play ♗g1-e2-c1-b3, thus keeping the central squares sufficiently defended. But such an unwieldy manoeuvre is bound to allow Black time to arrange counterplay on the central squares, and in the resulting sharp middle-game the outcome often depends on

whether or not White can maintain control of the key d4 square.

6 ... ♖c6!



In contrast to White, engaged in building up his powerful pawn wedge, Black develops! He has available a wide range of weapons, including the typical pawn attacks ...b7-b5 (after ...a7-a6 and ...♖b8) and ...e7-e5 (usually accompanied by the invasion of his knight at d4), and also, in the event of the b-file being opened, ...d6-d5, which often involves a pawn sacrifice for the sake of opening lines.

7 ♖ge2

Other tries:

7 d5?! (a clearly premature stabilising of the centre: now Black makes the freeing advance ...c7-c5, forcing the exchange on c6, and gains the better chances) 7... ♖e5 8 ♖d2 a6 9 ♖e2 c5! 10 dxc6 bxc6 11 ♖d1 (11 f4?! ♖eg4 12 h3 ♖xe3 13 ♖xe3 ♖b8 14 0-0-0 ♖xe4!-+, Faber-Hildama, corr. 1978) 11... ♖a5±.

7 ♖d3?! (this allows Black to occupy d4 in 'classic' style) 7...e5! 8 d5 (8 ♖ge2 ♖h5 9 ♖c2 exd4 10 ♖xd4 ♖h4+ 11 ♖f2 ♖g5±, Hess-Fischer, corr. 1967) 8... ♖d4 9 ♖ge2 ♖h5 10 ♖d2 c5 11 dxc6 (if 11 0-0-0?! a6 12 ♖g3 ♖f4 13 ♖xf4 exf4 14 ♖ge2 b5 – a classic demonstration of the strength of a central outpost; the white pieces are practically helpless – 15 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 16 ♖xf4 bxc4 17 ♖xc4 ♖b8 18 ♖d2 ♖a5±, Paroulke-Kausek, corr. 1984) 11...bxc6 12 0-0 ♖b8 13 ♖ab1 f5± (Sliwa-Bobotsov, Marianske Lazne 1961).

7 ♖d2 (a radical way of carrying out the plan of a direct attack on the black castled position. White refrains from developing his kingside pieces, and plans 0-0-0, h2-h4-h5xg6, ♖h6xg7 and ♖h6. Black, as usual, prepares a counter-offensive on the queenside by ...a7-a6, ...♖b8 and ...b7-b5, and in some cases invades with his knight at d4 – in this case the absence of the knight from e2 will be rather keenly felt!) 7...a6 and now:

(a) 8 d5!? ♖e5 9 ♖h6 ♖xh6! (a standard idea – Black gains time for counterplay in the centre) 10 ♖xh6 c5!=, and the white queen has to return empty-handed;

(b) 8 g4 (also premature – Black gains counterplay by establishing his knight at d4) 8...e5! 9 d5 ♖d4 10 0-0-0 c5 11 dxc6 (practically forced, but now Black opens a file against the king, and it is White who

has to exercise caution) 11...bxc6
12 g5 ♖e8 13 h4 ♜a5♯;

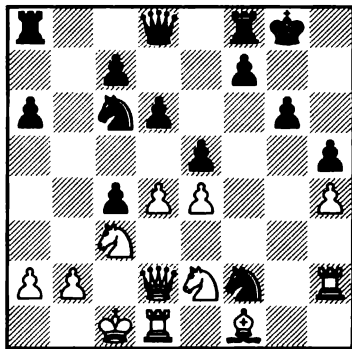
(c) 8 ♜b1 (White tries to restrict the black cavalry, but since he is behind in development this can hardly be effective) 8...♜b8 9 b4 e5 10 d5 ♖d4 11 ♖ge2 and nevertheless 11...c5! 12 dxc6 bxc6 (a standard pawn sacrifice for the sake of opening lines; additional factors are the opposition of the rooks and the fact that Black can 'latch on' to the b4 pawn) 13 ♖xd4 exd4 14 ♖xd4 ♜e8! 15 ♖e2 c5 16 bxc5 ♖xe4! 17 fxe4 ♜h4+♯ (Lputian-Kasparov, USSR 1976);

(d) 8 ♖d3 (the quietest positional plan, aimed at the harmonious completion of White's development; however, the d4 square is inevitably weakened, which Black immediately exploits) 8...e5 9 d5 ♖d4 10 ♖ge2 ♖d7! (another typical procedure in the battle for d4 – the knight uncovers the 'X-ray' of the ♖g7; often, with the same idea, the knight is moved to h5) 11 0-0 c5 12 dxc6 bxc6 13 b4! (13 ♜ad1=) 13...♖b7 14 ♜ad1 a5! 15 b5 c5 16 f4 (Kamsky-Hjartarson, Biel 1993) 16...f5! 17 ♖g3 g5! 18 ♖xf5 ♖xf5 19 exf5 exf4 20 ♖f2∞ (Kamsky);

(e) 8 0-0-0 (the classic continuation of the attack) 8...b5! (Gufeld's brilliant rejoinder: Black offers a pawn sacrifice to open lines, effectively leading to a position from the Benko Gambit, where White has castled queenside), when White has:

(e1) 9 cxb5?! (accepting the sacrifice is dangerous) 9...axb5 10 ♖xb5 ♖a5 11 ♜b1 (11 ♖h6 c6 12 ♖xg7 ♜xg7 13 ♖d3, Christiansen-Hjartarson, Szirak 1987, 13...♜b6! 14 e5 ♖d5 15 ♖xd5 cxd5 16 ♖e2 ♖a6♯, Hjartarson) 11...♖a6 12 ♖xa6 ♜xa6 13 ♜d3 ♜a8 14 ♖ge2 ♜b8 15 ♖c1 e6! 16 h4 d5 17 h5 ♖c4♯ (Peturs-son-Gufeld, Hastings 1986/7);

(e2) 9 h4 h5 10 ♖h6 e5 11 ♖ge2 bxc4 12 g4 ♖xh6 13 ♜xh6 ♖xg4! (a typical sacrifice) 14 fxf4 (weaker is 14 ♜g1 ♖xf3 15 ♖f4?), Dolmatov-Thorstens, Polanica Zdroj 1987, 15...exf4 16 ♖xc4 d5! – a simple refutation: the attack clearly does not compensate for the sacrificed piece – 17 ♖xd5 ♖xe4+) 14...♖xg4 15 ♜d2 ♖f2 16 ♜h2.



White seems to have everything in order, but by including his second knight in the attack Black gains a clear advantage: 16...♖b4♯.

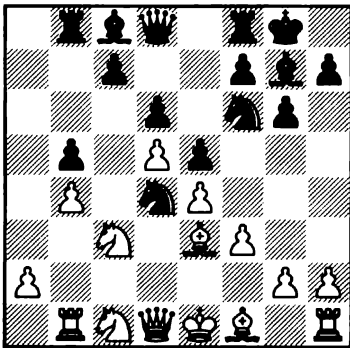
7 ... a6
8 ♜d2

Other possibilities for White:

8 ♖c1 ♗d7 9 ♜d2 – see 9 ♖c1.

8 d5 ♗e5 9 ♘g3 c6 10 a4 (10 ♗e2?! b5 11 cxb5 axb5 12 dxc6 b4♣) 10...cxd5 11 cxd5 e6! 12 ♗e2 exd5 13 exd5 ♖e8 14 ♜d2 (14 ♗d4?! ♜a5 15 ♜b3 ♘d3+ 16 ♗f1 ♘b4♣; 14 ♗f2 ♜c7 15 ♜b3 ♜e7!♣ Nunn) 14...♜c7! 15 0-0 ♘c4 16 ♗xc4 ♜xc4 17 ♘ge4 ♘xe4 18 ♘xe4 ♜b3! 19 ♗d4! ♜xd5 20 ♜fd1=, and White regains the material with equality.

8 ♖b1 b5 9 cxb5 axb5 10 b4 (after 10 d5 ♗e5 11 ♘d4 b4 Black is the first to begin active play) 10...♜b8 11 ♘c1 (11 ♜d2 – see 9 ♖b1) 11...e5 12 d5 ♘d4.



Black has successfully established his knight at d4, since White cannot play 13 ♗xd4 exd4 14 ♘b5 ♘xd5! 15 exd5 ♜e8+!♣.

8 a3 ♗d7 9 b4 (or 9 ♜d2 ♖e8 10 b4 ♜b8 11 ♖b1 b5 12 ♘c1 e5 13 ♘b3 exd4 14 ♘xd4 ♘xd4 15 ♗xd4 c5! =, Johnson-Verney, corr. 1992) 9...♜b8 10 ♘c1 (10 ♜d2 b5! 11 g4?! bxc4 12 h4 h5 13 g5 ♘h7 14

♖b1 ♜d8!♣), Nikitin-Makaryev, Jurmala 1992) 10...b5, and now:

(a) 11 ♘b3 bxc4 12 ♗xc4 ♘xb4! 13 axb4 ♜xb4 14 ♜d3 d5! (a trap! – if 15 exd5? ♗f5♣ or 15 ♗xa6? ♜xb3 16 0-0 dxe4 17 fxe4 ♘g4!♣, Mejzlik-Vlasak, corr. 1987) 15 ♘c5 dxc4 16 ♜c2 ♗c6♣ (Vlasak);

(b) 11 cxb5 axb5 12 ♘b3 e5 13 d5 ♗e7 14 ♗e2 (or 14 ♗d3 ♘h5 15 g3 f5 16 ♜e2 fxe4 17 fxe4 c6=, and Black opens a 'second front', Nenashev-Golubev, Alushta 1994) 14...♜d8!? 15 0-0 c6 16 dxc6 ♗xc6 (Brunner-Xie Jun, Bern 1995) 17 ♜c2 d5 18 ♗c5 ♗f8 19 ♘a5 ♗e8= (Brunner).

8 ♜c2!? ♗d7 9 ♖d1 (Dydyshko-Hait, Katowice 1993) 9...♜b8! 10 ♘c1 e5 11 d5 ♘d4= and Black gains counterplay.

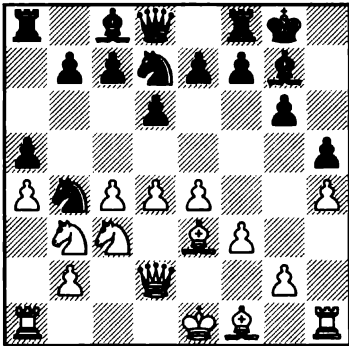
8 g4 ♜b8 9 ♜d2 – see 8 ♜d2 ♜b8 9 g4.

8 ♘c1 e5 (immediately initiating play in the centre), and now:

(a) 9 ♘b3 exd4 10 ♘xd4 ♘xd4 11 ♗xd4 c6 12 ♗e2 (or 12 a4 d5! 13 exd5 cxd5 14 c5 ♘h5 15 ♗xg7 ♜e8+∞) 12...b5 13 cxb5 axb5 14 0-0=;

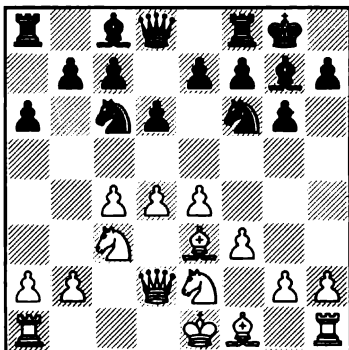
(b) 9 d5 ♘d4 10 ♘b3 ♘xb3 11 ♜xb3 (11 axb3?! c5! 12 b4 cxb4 13 ♘a2 ♘h5 14 ♘xb4 f5 15 exf5 gxf5♣, Gunarsson-Ivkov, Vrnjacka Banja 1967) 11...♘d7! 12 0-0-0 f5 13 ♗e2 b6 14 ♜c2 a5 15 a3 ♘f6=. Black's chances are not worse – he has completed his development and is ready for action on both fronts (Salov-Dorfman, USSR 1984).

8 h4!? h5 9 ♖c1 ♗d7! (extending the diagonal; 9...e5 10 d5 ♗d4 11 ♗b3 ♗xb3 12 ♖xb3 ♗d7!? 13 0-0 f5 14 ♕e2 b6 15 ♖c2 ♗f6= is also satisfactory, as in the Salov-Dorfman game) 10 ♗b3 a5! 11 a4 (11 d5!? ♗ce5 12 ♗d4 c5 13 ♗db5 ♗b6 Δ ...f7-f5∞) 11...♗b4 12 ♖d2.



If 12 ♕e2 b6 13 g4?! hxg4 14 fxg4 c5 15 h5 cxd4 16 ♗xd4 ♗c5 Black has a clear advantage (Spassky-Fischer, Belgrade 1992).

Now after 12...b6 followed by ...c7-c5 Black gains adequate play.



8 ... ♖b8
9 h4

An aggressive plan, demanding precise action on the part of Black. White's other possibilities:

9 d5 ♗e5 10 ♗d4 (or 10 ♗g3 c6 11 f4 ♗eg4 12 ♕a7 ♖a8 13 ♕g1, Hort-Bukic, Ljubljana/Portoroz 1977, 13...♗d7!? with adequate play for Black) 10...c5! (a typical method of counterplay) 11 dxc6 bxc6 12 ♖b1 (12 f4?! is strongly met by 12...c5!♣) 12...c5 13 ♗c2 ♗h5 14 ♕e2 f5 with active possibilities for Black over the entire front (Hess-Westerinen, Weissbaden 1981).

9 a4 (this attempt to stop Black's queenside play is ineffective) 9...e5 10 d5 ♗a5! 11 ♗c1 c5 12 ♖b1 (or 12 ♕e2 ♗d7 13 0-0 f5 14 ♖b1 f4 15 ♕f2 b6 16 b4 cxb4 17 ♖xb4 ♗c5 and Black's active pieces give him the more pleasant position) 12...b6 13 b4 cxb4 14 ♖xb4 ♗d7 15 ♕e2 ♗c5 16 0-0 f5♣ with a complicated game (Gligoric-Gufeld, Belgrade 1974).

9 ♖b1 b5 10 cxb5 axb5 11 b4 e5! 12 d5 ♗e7 13 ♗c1 ♕d7 14 g4 ♗e8 15 ♕e2 f5 16 ♗b3 ♗f6 17 ♖g1 ♗h8 18 ♗a5 c5! = (Poulton-Down, Dublin 1991).

9 ♖c1 ♕d7 10 b3!? (10 g3 b5 11 cxb5 axb5 12 ♕g2 e5 13 d5 ♗a5 14 b3 b4 15 ♗d1 ♕b5=, Averbakh-Gipslis, Baku 1961) 10...b5 11 cxb5 axb5 12 d5 ♗e5 13 ♗d4 ♖e8 14 a3 e6∞ (Van der Sterren-Barlov, Dieren 1986).

9 ♖d1 b5 10 ♘c1 (10 cxb5 axb5 11 ♘c1 b4 12 ♘3e2 e5 13 d5 ♘a5! 14 ♘g3 ♘e8 15 ♗e2 c5! =) 10...e5 11 d5 (11 dxe5 b4 12 ♘d5 ♘xe5 13 ♗e2 ♘xd5 14 cxd5 f5!∞, Botvinnik-Stein, USSR 1963) 11...♘d4 12 ♘b3 ♘xb3 13 axb3 ♗d7 14 ♗d3 ♘h5 15 0-0 ♘f4 16 ♗b1 f5 = (Furman-Ilivitsky, USSR 1963).

9 g4 b5, and Black initiates counterplay:

(a) 10 ♘g3? e5! 11 d5 ♘d4 12 ♗xd4 exd4 13 ♘ce2 d3! 14 ♗xd3 bxc4 15 ♗d2 ♘xg4! 16 fxg4 ♗xb2+ (Agarwal-Gufeld, Calcutta 1992);

(b) 10 cxb5 axb5 11 ♗h6 ♗xh6 12 ♗xh6 b4 13 ♘d5 ♗a6∞ (Ban-Balogh, Hungary 1968);

(c) 10 h4 h5 11 ♘g3 (11 ♗h6?! hxg4! 12 h5 gxf3 13 ♘g3 ♗xh6 14 ♗xh6 f2+ 15 ♘d1 ♘g4? Boleslavsky; 11 gxh5 ♘xh5 12 0-0-0 e5! =) 11...e5 12 dxe5 ♘xe5 13 ♗e2 hxg4 14 f4 ♘xc4 15 ♗xc4 bxc4 16 h5 gxh5 17 ♘xh5 (Ward-Buckley, Guildford 1991) 17...♘xh5 18 ♗xh5 ♗e8! 19 ♗d4 f6 20 0-0-0 ♗e7∞, and it is not easy for White to mount an attack;

(d) 10 0-0-0 e5 11 d5 (11 h4 h5! 12 ♗g5 exd4∞) 11...♘a5 12 ♘g3 ♗d7 13 c5 (13 h4? b4 14 ♘b1 ♗a4 15 ♗e1 ♗b3!?) 13...b4 14 c6 bxc3 15 ♗xc3 ♘xc6 16 dxc6 ♗e6 17 g5 ♘h5 18 ♘xh5 gxh5 19 ♘b1 ♗e8 = (Kraidman-Portisch, Manila 1974).

9 ♗h6 ♗xh6! 10 ♗xh6 e5 – after the exchange of dark-square bishops, the opening of the centre favours Black:

(a) 11 d5 ♘a5 (or 11...♘d4, and if 12 0-0-0 c5 13 dxc6 bxc6 14 ♘xd4 exd4 15 ♗xd4 ♗xb2!, N.Littlewood-Neat, England 1979) 12 ♘g3 c5 13 ♗c1 (13 h4 ♗d7! 14 h5 b5!?, Peturni-Gufeld, Los Angeles 1987) 13...♗d7 14 b3 b5 15 cxb5 axb5 16 ♘d1 ♘b7 17 ♗c2 ♘h8 18 h4 ♗a5+ 19 ♗d2 ♗xd2+ = (Petursson-Gallagher, Saint John 1988);

(b) 11 0-0-0 b5 12 h4 (12 d5 ♘a5 13 ♘g3 bxc4?) 12...bxc4 13 h5 (13 d5!? ♘a5 14 h5 ♗e7?) 13...♗e7 14 g4 exd4 15 ♘xd4 ♘xd4 16 ♗xd4 ♗e6 17 ♗xc4 c5 18 hxg6 cxd4 19 ♘d5 ♗xd5 20 ♗xd5 d3! = (Yaplian-A.Kuzmin, USSR 1982).

9 a3 ♗d7 (or 9...e5 10 d5 ♘e7 11 ♘g3 ♘d7 12 ♗d3 f5 13 exf5 ♘xf5 14 ♘xf5 gxf5 =, Situreu-Gufeld, Hanolulu 1996) 10 b4 ♗e8 11 ♗d1 ♗c8! 12 ♘c1 (12 d5 ♘e5 13 ♘d4 c5 14 dxc6 bxc6 15 ♘c2 c5∞) 12...e5 13 d5 ♘d4 14 ♘1e2 c5! 15 dxc6 bxc6 16 ♘xd4 exd4 17 ♗xd4 c5! 18 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 19 ♘d5 ♗e5!? 20 ♗g5 ♗a4 21 ♗b1 cxb4 22 axb4 a5∞ (Zsinka-Loginov, Budapest 1993).

9 0-0-0 b5 10 g4 – cf. 9 g4, or 10 ♗h6 – cf. 9 ♗h6.

9 ♘c1 e5 – aiming to exploit White's rather slow manoeuvring, Black begins play in the centre:

(a) 10 ♘b3 exd4 11 ♘xd4 ♘xd4! 12 ♗xd4 ♗e6 13 ♗e2 (13 0-0-0?! c5! 14 ♗e3 ♗a5 15 ♘b1 b5! 16 ♘d5 ♗xd2 17 ♗xd2 ♗xd5 18 cxd5 ♘d7 19 ♗e2 f5?, Sebih-Egger, Manila 1992) 13...c6, and now:

(a1) 14 a4 d5! 15 cxd5 cxd5 16 e5
 ♟d7 17 f4 (17 ♞e3? ♞xe5 18 ♙xe5
 d4 19 ♞f4 ♙xe5 20 ♞xe5 dxc3 21
 ♞xc3 ♞c8♯) 17...f6 18 exf6 ♞xf6
 19 ♞d1 (Belyavsky-Nunn, Reykja-
 vik 1988; if 19 0-0 ♞e4 20 ♞e3
 ♙xd4 21 ♞xd4 ♞xc3 22 bxc3 ♞c8
 23 ♞ab1 ♞c7 24 ♞b6 ♙f7=,
 Belyavsky) 19...b5! 20 axb5 axb5
 21 ♙xb5 ♙g4 22 ♙e2 ♙xe2 23
 ♞xe2 ♞e8 24 ♙e5 ♞b6♯;

(a2) 14 0-0 b5 15 cxb5 (15 b3
 bxc4 16 bxc4 ♞a5 17 ♞ac1 ♞fd8 18
 ♟h1 c5 19 ♙e3 ♞a3 20 ♞c2 ♞d7
 21 f4 ♞b6=, Hjartarson-Nunn,
 Rotterdam 1989) 15...axb5 16 b3
 (16 ♞fc1 ♞e7 17 a3 ♞fd8 18 b4
 ♞bc8♯, Ker-Gufeld, Wellington
 1988) 16...d5 17 e5 ♞d7 18 f4 f6 19
 exf6 ♞xf6= (Karpov, Razuvaev);

(b) 10 d5 ♞d4, and now:

(b1) 11 ♞1e2 c5 12 dxc6 ♞xc6!?
 – the weakness at d6 is not so
 significant, Black's piece activity
 and pawn thrusts being more
 important:

(b11) 13 ♞c1 b5!? 14 cxb5 axb5
 15 ♙xb5 (15 ♞b3 b4 16 ♞d5 ♞xd5
 17 ♞xd5 ♙b7 18 ♞d2♯) 15...♞d4
 16 ♙d3 (16 a4 d5 17 exd5 ♙f5 18
 0-0 ♞c2♯) 16...♞b6!? 17 b3 d5! 18
 exd5 (18 ♞xd5 ♞xd5 19 exd5 e4
 with the initiative; 18 0-0 ♞xf3+ 19
 ♞xf3 d4 20 ♙f2 dxc3 21 ♞xc3
 ♞b7♯, in view of White's weakness
 at e4) 18...e4! 19 ♙b1 (forced: 19
 fxe4?! ♞g4 20 ♙g1 ♙h6+; 19
 ♞xe4?! ♞xd5 20 ♙f2 f5 Δ...♞e8+;
 19 ♙xe4?! ♞xe4 20 fxe4 ♞c2+! 21
 ♞xc2 ♞xe3+ 22 ♞1e2 ♙a6+)

19...exf3 20 ♙xd4 ♞e8+ 21 ♞1e2
 (21 ♟f1?! ♞e4+; 21 ♟d1 ♞e4! 22
 ♙xb6 ♞xc3+ 23 ♟c2 ♙f5+ 24 ♞d3
 ♞e2♯) 21...♞xd5! 22 ♙xb6 ♙xc3
 23 gxf3 ♞xb6 24 ♙e4 ♙xd2+ 25
 ♟xd2 ♞d6♯ (Brenninkmejer-
 Riemersma, Wijk aan Zee 1987) 26
 ♞hd1 f5! 27 ♙xd5+ ♞xd5+ 28 ♟c3
 ♞e3+ 29 ♟b4 ♞xd1 30 ♞xd1 ♞xe2
 31 ♞d8+ ♟g7 32 ♞xc8 ♞xa2♯;

(b12) 13 ♞d1 ♙e6 14 ♞d5 (14
 ♞c1 b5 15 ♞xd6 ♞d4 16 ♞xd8
 ♞bx8 17 ♙xd4 exd4 18 ♞d5 bxc4
 19 ♙xc4 ♞xd5 20 ♙xd5 ♙xd5 21
 exd5 ♞xd5 22 ♞d3 ♙h6♯, Gheor-
 ghiu-Züger, Switzerland 1991)
 14...b5! 15 ♞ec3= (15 cxb5?! axb5
 16 ♞xf6+ ♙xf6 17 g3 ♙xa2 18
 ♞xd6 ♙b3♯, Zsu.Polgar-Gufeld,
 Wellington 1988);

(b13) 13 ♞d5!? b5 14 ♞ec3
 (Reich-Reschke, Bundesliga 1992),
 and now 14...♞d4 gives Black
 reasonable prospects;

(b2) 11 ♞b3 ♞xb3 12 axb3 c5,
 when:

(b21) 13 b4 cxb4! 14 ♞a4 b5 15
 cxb5 (15 ♞xb4 ♙d7 16 cxb5
 ♙xb5♯) 15...axb5 16 ♞xb4 ♞e8 17
 ♞b6! (17 ♞c3 ♙h6 18 ♙f2 ♞g5,
 Bobotsov-Ivkov, Beverwijk 1966,
 19 ♞d1 ♙d7♯) 17...♙h6! (a typical
 idea for exchanging the dark-square
 bishops, which favours Black with
 the given pawn formation) 18 ♙xh6
 (18 ♙f2? ♞xb6 19 ♞a5 ♞a6! 20
 ♞xd8 ♞xa1+ 21 ♟e2 ♙a6♯)
 18...♞h4+ 19 ♟d1 ♞xh6 20 ♞xc8
 ♞xc8 21 ♞d2 ♞xd2+ 22 ♟xd2 f5!
 (Lukov-Lanka, Geneva 1993) 23

exf5 gxf5 24 ♖xb5 ♜b8 25 ♖xe8 ♜fxe8 26 ♔c1 ♜b5 27 ♜d1 ♜eb8= (Lanka) – the weakness of White’s b2 and d5 pawns denies him any advantage;

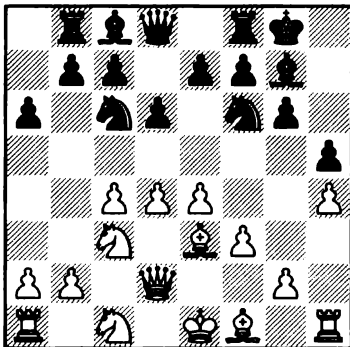
(b22) 13 ♖g5 ♜c7 14 g4 ♘e8= (Yanovsky-Stepak, Tel Aviv 1966);

(b23) 13 g4 h5 14 h3 ♘h7 15 0-0-0 (15 gxh5 ♜h4+ 16 ♜f2, Ivkov-Sofrevski, Yugoslavia 1965, 16...♜xf2+ 17 ♔xf2 gxh5=, Karpov, Razuvaev) 15...h4 16 g5 f6 17 gxf6 ♖xf6 18 ♜g1 g5 19 ♘e2 ♔h8 20 b4 b6 (Toshich-Krasenkov, Pazardzhik 1988).

9 ... h5!?

Of course, this move does not strengthen Black’s defences, but it enables him to gain time to mount a counter-offensive in the centre and on the queenside.

10 ♘c1



Other attempts by White:

10 ♖h6 b5 and now:

(a) 11 0-0-0 – cf. 10 0-0-0;

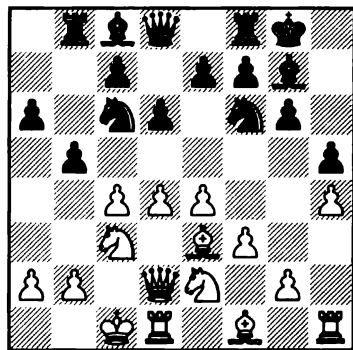
(b) 11 g4?! e5! 12 d5 (slightly better is 12 ♖g5 exd4! 13 ♘d5 bxc4

14 gxh5 d3 15 h6 ♖h8 16 h7+ ♘xh7! 17 ♖xd8 ♜xb2 18 ♜e3 ♜xd8 19 ♘ec3 ♖d4 20 ♜f4 ♖e5 21 ♜e3=, Korensky-Marek, corr. 1992/3) 12...♘d4 13 ♘xd4 ♖xh6 14 ♜xh6 exd4= (Kraidman-Westerinen, Ramat-Hashron 1982);

(c) 11 ♖xg7 ♔xg7 12 d5 (Stempn-Sznapiak, Polanica Zdroj 1982; 12 0-0-0 – cf. 10 0-0-0) 12...♘e5=.

10 ♘d5 ♘h7 11 ♖h6 (11 g4 hxg4 12 h5 e6 13 ♘dc3, Petursson-Westerinen, Gausdal 1985, 13...e5!∞) 11...e5 12 ♖xg7 ♔xg7 13 0-0-0 ♖e6 14 ♔b1 f5! 15 exf5 ♖xf5+ 16 ♔a1 ♘f6 17 ♘xf6 ♜xf6 18 d5 ♘d4! (Van der Sterren-Züger, Munich 1989), and in each case Black has satisfactory play.

10 0-0-0 b5 – a sharp position with mutual flank attacks; however, here too Black has good chances:



(a) 11 ♘f4 bxc4 12 ♖xc4 e5 13 dxe5 ♘xe5 14 ♖b3 ♜e8! 15 ♔b1 a5, and now:

(a1) 16 ♖d4?! ♘fd7 17 ♘fd5 c6

18 ♖e3 ♗a6! 19 ♗xe5 (19 f4 ♖d3 20 ♗xg7 ♜xg7) 19...♗xe5 20 g4 (20 ♗c4 ♜c8 21 g4 ♖b4! 22 ♗xa6 ♜xa6) 20...d5! 21 gxh5 (21 exd5 ♖c5+) 21...♖c5 (Dydyschko-Gelfand, Minsk 1986) 22 hxg6 ♖xb3 23 axb3 ♖xb3 24 ♖exd5 cxd5;

(a2) 16 ♜c2 ♗d7 17 ♗d4 ♜h7 (Vaganian-Nunn, Skelleftea 1989) 18 ♖h3∞ (Nunn);

(b) 11 ♗h6 e5! (here too the exchange of bishops favours Black – the ♗g7 is passive) 12 ♗xg7 (12 ♖d5 ♗xh6! 13 ♜xh6 bxc4 14 g4?! ♗xg4! 15 ♖xf6+ ♜xf6 16 fxg4 exd4, Kragelj-Levacich, Pula 1963) 12...♜xg7, and now:

(b1) 13 d5?! ♖a5 14 cxb5 axb5 15 ♖g3 ♗d7 16 ♖xb5?! ♗xb5 17 ♜xa5 ♗xf1 18 ♖hxfl ♖a8 (Razuvaev-Aranovich, Lublin 1976);

(b2) 13 dxe5 dxe5 14 ♜e3 ♜e7 15 ♖d5 ♖xd5 16 cxd5 ♖a5 17 ♖c3 ♗d7=, Plachetka-Babula, Prague 1992;

(b3) 13 ♖d5!? (Ionescu-Schneider, Stara Zagora 1990), and now 13...bxc4!? 14 ♖xf6 ♜xf6 15 d5 ♖d8 gives Black fair counter-chances – his knight goes to c5, and the b-file is of some significance;

(c) 11 ♖d5 bxc4 – it is useful to open the b-file:

(c1) 12 g4 ♖xd5 13 exd5 ♖b4 14 ♖c3 c6! 15 ♗xc4 cxd5 16 ♗b3 ♜b6! 17 ♖hg1 (Kuligowski-Nunn, Wijk aan Zee 1983) 17...f5! 18 ♖xd5 (18 gxh5 f4!) 18...♖xd5 19 ♗xd5+ e6 20 ♗b3 ♜c6+ intending

...♜xf3 with a complicated game (Nunn);

(c2) 12 ♗h6 ♖xd5 13 exd5 ♖b4 14 ♖c3 c6 (Petursson-Nunn, Luzern 1982) 15 dxc6! (15 ♗xc4?! cxd5 16 ♖xd5 ♗xh6 17 ♜xh6 ♖xd5 18 ♗xd5 ♗f5!+, Hurme-Nunn, Helsinki 1983) 15...d5! 16 g4 ♗xh6 17 ♜xh6 ♜b6 18 ♖h2 ♜xc6 19 gxh5! ♗f5 20 ♗h3∞ (Nunn);

(c3) 12 ♖xf6+ ♗xf6 13 g4 ♖b4 14 ♖c3 c5 15 ♗xc4 cxd4 16 ♗xd4 ♜c7 17 ♗b3, and now Black has two good possibilities:

(c31) 17...♗xd4 18 ♜xd4 ♗e6 19 gxh5 ♗xb3 20 axb3 ♜a5!? (20...♖a2+ 21 ♜c2 ♖b4 22 ♜d2 ♖fb8=, W.Schmidt-Sznapiak, Prague 1985) 21 ♜b1 ♜xh5∞ (Novak-Sznapiak, Polanica Zdroj 1985);

(c32) 17...♗e6!? 18 ♗xf6 ♗xb3 19 axb3 exf6 20 gxh5 ♜a5! = (Oll-Gelfand, USSR 1984).

It is clear that in every case Black obtains interesting, dynamic positions, where White has to play accurately to avoid ending up in difficulties.

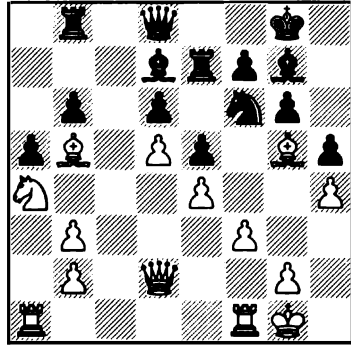
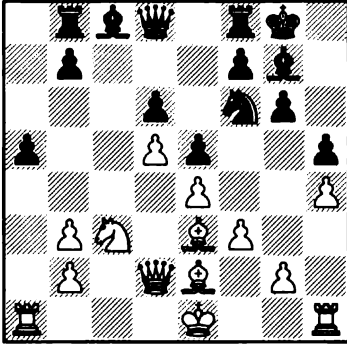
10 ... e5
11 d5 ♖d4
12 ♖b3

12 ♖1e2 – cf. 9 ♖c1.

12 ... ♖xb3
13 axb3 c6!?

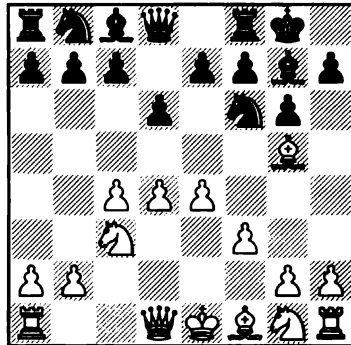
Here, compared with the similar position without the advance of the two h-pawns, 13...c5 is less reliable – in certain key variations Black does not have the favourable manoeuvre ...♗h6! and ...♜h4+.

14 ♖e2 cxd5
15 cxd5 a5!?



9.2 (1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♖g7
4 e4 d6 5 f3 0-0)

6 ♖g5



After opening the c-file, Black adopts a defensive posture on the queenside, preventing the restricting b3-b4.

Weaker is 15...♖d7 16 b4± (Christiansen-Durich, San Francisco 1987).

16 ♖g5!?

16 ♖h6 ♖xh6 17 ♗xh6 ♖d7=.
16 0-0 b6 17 ♜fc1 (17 ♖g5 - cf. 16 ♖g5) 17...♘d7 18 ♖g5 f6 19 ♖e3 ♘c5 20 ♖c4=.

16 ... ♜e8!?

After 16...b6 17 ♘b5! (17 0-0 b5!)=) 17...♖a6 18 ♜c1 ♜c8 19 ♜c6 White becomes firmly established at c6.

17 ♖b5 ♜e7
18 0-0 b6
19 ♘a4 ♖d7

Black has taken appropriate regrouping measures and retains a reasonable position. It is hard for White to transform his spatial advantage into something real.

This move has the aim of reducing to the minimum Black's options, and in particular of excluding ...e7-e5. But in fact the 'long' bishop move allows Black to engage with great optimism in a battle for the d4 square. This aim is best answered by playing his knight to c6, as also recommended against 6 ♖e3.

6 ... ♘c6!

7 ♘ge2

7 ♗d2 a6! 8 d5! (if 8 0-0-0 b5! 9 cxb5 axb5 10 ♙xb5 ♘a5 11 ♚b1 ♙a6 12 ♙xa6 ♗xa6 13 ♗d3 ♗a8 and Black's attack is very dangerous, completely neutralising White's material advantage) 8...♘e5 9 f4 ♘ed7 10 ♘f3 ♘c5 11 ♗c2 c6 12 ♙e2 cxd5 13 cxd5 ♗b6!? 14 ♘d2 ♘fxe4! 15 ♘dxe4 ♙f5 16 g4 ♘xe4 17 gxf5 ♗f2+! and despite White's extra piece, his position is in danger (Georgadze-Kupreichik, USSR 1980/1).

7 ... a6

8 ♗d2

8 d5!? ♘e5 9 ♘c1 (after 9 ♘d4 c5! 10 ♘c2 h6 11 ♙e3 e6 12 a4 exd5 13 cxd5 ♘h7 14 ♙e2 f5 15 f4 ♘f7 the white centre is insecure, and e4-e5 leads to the complete elimination of the forces; Black retains sufficient counterplay, Bragin-Kislov, Voronezh 1991) 9...c6 10 ♗d2 cxd5 11 cxd5 b5 12 ♘b3 ♙d7 13 ♗c1 ♗c8 14 ♙e2 b4 15 ♘d1 ♗xc1 16 ♘xc1 ♗b6 17 ♙e3 ♗b7 and White can hardly count on any advantage (Gomez-Garcia Martinez, Bayami 1990).

8 ... ♗b8

9 h4

Other possibilities for White:

9 d5 (after this advance it is fairly easy for Black to build up his position – the white knight cannot be maintained at d4, and it merely helps him to stabilise the centre) 9...♘e5 10 ♘g3 (or 10 ♘d4 c5 11

♘c2 ♘e8 12 ♙e2 f5 13 0-0 ♘f7 14 ♙e3 e5 and White has to take care not to come under an attack) 10...c6 11 ♙e2 b5 12 cxb5 cxd5 13 ♙xf6 (after 13 exd5 axb5 14 ♙xb5 ♗a5 the activity of Black's pieces and the insecure position of the enemy king give him the better chances) 13...♙xf6 14 ♘xd5 ♙g7 15 a4 (15 bxa6? ♗xb2?) 15...axb5 16 axb5 ♙d7 17 f4 (17 ♗a5 e6! 18 ♗xd8 ♗fxd8 19 ♘c3 d5 and the weakness of the b2 and b5 pawns gives Black the better chances) 17...♘g4 18 ♗a5 ♗e8 19 ♗d1 h5 20 0-0 ♙xb5 21 ♙xb5 ♗xb5= (Sadler-Vogt, Altensteig 1992).

9 ♗c1!? A new idea of Dreev – White intends to place his pawns on light squares (b3-c4-d5) and prophylactically defends his ♘c3, concerning himself mainly with denying Black counterplay and planning to develop freely with ♘d4 and ♙e2. Nevertheless this is a slow plan, and by denying White use of the coordination point d4 Black can face the future with confidence. 9...♙d7 (or 9...h5!? 10 b3 ♘h7 11 ♙h4 ♗e8 12 d5 ♘e5 13 ♘d4 c5=, Novikov-D.Fedorov, St Petersburg 1996) 10 d5 (10 b3!? e5! 11 d5 ♘e7 and White has no convenient squares to develop his kingside pieces, while Black is already threatening ...b7-b5) 10...♘a5 11 b3 c5!? 12 ♙h6 (12 dxc6 bxc6 13 c5 dxc5 and provided Black does not allow White quietly to complete his development, his opening problems

6 ... ♘c6!

7 ♘ge2

7 ♗d2 a6! 8 d5! (if 8 0-0-0 b5! 9 cxb5 axb5 10 ♙xb5 ♘a5 11 ♚b1 ♙a6 12 ♙xa6 ♜xa6 13 ♗d3 ♗a8 and Black's attack is very dangerous, completely neutralising White's material advantage) 8...♘e5 9 f4 ♘ed7 10 ♘f3 ♘c5 11 ♗c2 c6 12 ♙e2 cxd5 13 cxd5 ♗b6!? 14 ♘d2 ♘fxe4! 15 ♘dxe4 ♙f5 16 g4 ♘xe4 17 gxf5 ♗f2+! and despite White's extra piece, his position is in danger (Georgadze-Kupreichik, USSR 1980/1).

7 ... a6

8 ♗d2

8 d5!? ♘e5 9 ♘c1 (after 9 ♘d4 c5! 10 ♘c2 h6 11 ♙e3 e6 12 a4 exd5 13 cxd5 ♘h7 14 ♙e2 f5 15 f4 ♘f7 the white centre is insecure, and e4-e5 leads to the complete elimination of the forces; Black retains sufficient counterplay, Bragin-Kislov, Voronezh 1991) 9...c6 10 ♗d2 cxd5 11 cxd5 b5 12 ♘b3 ♙d7 13 ♜c1 ♜c8 14 ♙e2 b4 15 ♘d1 ♜xc1 16 ♘xc1 ♗b6 17 ♙e3 ♗b7 and White can hardly count on any advantage (Gomez-Garcia Martinez, Bayami 1990).

8 ... ♜b8

9 h4

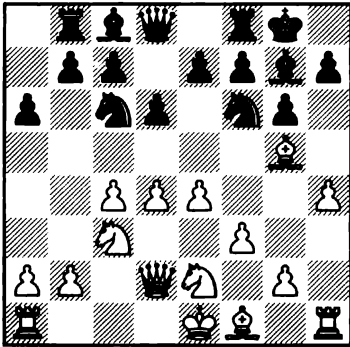
Other possibilities for White:

9 d5 (after this advance it is fairly easy for Black to build up his position – the white knight cannot be maintained at d4, and it merely helps him to stabilise the centre) 9...♘e5 10 ♘g3 (or 10 ♘d4 c5 11

♘c2 ♘e8 12 ♙e2 f5 13 0-0 ♘f7 14 ♙e3 e5 and White has to take care not to come under an attack) 10...c6 11 ♙e2 b5 12 cxb5 cxd5 13 ♙xf6 (after 13 exd5 axb5 14 ♙xb5 ♗a5 the activity of Black's pieces and the insecure position of the enemy king give him the better chances) 13...♙xf6 14 ♘xd5 ♙g7 15 a4 (15 bxa6? ♜xb2?) 15...axb5 16 axb5 ♙d7 17 f4 (17 ♗a5 e6! 18 ♗xd8 ♜fxd8 19 ♘c3 d5 and the weakness of the b2 and b5 pawns gives Black the better chances) 17...♘g4 18 ♗a5 ♗e8 19 ♜d1 h5 20 0-0 ♙xb5 21 ♙xb5 ♜xb5= (Sadler-Vogt, Altensteig 1992).

9 ♜c1!? A new idea of Dreev – White intends to place his pawns on light squares (b3-c4-d5) and prophylactically defends his ♘c3, concerning himself mainly with denying Black counterplay and planning to develop freely with ♘d4 and ♙e2. Nevertheless this is a slow plan, and by denying White use of the coordination point d4 Black can face the future with confidence. 9...♙d7 (or 9...h5!? 10 b3 ♘h7 11 ♙h4 ♗e8 12 d5 ♘e5 13 ♘d4 c5=, Novikov-D.Fedorov, St Petersburg 1996) 10 d5 (10 b3!? e5! 11 d5 ♘e7 and White has no convenient squares to develop his kingside pieces, while Black is already threatening ...b7-b5) 10...♘a5 11 b3 c5!? 12 ♙h6 (12 dxc6 bxc6 13 c5 dxc5 and provided Black does not allow White quietly to complete his development, his opening problems

will be solved) 12...♙xh6 13 ♖xh6 b5! 14 ♜f4 bxc4 15 bxc4 ♜b4 16 h4 ♜xc4 (Ljubojevic-Nunn, Amber Rapid 1994), and after 17 ♜d3 ♜b6 18 ♜xc5 dxc5 19 ♙xc4 e6! Black has no problems.



9 ... h5
10 0-0-0 b5
11 ♜d5

For 11 ♙h6 cf. *Illustrative Game No.10* (Mestel-Gufeld, Hastings 1986/7).

11 ... bxc4
12 g4

Alternatives:

12 ♙xf6 (with his bishop at e3 White could play 12 ♜xf6+, but here this would involve the loss of a tempo and serious risk after 12...exf6) 12...exf6 13 ♖c3 ♜e7. This is practically the only variation that is not possible after 6 ♙e3, but the spoiled pawn structure is merely to Black's advantage. Now White has nothing better than 14 ♜xe7+ ♖xe7 15 ♖xc4 when the possible 15...f5 gives Black the better chances.

12 ♙h6 – cf. 6 ♙e3.

12 ... ♜xd5
13 exd5 ♜b4
14 ♜c3 c5!

With the bishop at e3 this would be impossible, and Black would have to restrict himself to the modest 14...c6. But here he seizes control of d4!

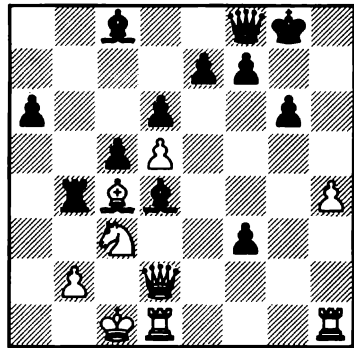
15 ♙h6

15 dxc6?! ♖a5! 16 ♙xc4 ♜xc6 17 gxh5 ♜b4 18 ♙d5 ♜xd4 ♠ (Vegh-Vogt, Eger 1984).

15 ... ♙xd4
16 ♙xc4 hxg4
17 ♙xf8

Or 17 h5?! gxf3! 18 ♙xf8 ♖xf8 19 hxg6?! fxg6 20 a3 ♙e5 ♠.

17 ... ♖xf8
18 a3 gxf3!
19 axb4 ♜xb4



Black has sacrificed a whole rook, but the dominating placing of all his pieces, plus his passed pawns and the possibility of ...a5-a4-a3, allow the situation to be considered roughly equal.

Game 10 (p.125)
Mestel-Gufeld
Hastings 1986/7

1	c4	g6
2	e4	♙g7
3	d4	d6
4	♗c3	♗f6
5	f3	0-0
6	♙g5	

A popular move, hindering ...e7-e5, which at the same time provokes Black into playing ...h7-h6, when the bishop retreats to e3 and White then gains a tempo for his attack by ♗d2.

In reply Black must launch a counterattack. Where? In the centre, of course, since the white king is still there.

6 ... ♗c6!?

After 7 d5 ♗e5 Black will follow up with ...c7-c6!, achieving his main objective: he opens a second front and forces the opponent to divert his forces to the defence of his own king.

White is unlikely to follow this path, which means that he will prepare a shelter for his king on the queenside while maintaining the tension in the centre. Black must therefore open a front on this part of the board. How does he do this? Very simply: ...♗c6!, ...a7-a6, ...♞b8 and at a convenient moment ...b7-b5!

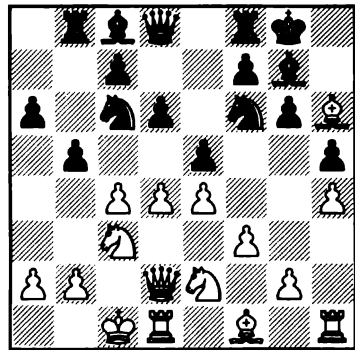
And so the seemingly strange move 6...♗c6 becomes perfectly understandable, as it also prepares a

blow in the centre with ...e7-e5 (White's d4 is vulnerable, especially with his bishop at g5).

7	♗ge2	a6
8	♞d2	♞b8
9	h4	h5!

One of those cases where an exception to the rule operates. Of course, this move does not strengthen the defences of Black's king, but it enables him to gain precious time to set up a counter-offensive.

10	0-0-0	b5
11	♙h6	e5!



With the bishop at g5, here there would have followed d4-d5. But now, after 12 ♙xg7 ♗xg7, the move 13 d5 has several positional drawbacks. In particular, White remains with a 'bad' bishop (his e4 and d5 pawns are on light squares), and in addition after 13...♗a5! it would appear that he is forced to block the path of his g-pawn with 14 ♗g3, which sharply reduces his attacking potential.

12 ♖xg7 ♔xg7
13 dxe5

There is already no other sensible move. If 13 ♘d5 there follows 13... bxc4 with a counterattack, which is all the more dangerous for the fact that White simply cannot complete his development, his ♖f1 being not only 'bad', but also 'blind', blocked in by the ♕e2, covering d4.

13 ... dxe5

13... ♕xe5? would be a positional blunder. After 14 cxb5 axb5 15 ♕f4 the enemy pieces suddenly come alive and the picture changes sharply in White's favour.

14 ♖g5 ♖e7
15 ♘d5

There is effectively nothing else. The reckless 15 g4?! hxg4 16 h5 runs into the 'cool' 16... ♕h7! (and if 17 ♖d2 ♖g5).

15 ... ♘xd5
16 exd5?!

An interesting, but questionable move. Mestel realised that 16 cxd5 was sounder, but here Black gains the advantage in a quiet situation: 16... ♖xg5+ 17 hxg5 ♕a5 18 ♘c3 ♕b7 followed by ... ♘d6 and ...c7-c6.

Therefore White gives up control of the important f5 square, but makes a desperate attempt somehow to activate his light-square bishop, relying on the tactical resources of the position.

16 ... f6

After 16... ♖xg5+? 17 hxg5 ♕e7 White gains use of the e4 square,

and the e5 pawn, cut off from base, is weak.

17 ♖d2

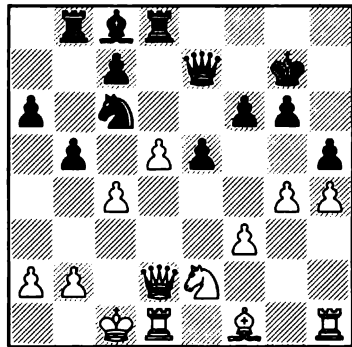
Practically forced. After 17 ♖e3? ♕a5! White does not manage to coordinate his forces and comes under a swift attack.

17 ... ♖d8!

This pin is the basis of Black's entire strategy. His knight continues the battle for the key d4 square.

18 g4!?

A move which logically follows from White's preceding play. He too professes the principle that the best form of defence is counterattack, especially as 18 ♖e1 is very risky: 18... ♖c5! 19 dxc6 ♖e3+ 20 ♖b1 (20 ♖d2 bxc4 with the threats of 21... ♖xb2 and 21...c3!) 20...bxc4 21 ♖a1 ♖f5 22 ♘g3 ♖xd1+ 23 ♖xd1 ♖d8 24 ♘xf5+ gxf5 25 ♖b1 c3 26 ♖xa6 (if 26 b3 c2) 26... ♖d2 27 ♖g1 cxb2+ 28 ♖b1 ♖c3 and White loses.



18 ... bxc4!

18...hxg4 seems dangerous after

19 fxg4 ♙xg4 20 ♖g1 f5 21 ♚e3!
An experienced player does not concede the initiative for the sake of material gain.

19 ♘c3

19 gxh5 would have demanded precise calculation on the part of Black. He was intending 19...♗b4 (with the threat of 20...♗d3+) 20 ♘c3 ♙f5 21 ♙xc4 ♚c5, when after 22 ♚e2 ♙d3! 23 ♙xd3 ♗xa2+ 24 ♗c2 ♖xb2+! 25 ♗xb2 ♚xc3+ 26 ♗xa2 ♖b8 27 ♙b5 ♚a5+ 28 ♗b3 ♖xb5+ 29 ♚xb5 ♚xb5+ and 30...gxh5 he gains a won ending.

But what if 22 b3? Then 22...♗xd5!! 23 ♗xd5 (or 23 ♙xd5 ♖xd5-) 23...♚xc4+!

And finally, 22 ♙b3!? Now after 22...♗d3+ 23 ♗b1 none of the discovered checks wins, but the murderous quiet move 22...a5! (with the threat of 23...a4 24 ♙xa4 ♗xa2 mate) 23 ♚e2 a4 24 ♙c4 ♙d3! 25 ♙xd3 ♗xa2+ 26 ♗c2 a3! 27 ♖b1 ♖xb2+ 28 ♖xb2 ♚xc3+ 29 ♗b1 axb2 30 ♚c2 ♖b8 puts everything in its place – White's position is hopeless.

19 ... hxg4

20 ♙xc4

Deep calculation was required after 20 h5 g5 21 ♚c2 ♗d4! 22

♚g6+ ♗f8 23 d6 (23 ♙xc4 ♚g7!) 23...cxd6 24 h6 (if 24 ♖xd4 exd4 25 ♙xc4, then 25...♚g7!) 24...♙f5 25 h7 ♙xg6 26 h8♚+ ♗f7 27 ♙xc4+ d5 28 ♙xd5+ ♖xd5! 29 ♚xb8 ♗e2+! 30 ♗xe2 ♚c5+ 31 ♘c3 ♚e3+, and mate next move. This entire variation had to be foreseen when 19...hxg4! was played, since if there is no mate, Black has to resign.

After the text move the tempo of White's attack is sharply reduced, and his position collapses like a house of cards.

20 ... ♗d4

The dream of this knight has been realised – with decisive effect it invades on the central square.

21 fxg4 ♙xg4

22 ♖df1 ♖b4

23 h5 ♖xc4

24 hxg6 ♖xc3+!

25 ♚xc3

If 25 bxc3 Black wins by 25...♚a3+ 26 ♚b2 (or 26 ♗b1 ♖b8+ 27 ♗a1 ♗b3+) 26...♗e2+ 27 ♗c2 ♚xb2+ 28 ♗xb2 ♗g3.

25 ... ♗e2+

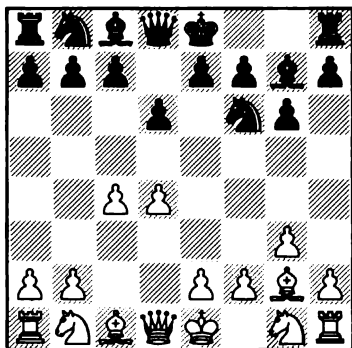
26 ♗c2 ♗xc3

27 ♖h7+ ♗xg6

White resigns: after 28 ♖xe7 ♗xd5 his rook is trapped.

10 King's Indian Defence: Variations with ♖g2

- | | | |
|---|-----|-----|
| 1 | d4 | ♟f6 |
| 2 | c4 | g6 |
| 3 | g3 | ♙g7 |
| 4 | ♙g2 | d6 |



This is the initial position of the variation with the kingside fianchetto by White – one of the most complicated, diverse and dangerous for Black.

With the flank development of his bishop White intensifies the pressure on the centre – the e4 and d5 squares, takes aim at Black's queenside, and securely reinforces his kingside castled position. He usually initiates play in the centre and on the queenside.

For a certain time Black should maintain parity in the centre, and then after exchanging ...exd4 create piece pressure against it. His arsenal

includes the manoeuvre ...♜b6, the advance of his pawn to a4, and play against the white king using the weakening of the light-square complex after the fianchetto.

All this promises a complicated, diverse game with chances for both sides.

5 ♟f3

This continuation, sometimes with a transposition of moves, occurs in the overwhelming majority of games.

We will also consider the set-up where White develops his knight at e2, where it does not restrict the scope of the ♙g2.

5 ♘c3 0–0, when White has:

(a) 6 e3 (the point of this move, developed by Flohr, is that White firmly reinforces his d4 pawn without blocking his long-range bishop; its drawbacks are that it allows Black great scope on the kingside and the knight at e2 is inactive) 6...♟bd7 7 ♘ge2 e5 8 b3 ♜e8 9 ♙a3 (White prevents the opponent from achieving his planned set-up of ...c7-c6 and ...e5-e4) 9...h5 (threatening ...e5-e4, whereas the immediate 9...e4 can be advantageously answered by 10 g4!) 10 h3 (essential prophylaxis; after 10 0–0?! h4! 11 ♜c1 hxg3 12 hxg3

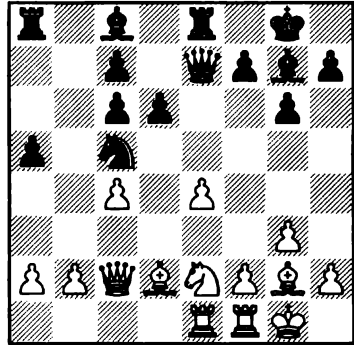
♖g4 13 ♙f3 ♜df6 14 ♜c2 e4 15 ♙g2 ♙f5 16 ♜f4 ♙h6 Black built up a very strong attack on the king in Ivkov-Gligoric, Mar del Plata 1955) 10...a6 (exploiting the fact that the ♙a3 prevents a2-a4, Black initiates play on the queenside) 11 dxe5 dxe5 (capturing with the pawn takes away important central squares from the ♖e2) 12 ♛c2 ♜b8 13 ♜d1 b5. Black has a good game (Botvinnik-Smyslov, Moscow 1954);

(b) 6 e4 e5 7 ♖ge2 (if 7 d5 the active 7...♜h5!? followed by ...f5-f4 is possible) 7...exd4 (the thematic move – Black relieves the tension in the centre in order to create piece play, exploiting his good development; the alternative is 7...♜c6, also with adequate counterplay) 8 ♜xd4 ♜c6, and now:

(b1) 9 ♜c2 ♙e6 10 b3 ♛d7 11 0-0 ♙h3 12 f3 ♙xg2 13 ♜xg2 ♜h5 14 ♙b2 f5 with a good game for Black (Botvinnik-Yudovich, Leningrad 1939);

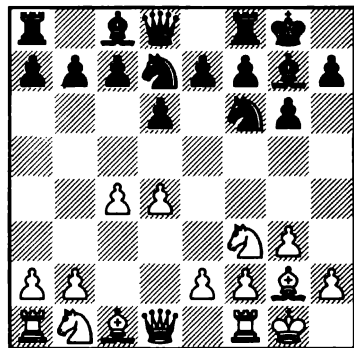
(b2) 9 ♜de2!? (this move of Boleslavsky leads to sharp play) 9...♜e5 (now 9...♙e6 10 b3 ♛d7 11 0-0 ♙h3 is less strong, since after 12 f3 ♙xg2 13 ♜xg2 ♜h5 14 ♜b1! White's f4 is securely defended, and if 14...f5 15 exf5 Black does not have 15...♛xf5 in view of 16 g4) 10 b3 ♙g4 11 0-0 ♜f3+ 12 ♜h1 ♜xe4 13 ♜xe4 ♙xa1 14 ♙h6 ♙e5!? (14...♙g7 is dangerous in view of 15 ♙xg7 ♜xg7 16 ♛a1+ f6 17 h3 ♙h5 18 g4) 15 h3 ♙h5 16 ♜f4 ♜h2 17 ♜\xh5 ♜\xf1∞ (analysis by Geller);

(b3) 9 ♜xc6 bxc6 10 0-0 ♜d7! (Black prevents b2-b3, supporting c4) 11 ♛c2 ♛f6 (11...♜e5 is also good) 12 ♜e2 ♜e8 13 ♜b1 ♛e7 14 ♙d2 ♜c5 15 ♜be1 a5.



Black has strong play on the queenside (Najdorf-Bronstein, Budapest 1950).

5 ... 0-0
6 0-0 ♜bd7



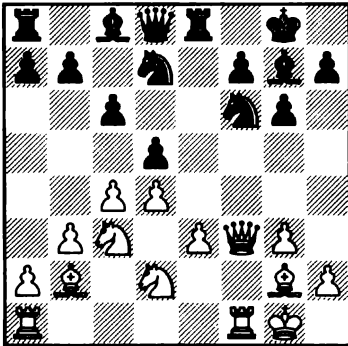
7 ♜c3

White's other possibilities:
7 e3 (in contrast to Flohr's variation, examined earlier, the ♜f3

prevents White from comfortably controlling e4, which Black can exploit, establishing a pawn outpost at e4 with gain of time) 7...e5 8 ♖c3 ♖e8 9 b3 c6, and now:

(a) if 10 ♖c2, hindering 10...e4? in view of 11 ♖g5 d5 12 cxd5 cxd5 13 ♖b5±, Black can play 10...a6, covering b5, or 10...exd4 11 ♖xd4 ♖c5 12 ♖b2 a5 with counterplay;

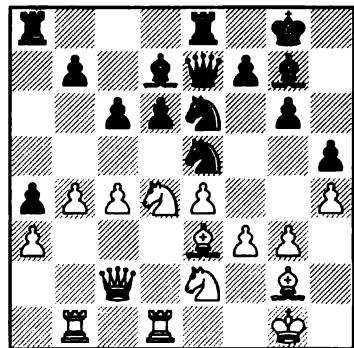
(b) 10 ♖b2 e4 11 ♖d2 d5 12 f3 (after 12 cxd5 cxd5 13 f3 exf3 14 ♖xf3 Black can maintain his centre by 14...♖b6) 12...exf3 13 ♖xf3.



The critical position of the variation. Both sides have carried out their plans. White is threatening to capture on d5, as well as to play e3-e4 with serious pressure. However, Black has his trumps: 13...dxc4! (he cannot maintain his centre – 13...♖b6?! 14 c5! ♖g4 15 ♖f4 ♖bd7 16 e4!±, Cherepkov-Boleslavsky, USSR 1951) 14 ♖xc4 (if 14 bxc4 Black has the unpleasant reply 14...♖c5!) 14...♖b6 15 ♖e5 (after 15 ♖xb6 axb6 the a-file is

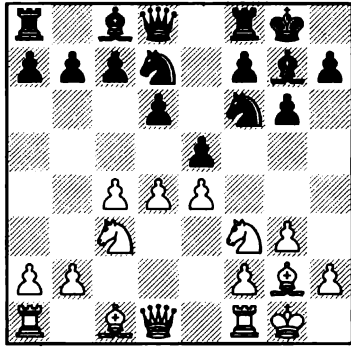
advantageously opened) 15...♖e6 16 ♖ad1 ♖e7. Black's pieces are very harmoniously placed. White has no targets to attack, and his centre is more likely to be a weakness than a strength. Black's chances are better (Zak-Simagin, USSR 1952).

7 ♖c2 (White plans to play his rook to d1) 7...e5 8 ♖d1 ♖e7 (avoiding the opposition with the white rook) 9 ♖c3 c6 10 e4 exd4 (beginning piece play against the white centre) 11 ♖xd4 ♖e8 12 b3 ♖c5 13 f3 (or 13 ♖b2 a5 14 ♖d2 h5 15 ♖a4 ♖xa4 16 bxa4 ♖d7 17 ♖b3 ♖xb2 18 ♖xb2 ♖b6 with a good game for Black, Salov-Hjartarson, Amsterdam 1991) 13...♖fd7 (13...a5!?!=) 14 ♖b1 ♖e5 15 ♖ce2 a5 16 a3 h5 (by these pawn thrusts, typical of this variation, Black forces White to weaken his pawn chain on both flanks) 17 h4 ♖d7 18 ♖e3 a4 19 b4 ♖e6.



The position is one of dynamic balance (Salov-Kasparov, Linares 1991).

7 ... e5
8 e4



The strongest and most natural move. White seizes space and halts the black e-pawn.

After this Black is forced sooner or later to concede the centre (by ...exd4), and must then aim to create piece pressure on White's central pawns. His arsenal includes playing his queen to b6 or a5, the pawn attacks ...f7-f5 and ...b7-b5, and also the advance of his a-pawn.

White's other possibilities are:

8 h3 (preparing a post for his bishop at e3) 8...c6 and now:

(a) 9 dxe5 (this, with the idea of invading at d6, does not promise any advantage) 9...dxe5 10 e3 ♖e7! (Black takes control of c5, since he must watch carefully for the possibility of White penetrating at d6) 11 ♖d2 (or 11 ♖b3 ♜e8 12 ♜fd1 ♘c5 13 ♖a3 ♙f8! with a good game) 11...♘c5 12 ♜fd1 ♘fe4 13 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 14 ♖a5 f5 15 ♘d2 ♘xd2 16 ♜xd2 ♖f7 with equality (Smejkal);

(b) 9 d5, when Black gains standard King's Indian counterplay by 9...c5 10 ♘e1 ♘e8 11 e4 f5 12 exf5 gxf5 13 ♘d3 ♜f6 (Karlsson-Kochiev, Tallinn 1987);

(c) 9 e3 e4 10 ♘d2 d5 (now, with the bishop at e3, f2-f3 promises little, and White is unable to develop sufficient pressure on d5) 11 ♖b3 ♘b6 12 cxd5 cxd5 13 a4 a5 (also satisfactory is 13...e6 14 a5 ♘c8 15 ♖xb7 ♘d6 16 ♖b3 ♘f5 with good play for the pawn) 14 ♜ac1 e6 15 ♘b5 ♜c8 16 ♜xc8 ♘xc8 17 ♜c1 ♘e8 18 ♙f4 ♖d7 19 ♙h2 ♘e7, and after ...♘c6 Black gains attacking chances on the kingside (analysis by Geller);

(d) 9 e4 (best), transposing into the main line.

8 b3 (White intends to develop his bishop on the long diagonal or at a3; however, this plan has the drawback of weakening his control of e3) 8...♜e8, and now:

(a) 9 e3 c6 10 e4 (this advance gives Black an excellent game after almost any other move by White, e.g. 10 h3 e4 11 ♘d2 d5 12 cxd5 cxd5 13 a4 ♘f8 14 e3 ♘e6 15 ♙h2 a6, Bischoff-Piket, Munich 1989) 11 ♘d2 d5 12 f3 exf3 13 ♖xf3, and play transposes to the 7 e3 variation, examined earlier;

(b) 9 ♖c2 c6 – Black continues to prepare ...e5-e4, simultaneously defending the d5 and b5 squares against invasion by the white knight:

(b1) 10 dxe5 dxe5 11 ♘g5 ♘c5 12 ♜d1 ♖b6 13 ♘ge4 ♘cxe4, and

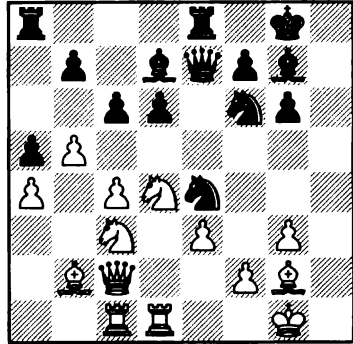
the attempt by White to occupy d6 did not achieve anything (Alartortsev-Smyslov, Leningrad 1947);

(b2) 10 ♖b2 (after this the weakening of White's e3 is felt) 10...e4 11 ♘g5 e3! 12 f4 (if 12 fxe3 ♖h6!) 12...♗f8, and although it is clear that the e3 pawn is doomed, the initiative has passed to Black – 13 ♘d1 d5 14 c5 ♖g4 15 ♗f3 ♖xf3 16 ♗xf3 ♘g4 17 h3 ♗h6 18 ♗xe3 ♗f5 19 ♗d3 ♗e6 20 ♗d2 h5 21 h4 ♖h6 with more than enough play for the pawn – in some cases the sacrifice at h4 or g3 is threatened (Szapiel-Geller, Szczawno Zdroj 1950);

(b3) 10 ♗d1 e4 11 ♘g5 e3! 12 fxe3 (12 ♖xe3? ♗xe3! 13 fxe3 ♘g4?) 12...♗f8 13 e4 ♗e7 14 e3 ♖h6! 15 ♗f3 ♗xe4 16 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 17 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 18 ♘g5 ♗e8! 19 ♗e4 ♗d8. Black has successfully regrouped and has equalised (Geller).

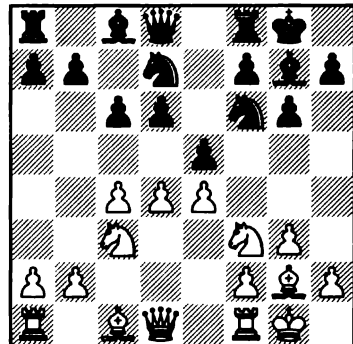
8 ♗c2 (White wants to post his rook at d1, while managing without b2-b3) 8...c6 9 ♗d1 ♗e7 10 b3 (10 e4 transposes into the Salov-Kasparov game examined earlier; by closing the centre, White allows his opponent play on the kingside – 10 d5 c5 11 e4 ♗e8 12 ♗e1 f5 13 f3 h5 14 ♗d3 h4, F.Gonzales-Bernal, Spain 1996) 10...exd4 (beginning play on the e-file) 11 ♗xd4 ♗e8 12 ♖b2 ♗c5 13 e3 a5 14 a3 h5 (note Black's handling of the position – with typical pawn thrusts he restricts the mobility of the white pawn chains and begins active piece play

in the centre and against the white king) 15 b4 ♗ce4 16 b5 ♖d7 17 ♗ac1 h4 18 a4 hxg3 19 hxg3.



We are following *Illustrative Game No.11* (Timman-Kasparov, Tilburg 1991) where the tactical blow 19...♗xf2! gave Black a great advantage.

8 ... c6



The most flexible continuation. Black, firstly, retains the option of various plans, and, secondly, immediately opens the way for his queen to active posts at a5 or b6.

9 h3

Taking g4 away from the black knight, White prepares to develop his bishop at e3. At one time Botvinnik thought that this move was a waste of a tempo, and he preferred the immediate 9 ♙e3 . However, in the 14th game of his first match with Smyslov (1954) Black found a convincing reply to this: 9... ♟g4 10 ♙g5 ♚b6 11 h3 exd4! 12 ♟a4 ♚a6 13 hxg4 b5 14 ♟xd4 (or 14 ♙e7 ♚e8 15 ♙xd6 bxa4 16 e5 c5! 17 b4 – 17 ♟xd4 ♟xe5 18 ♙xe5 ♙xe5 19 ♙xa8 ♙xd4 – 17... cxb4 18 ♚xd4 ♙b7 with a complicated game in which Black has good chances, Yusupov-Kasparov, Linares 1992) 14... bxa4 15 ♟xc6 ♚xc6 16 e5 ♚xc4 17 ♙xa8 ♟xe5 and in a sharp game Smyslov gained the advantage.

If 9 b3 , then 9... ♚b6 is the most accurate, transposing into the main line after 10 h3 , since 10 ♙b2 gives Black a comfortable game: 10... ♚e8 11 ♚e1 exd4 12 ♟xd4 ♟c5 13 ♚c2 ♟g4 (or 13... $\text{a5!?$) 14 ♚ad1 ♟e5 15 ♟de2 ♙g4 16 ♚xd6 ♟f3+ 17 ♙xf3 ♙xf3 with excellent play for the pawn. An important defender of the king, the ♙g2 , has been exchanged, and in view of the position of the rook at d6 it is difficult to dislodge its opposite number from f3 – 18 ♟d4? ♚c7! (J.Horvath-W.Watson, Budapest 1989).

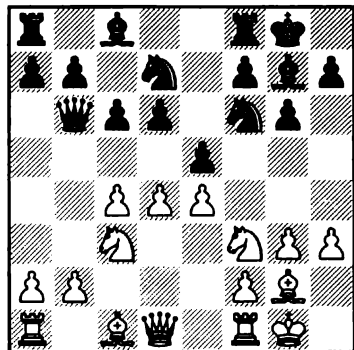
The immediate closing of the centre by 9 d5 favours Black, who occupies the open c-file: 9... cxd5 10

♟c5 11 ♚c2 a5 12 ♟d2 b6 13 ♟b3 ♙a6 14 ♚d1 ♟cd7 15 a4 ♚c8 with at least equal chances (Botvinnik-Bronstein, Moscow 1945).

If 9 ♚c2 the simplest is 9... ♚e8 10 ♚d1 ♚e7 , transposing into the Salov-Kasparov game.

9 ♚b1 is a dangerous move, aimed against possible actions by the black queen on the queenside. But here too Black can reckon on counterplay: 9... exd4 10 ♟xd4 $\text{a5!?$ (10... ♚e8 11 h3! allows White to transpose into a well-known position from the 9 h3 ♚e8 variation, which gives him a slight advantage) 11 f3 ♟c5 12 ♙e3 ♚e8 13 ♚d2 a4 14 ♚fd1 ♟fd7 15 ♟de2 ♙f8 (despite its apparent weakness, the d6 pawn in the King's Indian is a 'tough nut', and it is almost impossible to win it by frontal attack) 16 ♟f4 ♚e7 17 ♟d3 ♟xd3 18 ♚xd3 ♟e5 19 ♚e2 ♙e6 and Black already has the more active game (Novak-Boller, Klatovg 1996).

9 ... ♚b6



Black immediately puts pressure on d4 and threatens the tactical stroke 10...exd4 11 ♖xd4 ♜xe4! At the same time he sets his sights on the c4 pawn (after ...♗b4).

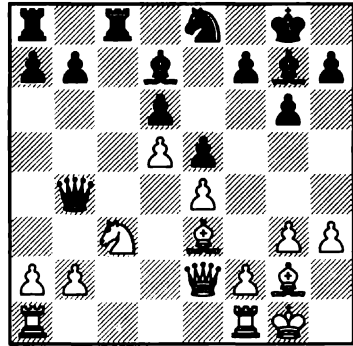
10 ♖e1

The most popular reply. Let us also consider White's alternatives:

10 dxe5 (relieving the tension in the centre gives little – Black obtains a convenient outpost at d4, and his queen can switch to e7 via c5 or b4) 10...dxe5 11 ♗e2 (or 11 a3 ♗c5 12 ♗e2 ♗e7 13 ♖e3 ♜c5 14 ♗c2 ♜h5 15 b4 ♜e6 16 ♖fd1 f5 with sufficient counterplay, Donner-Tal, Bled 1961) 11...♜e8! (planning to play the knight via c7 and e6 to d4) 12 ♖e3 ♗b4 13 c5 b6 (immediately taking measures against the bind on the queenside) 14 a3 ♗b3 15 ♜d2 ♗e6 16 ♖fd1 ♜c7 17 cxb6 ♖a6 with a good game for Black (Najdorf-Bronstein, Moscow 1956).

10 d5 (White counts on gaining a tempo by attacking the queen with ♖e3) 10...cxd5 11 cxd5 ♜c5 12 ♜e1 (neither 12 ♖e1 ♖d7 13 ♖b1 a5 14 ♖f1 ♖fc8 15 ♖e3 ♗d8 16 ♜d2 ♜e8, Gheorghiu-Jansa. Bucharest 1968, nor 12 ♗c2 ♖d7 13 ♖e3 a5 promises White any advantage; with the text move he intends to exchange the ♜c5, but the loss of time involved allows Black successfully to develop his forces) 12...♖d7 13 ♜d3 ♜xd3 14 ♗xd3 ♖fc8 15 ♗e2 (after defending the b2 pawn White intends to carry out his

idea of ♖e3; less accurate is 15 ♖b1 ♜h5 16 ♖e3 ♗b4, when all the same he has to play 17 ♗e2 – it transpires that 15 ♖b1 is a loss of time, Botvinnik-Tal, Moscow 1960) 15...♜e8 (15...a5!? is also good) 16 ♖e3 ♗b4!?

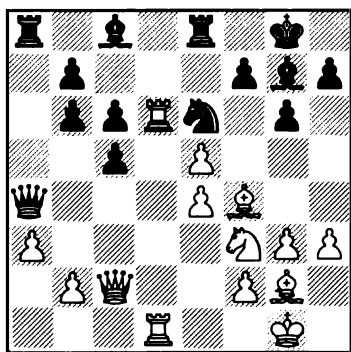


Black's chances are not worse – he controls the c-file and ...f7-f5 is on the agenda.

If **10 ♖b1** the simplest is 10...♗b4 (10...exd4 11 ♖xd4 ♜xe4 leads to complicated play with slightly the better chances for White) 11 dxe5 dxe5 (or 11...♜xe5!?) 12 ♗e2 ♜e8 13 a3 ♗e7 14 ♖g5 f6 15 ♖e3 ♜c7 16 b4 f5 with counterplay (analysis by Boleslavsky and Lepeshkin).

10 b3 is unpromising in view of 10...exd4 11 ♜a4 ♗a5 (or 11...♗c7) 12 ♜xd4 ♖e8 13 ♖e1 ♜c5 (13...♜b6 is also good enough to maintain equality) 14 ♜xc5 dxc5 15 ♖d2 ♗c7 16 ♜c2 ♜d7 with a comfortable game for Black (G.Kuzmin-Geller, Moscow 1981).

The attempt to refute the queen move to b6 by tactical means achieves little: 10 c5 dxc5 11 dx e5 ♖e8 12 ♖a4 ♜a6 (12... ♜b5!? is a good alternative, with the idea of attacking the white e5 pawn after ...c5-c4, as in Yusupov-Dolmatov, Wijk aan Zee 1991) 13 ♙f4 (also harmless is 13 ♙g5 5 14 ♖c3 ♖c7 15 ♙e7 ♜e8 16 ♙d6 ♖e6, Hübner-Kasparov, Dortmund 1992) 13... ♖c7 (the knight manoeuvre to e6 is typical of the given structure) 14 ♜c2 ♖e6 15 ♜fd1 ♜e8! (a precise move, combining prophylaxis with pressure on e5) 16 ♜d6?! (better 16 ♖c3, maintaining approximate equality; the rook move allows Black to seize the initiative) 16... ♜a5 17 ♜ad1 (17 ♖c3 c4?) 17... ♖b6! 18 ♖xb6 (if 18 ♖c3 ♖c4 followed by ...b7-b5; the ♜d6 is out of play) 18...axb6 19 a3 ♜a4.



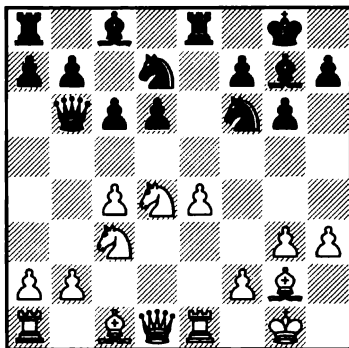
Black stands clearly better – the e5 pawn is weak and White does not have any obvious compensation (Yusupov-Kasparov, Linares 1990).

10 ... exd4

After surrendering the centre, Black begins piece play against it.

If 10... ♜e8 White can gain a slight advantage by 11 d5, or else transpose into the main line by 11 ♜e2, so that Black has nothing better than 10...exd4.

11 ♖xd4 ♜e8



The critical position of the variation, where White has to parry the tactical threat of ...♖g4. His main continuations are:

12 ♖a4 (the most radical way of preventing the knight move) 12... ♜c7 13 ♙f4 ♖e5 14 ♜c2 b6 15 ♙e3 ♙b7 16 ♜ad1 a6, and White must now concern himself with parrying the threats of ...c6-c5 and ...b6-b5 (Ivkov-Geller, Skopje 1969).

12 ♜e2 ♖g4 (not 12... ♖e5 13 b3 ♙xh3 on account of 14 ♖a4; also unfavourable is 12... ♖xe4 13 ♖xe4 ♜xd4 – 13... ♙xd4 14 ♙f4± – 14 ♙e3! ♜xd1+ 15 ♜xd1, when White regains his pawn with the better

position) 13 ♖d2 (or 13 ♘c2 ♘ge5 14 ♘e3 ♘c5 15 ♖d2 ♘e6!?) with a double-edged game) 13...♘ge5 14 b3 ♘c5, and now:

(a) 15 ♖e2 ♘e6 16 ♘xe6 ♘xe6 17 ♘e3 ♖a5 18 ♖c1 ♘xc4⚡ and White lost quickly (Lymar-Slavina, Yalta 1996);

(b) 15 ♖c2 a5! with a complicated position where both sides have chances (Smejkal, Stohl);

(c) 15 ♘c2 a5 (also interesting is 15...♘h3!?) 16 ♘h3 ♘xe4 with fine counterplay) 16 ♘b2 a4 17 ♖b1 axb3 18 axb3 h5 19 ♖h2 ♘ed7 20 ♖c2 ♘a6 21 ♖a1 ♘dc5 22 ♘c3 ♘b4 23 ♖b1 ♖xa1 24 ♘xa1 ♘ba6, and in Lengyel-Geller (Budapest 1969) a draw was agreed, as White's forces are tied to the defence of the b3 pawn;

(d) 15 ♘de2 ♘h3! (Black carries out one of the typical ideas of this variation) 16 ♘h3 ♘f3+ 17 ♖g2 ♘xd2 18 ♘xd2 ♘xe4 19 ♘xe4 ♖xe4 20 ♖c1 ♖ae8 21 ♘e3 ♖xe3! 22 fxe3 ♖xe3. The destruction of the white king's pawn screen and the three pawns for the knight allow Black to face the future with optimism (Kazakov-Nietzsche, corr. 1988).

12 ♘c2 a5 (or 12...♘e5 13 b3 ♘e6 with counterplay) 13 ♖b1 ♘c5 14 ♘e3 ♖c7 15 ♘f4 ♘f8 16 b3 h6 17 ♘d4 ♘g7 18 ♖c2 ♘d7 19 ♖ed1 ♖ad8. Black has successfully regrouped and can count on approximate equality (Khalifman-Cvitan, Vienna 1996).

Game 11 (p.133)
Timman-Kasparov
Tilburg 1991

1	d4	♘f6
2	c4	g6
3	♘f3	♘g7
4	g3	0-0
5	♘g2	d6
6	0-0	♘bd7
7	♘c3	e5
8	♖c2	

The main continuation 8 e4 is examined in the analysis.

8	...	c6
9	♖d1	♖e7
10	b3	

The alternative is 10 e4. After 10...♖e8 11 ♘e3 exd4 12 ♘xd4 ♘g4 13 ♘f4 ♘ge5 14 b3 ♘c5 15 h3 ♘e6 16 ♘xe6 ♘xe6 17 ♘e3 f5 this led to a double-edged game with chances for both sides in Malanyuk-V.Dimitrov (Nis 1996).

10	...	exd4
11	♘xd4	♖e8

Black intensifies the pressure on the e-file.

12	♘b2	♘c5
13	e3	a5
14	a3	h5

Black is ready to parry the opponent's pressure on the queenside, and now plans action on the kingside.

15	b4	♘ce4
----	----	------

This active knight move into the centre is possible thanks to the timely ...♖e8.

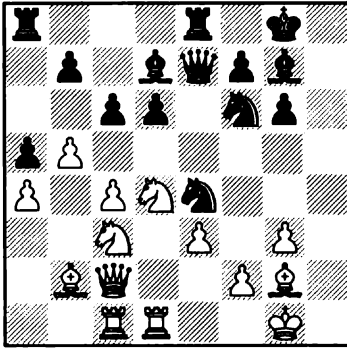
Black's entire play forms a solid,

logical chain, where each move is an important link.

16 b5 ♖d7
17 ♖ac1 h4
18 a4

White is carried away with his offensive on the queenside and overlooks that Black is ready to burst open the situation on the kingside. 18 ♜xe4 was a tougher defence.

18 ... hxg3
19 hxg3



19 ... ♜xf2!

An excellent blow, which demanded of Black an accurate appraisal of the position.

20 ♖xf2

20 ♜xf2 would have been met by the same move as in the game.

20 ... ♜g4
21 ♖f3 ♜xe3
22 ♖e1

Timman pins his hopes on a

counterattack. After 22 ♖d2 (or 22 ♖d3) 22... ♜xc4 White's problems are obvious.

22 ... ♖xd4
23 ♜d5!?

This is the idea of White's counterplay. After 23...cxd5 24 ♖xd4 Black finds himself in a difficult position, but Kasparov has foreseen everything.

23 ... ♜g4+!
24 ♖xd4 ♖xe1+
25 ♖xe1 ♖xe1+
26 ♖f1 cxd5
27 ♖xd5 ♖ae8

The tactical skirmish has died down and Black remains with a clear advantage – here the two rooks are more dangerous than the queen.

28 ♖f2 ♖e6!

Exchanging the b7 pawn for the c4 pawn.

29 ♖xb7 ♖c1
30 ♖c6 ♖c8

Black's pieces coordinate splendidly, preventing White from attacking his forces.

31 ♖e4 ♖8xc4
32 ♖a8+ ♜h7
33 b6 ♖b4
34 ♖xa5

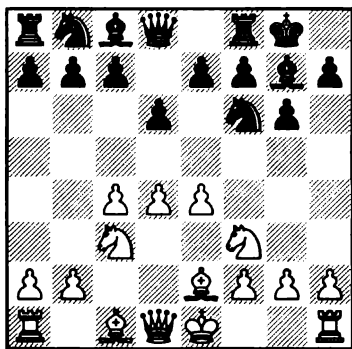
Desperation, but there was no longer anything to be done. 34 b7 ♖bb1 would have led to mate.

34 ... ♖bb1
35 ♜g2 ♖c2

White resigns

11 King's Indian Defence: Classical Variation

- | | | |
|---|-----|-----|
| 1 | d4 | ♘f6 |
| 2 | c4 | g6 |
| 3 | ♞c3 | ♙g7 |
| 4 | e4 | d6 |
| 5 | ♞f3 | 0-0 |
| 6 | ♙e2 | |



White plays the opening in full accordance with classical principles, creating a broad pawn centre and then without delay developing his kingside pieces, preparing to castle. His plans mainly involve activity in the centre and on the queenside. Black, in turn, aims to hinder his opponent's play on the queenside and to gain counterplay on the kingside.

Other attempts by White to gain an advantage are:

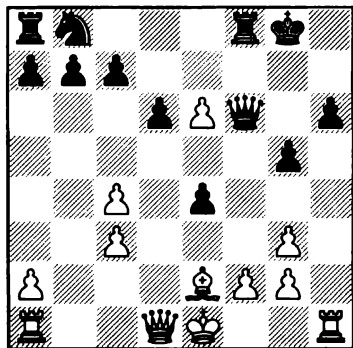
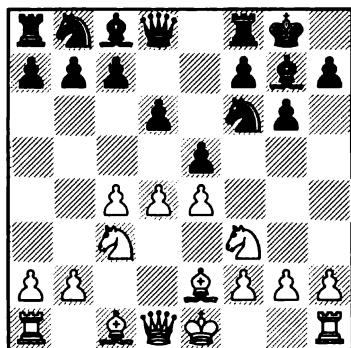
6 ♙e3 (Larsen's move; White does not fear 6...♞g4, as after 7

♙g5 it is not easy for Black to find the optimum set-up) 6...e5! (after this reply White has practically no choice and must exchange in the centre, since 7 d5 ♞g4 allows Black to begin active play on the kingside) 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 ♖xd8 ♜xd8 9 ♞d5 (9 ♞xe5 is met by the typical 9...♞xe4!) 9...♞d7! 10 ♞xf6+ (after 10 ♞xe5? ♞xd5 11 ♞xd7 ♞xe3 White loses; Tal-Gligoric, Belgrade 1968, went 10 0-0-0 ♞c6 11 ♙d3 ♞g4 12 ♙c5 ♞d4 with a draw, but in Tal's opinion Black already has the more pleasant position) 10...♙xf6 11 c5 ♞c6 12 ♙b5 ♞d8 13 ♙xc6 bxc6 14 ♞d2 (or 14 ♞d1 ♙a6 15 ♞xd8+ ♞xd8 16 ♞d2 ♙e7 and Black's chances are not worse, Barbero-Khalifman, Plovdiv 1986) 14...♞b8 15 0-0-0 ♙e6 16 b3 ♙e7 17 ♞b1 f5 (Rivas-Lukin, Leningrad 1984). It is hard for White to count on anything – Black's two bishops and harmonious piece placing give him a good game.

6 h3 is examined in Chapter 12 – cf. 5 h3 (the Makogonov Variation).

6 ♙g5 (directed against ...e7-e5) 6...h6 (an alternative is 6...♙g4!? 7 ♙e2 ♞fd7 8 d5 ♞b6! 9 ♞d2 ♙xc2 10 ♖xe2 ♞8d7 11 0-0 c6 12 f4 ♞c8 13 ♞f3 ♖e8 14 ♞e1 e6, and Black breaks up his opponent's centre,

Uhlmann-Stein, Mar del Plata 1966)
 7 ♙h4 (7 ♙f4 allows Black to gain a tempo after 7... ♜c6 , and if 8 d5 e5 9 ♙e3 ♜d4 !, temporarily sacrificing a pawn with an excellent game, Khasin-Tal, Hastings 1963/4) 7...g5 8 ♙g3 ♜h5 9 ♙e2 e6 (preparing ...f7-f5) 10 d5 f5 11 ♜d4 ♜xg3 12 hxg3 fxe4 13 ♜xe6 ♙xe6 14 dxex6 ♙xc3 + (14... ♚f6 = is also good) 15 bxc3 ♚f6 .



We are following the game Uhlmann-Fischer (Havana 1966). The position is double-edged with roughly equal chances. After 16 e7 ♚e8 (weak is 16... ♚xf2 + 17 ♜d2 ♚e8 18 ♜xh6 when the black king is in danger) 17 ♜c1 ♜a6 18 ♚d4 ♚g7 the evaluation has not changed – White has the inferior pawn structure, but on the other hand his king is better defended, and both sides have chances.

6 ... e5

Black's main reply. Relying on tactical possibilities, he immediately strikes a blow in the centre.

Now White faces a choice: 7 d5 (11.1), 7 ♙e3 (11.2) and finally the most popular 7 0-0 (11.3).

Little is promised by 7 ♙g5 in view of 7...h6 8 ♙h4 (if 8 ♙xf6 ♚xf6 9 ♜d5 ♚d8 10 dxex5 dxex5 11 0-0 P.Orlov-Sahovic, Pancevo 1985, when according to Karpov 11...c6 12 ♜e3 ♚e7 favours Black – his bishops may become very active) 8... ♚e8 ! (a typical manoeuvre – Black breaks the pin and plans to play his knight from f6 to f4) 9 d5 ♜h5 10 0-0 ♜f4 11 ♜d2 a5 12 f3 ♜a6 13 ♜b1 ♙d7 14 b3 f5 (Stempin-Kir.Georgiev, Prague 1985). Black has harmoniously deployed his forces, hindering his opponent's play on the queenside, and is ready for activity on the kingside.

The exchange 7 dxex5 dxex5 8 ♚xd8 ♜xd8 also does not promise any advantage:

(a) 9 ♜xe5 ? ♜xe4 ! (the tactical justification of 6...e5) 10 ♜xe4 ♙xe5 11 0-0 ♜c6 with an excellent

game for Black (Sanchez-Geller, Stockholm 1952);

(b) 9 ♞d5 $\text{♞d7!?$ (also good is 9... ♞xd5 10 cxd5 c6 11 ♙c4 cxd5 12 ♙xd5 ♞c6=) 10 ♞xe5 ♞xd5 11 ♞xd7 ♞b4 12 ♞xb8 ♞c2+ 13 ♚d1 ♞xa1 14 ♙f4 ♙xb2! 15 ♙xc7 a5 with the idea of ... a5-a4 and ... ♞b3 with good tactical chances for Black;

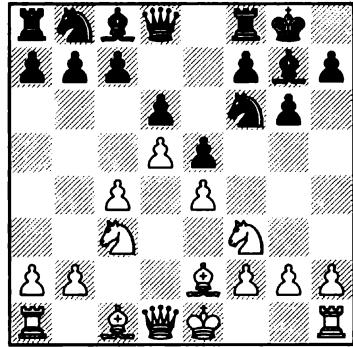
(c) 9 ♙g5 ♞e8 (also good is 9... c6 or Shirov's original idea of 9... $\text{♞f8!?$) 10 ♞d5 (10 0-0-0 is adequately met by 10... ♞a6 11 ♞e1 c6 12 ♞c2 ♞c5 13 f3 a5 14 b3 ♞fd7 15 ♙e3 ♙f8 with simple equality, Hebert-Gufeld, New York 1989) 10... ♞xd5 11 cxd5 c6 12 ♙c4 cxd5 13 ♙xd5 ♞d7 14 ♞d2 (14 ♞c1 h6 15 ♙e3 ♞f6 does not give White any advantage, Teschner-Fischer, Stockholm 1962) 14... ♞c5 15 0-0-0 ♞e6 16 ♙e3 ♞f4 17 ♙xf4 exf4 18 f3 ♙e6 with an equal endgame (P.Cramling-Gallagher, Biel 1991).

11.1 (1 d4 ♞f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♞c3 ♙g7 4 e4 d6 5 ♞f3 0-0 6 ♙e2 e5)

7 d5

After seizing space in the centre, White plans a pawn offensive on the queenside. However, Black can regard such an early stabilisation of the centre as a definite achievement. He gains the opportunity to temporarily occupy c5, halting the opponent's offensive, and to prepare

the traditional counterplay on the kingside with ... f7-f5 .



7 ... a5

This continuation, developed by Stein and Geller, is considered the best reply to White's set-up. Black hinders the development of White's initiative on the queenside and begins a battle for the c5 square.

8 ♙g5

The initial move of the variation developed by the ninth World Champion, Tigran Petrosian. By pinning the ♞f6 , White hinders Black's play on the kingside.

White's other possibilities:

8 ♙e3 ♞g4 9 ♙g5 (9 ♙d2 can be met by 9... ♞a6 10 0-0 ♙d7 11 ♞e1 h5 12 f3 ♞h6 13 ♞d3 b6 14 ♞c1 ♞h7 15 ♙g5 ♞e8 16 ♙e3 f5 with a double-edged game, Sofrevski-Drazic, Kladovo 1991) 9... f6 10 ♙h4 (if 10 ♙d2 the simplest is 10... ♞a6 , as after 9 ♙d2) 10... ♞a6 (10... $\text{♞e8!?$ 11 ♞d2 f5 comes into consideration, with the idea of quickly creating play on the

kingside) 11 ♖d2 (or 11 h3 ♖h6 12 ♖d2 ♙d7 13 f3 ♗e8 14 b3 f5 15 ♚b1 fxe4 16 ♖dx4 ♖f5 and the weakness of the dark squares in White's position gives the opponent equal chances, Petrosian-Quinteros, Vinkovci 1970) 11...h5 12 a3 ♙d7 13 h3 ♖h6 14 ♚b1 ♖c5 15 b4 axb4 16 axb4 ♖a4 17 ♗c2 ♖xc3 18 ♗xc3 g5 19 ♙g3 h4 20 ♙h2 f5 and White already encounters problems (Bareev-Kasparov, Tilburg 1991).

8 h4 ♖a6 9 ♖d2 ♖c5 10 h5 (Kouatly-Kasparov, Paris 1991, took an interesting course: 10 g4!? a4 11 h5 gxh5 12 g5 ♖g4 13 ♖f1 f5 14 f3 ♖f2! 15 ♖xf2 fxe4, and thanks to the open position of the white king and the great activity of his pieces, Black has excellent compensation for the material sacrificed) 10... ♖xh5!? (10...♗d7 is satisfactory; attacking the centre with 10...c6!? also looks thematic – 11 g4 ♗b6 12 f3 a4! 13 ♖f1 cxd5 14 cxd5 ♙d7 15 ♖e3, Aleksandrov-Iskustnykh, St Petersburg 1996, and after 15... ♚fb8!? Δ ...b7-b5 White has problems in finding a plan) 11 ♙xh5 ♖d3+ 12 ♖f1 gxh5 13 ♗xh5 h6 14 ♗e2 ♖xc1 15 ♚xc1 f5 (Aleksandrov-Sakaev, Singapore 1991). Black has completely solved his problems and has begun active play.

8 ♖d2 ♖a6 9 ♚b1 (9 h4 transposes into the previous variation) 9...♖c5 10 b3 c6 11 0-0 ♙d7 12 ♚e1 ♚c8 13 a3 ♙h6 14 ♙f1 (Lev-Shirov, London 1991), when Black could have gained adequate play by

14...♙f4!? 15 b4 axb4 16 axb4 ♖a6 17 ♙a3 ♖g4 18 ♖f3 ♗b6!?

8 0-0 usually transposes.

8 ... h6
9 ♙h4 ♖a6
10 ♖d2

The most topical continuation. We will also examine 10 0-0 ♗e8 11 ♖e1, where White aims to play his knight to d3 to support his queenside pawn offensive. The drawback is that he loses control of e4, which Black can exploit by 11... ♖c5!? 12 ♙xf6 (12 f3 ♖h5 gives Black a comfortable game with attacking chances; therefore White exchanges the ♖f6, which could have gone to f4) 12...♙xf6 13 ♙g4 ♙xg4 14 ♗xg4 ♙d8! 15 ♗e2 c6 16 ♚d1 ♙c7 with complete equality (I.Ivanov-Benjamin, USA 1990). Black's bishop has cleared the way for the f-pawn and at c7 it securely defends his only weakness, freeing his hands for play on the flanks.

10 ... ♗e8

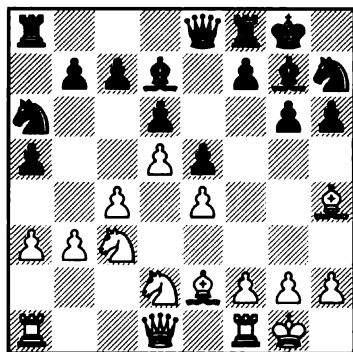
Breaking the pin. 10...h5!? is interesting here, when after the natural 11 0-0 Black gains good counter-play by 11...♙h6! 12 f3 (the bishop was in danger) 12...♙e3+ 13 ♖h1 g5. In Lerner-Uhlmann (Berlin 1989) White did not find anything better and played 11 ♙g5, but 11... ♗e8 12 a3 ♙d7 13 b3 ♖h7 14 ♙e3 h4 15 ♗c2 f5 16 f3 ♙f6 gave Black good counter-chances. However, this plan is possible only after 10 ♖d2, and by 10 0-0 ♗e8 11 ♖d2 White can easily transpose into the

main line. We have drawn the reader's attention to this fact, so that he can exploit White's micro-inaccuracy in the event of 10 Qd2 h5!

11 0-0

If White saves a tempo by not castling and aims for immediate queenside activity, Black gains counterplay by seizing space on the kingside: 11 a3 Qd7 12 b3 Qh7 13 f3 (the dark-square bishop at h4 often feels uncomfortable) 13...h5 14 Bb1 Qh6 15 Qf2 We7 16 h4 (White prevents the standard plan of ...h5-h4 and ... Wg5 ; he can also consider an immediate queenside offensive – 16 b4 axb4 17 axb4 h4! 18 Wc2 Wg5 19 Bg1 c6 20 c5 Qf6 21 dxc6 bxc6 with a double-edged position, Rossiter-Gallagher, England 1987) 16... Qc5 17 Wc2 f5 18 b4 axb4 19 axb4 Qa4 , again with lively play over the entire front (Speelman-J.Polgar, Holland 1991).

11 ... Qh7
 12 a3 Qd7
 13 b3



The critical position of the variation. Black has a choice between the sharp 13...f5!? and the quieter 13...h5.

After 13...f5 14 exf5 (or 14 f3 Qf6 15 exf5 gxf5 16 Wc2 c6 17 Qad1 Qh5 18 g3 Qc7 with approximate equality, Damljanovic-Kir.Georgiev, Kacak 1996) Black again has a good choice:

(a) 14... Qxf5 15 $\text{g4!?$ (15 $\text{Qe1!?$ g5 16 Qg3 Qf6 17 Qf1 Qc5 18 Qe3 Qg6 gives Black the initiative, Timman-Westerinen, Geneva 1977) 15...e4 16 Qc1 e3 17 fxe3 (17 gxf5 exd2 18 Wxd2 Qc5 19 Wd1 Qxf5 is insufficient for giving White an advantage, Av.Bykhovsky-Belov, Pula 1988) 17... Wxe3+ 18 Qf2 Wg5 with a double-edged game (Khenkin-Shirov, USSR 1988);

(b) 14... $\text{gxf5!?$ (a striking idea introduced by Kasparov, involving an exchange sacrifice) 15 Qh5 Wc8 16 Qe7 Qe8! (in this way Black gains an important tempo in the attack – the Qe7 is threatened) 17 Qxe8 Wxe8 18 Qh4 e4 19 Wc2 (later it was found that 19 Qc1 Qc5 20 Qc2! is more accurate, Naumkin-A.Kuzmin, Moscow 1989, but here too after 20... Qf6 21 Qe2 Qh5 Black has compensation for the exchange – the powerful Qg7 , the d3 square and the activity of his minor pieces) 19... Wgh5 20 Qg3 Qf8 (Yusupov-Kasparov, Barcelona 1989). Black's forces are very active and accuracy is required of White in defence.

We will also consider 13...h5 (threatening ...g6-g5) 14 f3 (14 h3, to avoid weakening e3, led in Bukic-Geller, Budva 1967, to some advantage for Black after 14...h6 15 ♖b1 ♕c5 16 b4 axb4 17 axb4 ♖a4 18 ♗xa4 ♗xa4 19 ♛c2 b6 – White's e4 is insufficiently well defended) 14...h6, and now:

(a) 15 ♖b1 ♖e3+ 16 ♖f2 ♖xf2+ 17 ♗xf2 ♛e7 18 b4 axb4 19 axb4 c5 and after the exchange of dark-square bishops Black maintains the balance (Zlotnik-A.Kuzmin, Budapest 1989);

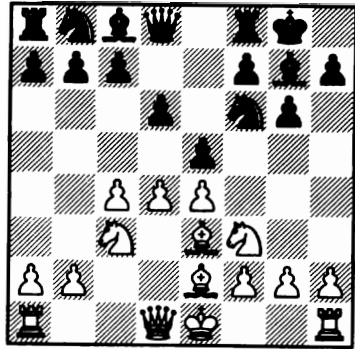
(b) 15 ♖f2 ♛e7! 16 ♛c2 h4! 17 ♗ab1 ♖f4 18 ♗fd1 ♛g5 19 ♖f1 ♗f6 and by typical means Black achieves the better game (Tukmakov-Magerramov, Moscow 1983);

(c) 15 ♗h1, when Black has:

(c1) 15...♗c5 16 ♗b1 f5 17 ♛c2 (not 17 b4?! axb4 18 axb4 ♖a4!, seizing the initiative) 17...♗f6 18 b4 axb4 19 axb4 ♖a4 20 ♗b5! and White retains the slight opening advantage resulting from the right of the first move, but not more (Naumkin-Trapl, Namestovo 1987);

(c2) 15...♛b8!? (an interesting idea of Judith Polgar) 16 ♛c2 ♖e3 17 ♗ael ♛a7 18 ♗d1 ♖c5 19 ♛c1 ♗ae8 20 ♖d3 c6 with counterplay (Kramnik-Nunn, Germany 1994).

11.2 (1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♗c3 ♖g7 4 e4 d6 5 ♗f3 0-0 6 ♖e2 e5)



The initial move of a variation proposed by Gligoric. Deferring castling for the moment, White reserves for himself the option of an attack on the kingside. However, the position of the bishop at e3 is not very secure, allowing Black to exploit this factor and gain time by ...♗g4.

7 ... c6

A useful move, by which Black takes control of d5 and in some cases prepares the freeing advance ...d6-d5.

7...exd4 is a good alternative – cf. *Illustrative Game No.12* (Gelfand-Topalov, Linares 1997).

8 d5

The most popular continuation. White blocks the centre, transferring the weight of the struggle to the flanks.

After 8 dxe5 dxe5 9 ♛xd8 ♗xd8 10 ♗xe5 ♗xe4 11 ♗xe4 ♖xe5 12 ♖g5 ♗d4 13 ♗d2 ♖g7 the ending is not dangerous for Black (Chekhov-Uhlmann, Polanica Zdroj 1981).

If 8 0-0 Black carries out the idea mentioned above of relieving the central tension: 8...exd4 9 Qxd4 (or 9 Qxd4 Ke8 10 Wc2, Tal-Dvoretsky, Leningrad 1974, and now 10...We7!? 11 Kfe1 c5 would have given Black counterplay – Tal) 9...Ke8 10 f3 (if 10 Wc2 Black provokes f2-f3 by 10...We7) 10...d5 11 cxd5 cxd5 12 Wb3 dxe4 13 Qc4 Kf8 14 Kad1 We7 15 fxe4 Qc6 (Nei-Stein, USSR 1967). White's activity has evaporated and he went in for further simplification – 16 Qd5 Qxd5 17 Qxc6 bxc6 18 exd5 cxd5 19 Qxd5 Qg4 20 Kc1 Kac8 21 Qxc8 Qxc8 with a draw.

8 Wd2 (along with 8 d5, a very popular idea) 8...We7 9 d5 cxd5 10 cxd5 Qg4 11 Qg5 f6 12 Qh4 Qh6 (Shirov-Topalov, Vienna 1996, went 12...Qa6 13 0-0 Qh6 14 Qe1 Qf7 15 Qxa6 bxa6 16 Qc2 Kb8 17 Qe3 a5 18 Kfc1 h5 with great complications; in the present game Black carries out a similar plan) 13 0-0 Qf7 14 Qe1 h5 (we also met similar ideas in the Petrosian Variation) 15 f3 Qh6 16 Wd1 Qa6 (the knight aims for c5, while in the event of its exchange on a6 Black gains the b-file and the two bishops, which largely compensate for his queenside pawn weaknesses) 17 Qh1 Qd7?! (17...Qg7!?) 18 Qxa6 bxa6 19 We2 Kabb8 20 Kb1 Qc8 21 Qc2 a5 22 Wc4 Kb6 23 Wa4 Qa6 24 Kfd1 Kfb8 25 Wxa5? (White returns the compliment; after 25 Wa3 he has the advantage) 25...Qc8! and

despite the (temporary) loss of a pawn, Black completely seized the initiative on the queenside (Lalic-Topalov, Yerevan 1996).

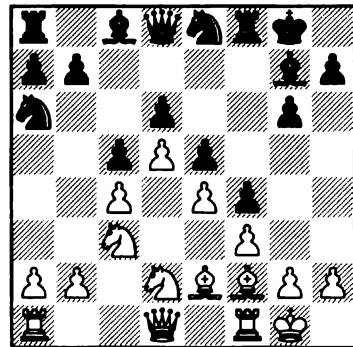
8 ... Qa6

Black aims to hinder as far as possible White's queenside play.

9 Qd2 Qe8

Preparing ...f7-f5.

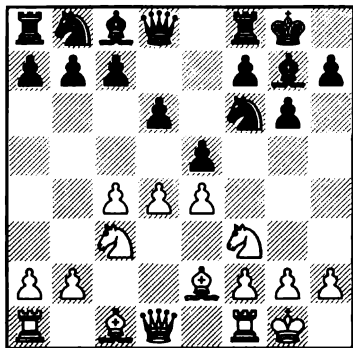
10	0-0	f5
11	f3	f4
12	Qf2	c5



We are following San Segundo-Topalov (Madrid 1996) where Black, combining prophylaxis on the queenside with an attack on the kingside, gained good play: 13 a3 b6 14 b4 h5 15 bxc5 Qxc5 16 a4 a5 17 Ka3 Qf6 18 Qb3 Kf7 19 Qh1 Qc7 20 Qxc5 bxc5 21 Kgl Qa6, when he already held the initiative.

11.3 (1 d4 Qf6 2 c4 g6 3 Qc3 Qg7 4 e4 d6 5 Qf3 0-0 6 Qc2 e5)
--

7 0-0



7 ... exd4

After relieving the central tension, Black quickly completes his development and aims for piece play around White's centre. We consider this strategically clear plan, the main ideologist of which is the Moscow GM Igor Glek, to be a very promising way of opposing White's classical set-up, and we therefore prefer it to the more usual 7...♟c6 or 7...♟bd7. We also draw the readers' attention to the fact that the statistics of this variation favour Black.

8 ♟xd4 ♟e8

9 f3

Otherwise the e4 pawn cannot be defended: 9 ♟c2?! ♟xe4 10 ♟xe4 ♟xd4 11 ♟g5 f6 12 ♟ad1 ffg5 13 ♟xd4 ♟f5 14 c5 ♟c6 15 ♟c4+ ♟g7 16 ♟c3 ♟xd4 17 ♟xd4+ ♟h6, which led to a win for Black in Rossetto-Larsen (Amsterdam 1964).

9 ... ♟c6

10 ♟e3

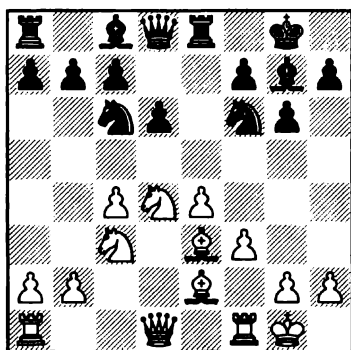
White's other possibilities:

10 ♟xc6 (this exchange promises

little – the c6 pawn successfully controls d5, and the b-file is quite an important factor) 10...♟xc6 11 ♟g5 h6 12 ♟h4 g5!? 13 ♟f2 ♟d7 (13...♟e6 is also good) 14 ♟c1 (or 14 ♟c2 a5 15 ♟ad1 ♟e7 16 ♟fel ♟c5=) 14...a5 15 b3 ♟e7 16 ♟d3 ♟c5 17 ♟b1 ♟e6 18 ♟d2 ♟b7 19 ♟h1 c5, and by harmoniously deploying his pieces, Black achieved a good game (Chuchelov-Glek, Leuven 1995).

10 ♟c2 ♟h5 (making way for the f-pawn, and in some cases the queen too can move out to the kingside) 11 ♟d5 (11 g4 is adequately met by 11...♟e5!? 12 ♟d5 ♟xh2+ with equality – Glek) 11...f5 12 g4!? (12 exf5 ♟xf5 favours Black) 12...fxg4! 13 fxg4 ♟f6 14 ♟g5 ♟f8 15 c5 (if 15 ♟e1 there follows 15...h6! 16 ♟xf6+ ♟xf6 17 ♟xh6 ♟f7 18 ♟d2 ♟e6 19 g5 ♟xb2 20 ♟xf7 ♟xf7 21 ♟b1 ♟e5, Van der Sterren-Muehlebach, Zurich 1995) 15...♟e6 16 cxd6 cxd6 17 ♟ce3 h6! (the same typical idea – a pawn sacrifice with the aim of diverting the white bishop at h6 and activating the black pieces) 18 ♟xf6+ ♟xf6 19 ♟xh6 ♟f7 20 ♟c4 ♟xc4 21 ♟xc4 ♟d4+ 22 ♟h1? (this natural move is the decisive mistake; after 22 ♟e3 ♟xf1+ 23 ♟xf1 ♟g5! 24 ♟xd4 ♟xd4 25 ♟xd6 ♟f8 26 ♟c4+ ♟h7 27 ♟c7+ ♟g8 the chances are equal – Glek) 22...♟xf1+ 23 ♟xf1 d5! 24 ♟d2 ♟h4 25 exd5 ♟e5, and it is time for White to resign – with minimal forces Black controls the

entire board (Sakaev-Glek, Elista 1995).



10 ... ♖h5

This manoeuvre, developed by Glek, is the idea of the variation. Making way, once again, for the f-pawn, the knight aims (in some cases) to advance to f4. It should be mentioned that, as we have already seen, in several lines Black must be prepared to give up a piece for the sake of perpetual check.

11 f4

Other attempts by White:

11 ♖c2, when Black should consider 11...f5!? 12 ♗d2 ♖e6 13 ♜ad1 (Notkin-Nevostruev, Elista 1996), and now 13...♗f6!? or 13...fxe4 14 fxe4 ♗e5!? with sufficient counterplay.

11 ♖d5 ♗xd4 (here 11...f5 is premature in view of 12 ♗b5! fxe4 13 f4±, Cebalo-Lane, Cannes 1995) 12 ♖xd4 c6 13 ♗c3 ♖h6! (the bishop must be retained) 14 g3 ♗g7 (or 14...♖h3 15 ♜e1 ♗g5 16 ♖f2 ♜ad8∞) 15 f4 f5 16 ♖f3 g5!? with

counterplay for Black (Sosonko-Ftacnik, Polanica Zdroj 1995).

11 ♗xc6 bxc6, and now:

(a) 12 f4 ♖xc3 13 bxc3 ♜xe4 14 ♖d4 ♗xf4 15 ♖d3 ♗e8 (Schlusnik-Joecks, Budapest 1996) and Black, with the initiative and two pawns for the exchange, does not stand worse, e.g. 16 ♖xe4 ♗xe4 17 ♗f3 ♗e2+ 18 ♗f2 (18 ♗h1 ♗xf3 19 ♜xf3 c5±) 18...♗h4+;

(b) 12 ♗d2 c5 (12...♖e6, 12...f5 or 12...♗h4!? is also possible) 13 ♜ae1 ♜b8 14 b3 f5 15 ♖d3 f4 16 ♖f2 ♖e5 17 ♜d1 g5 and Black begins his play on the kingside (Pokorny-Manik, Lazne Bohdanec 1996).

11 ♗d2, when Black has a choice:

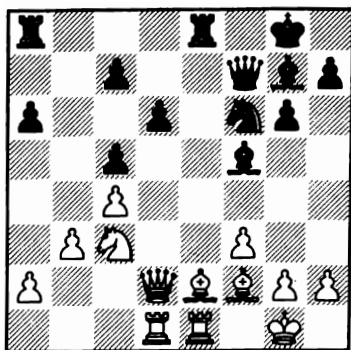
(a) 11...♗f4 12 ♜fd1 ♗xe2+ 13 ♗xc6 ♗e5 14 b3 c6 (14...a6!?) 15 ♜ac1 ♗c7 with a slightly inferior, but quite playable position (Ivanchuk-Shirov, Yerevan 1996);

(b) 11...f5!? (a sharp reply) 12 ♗xc6 (in Van Wely-Glek, Wijk aan Zee 1997, White chose 12 ♜fd1 fxe4 13 ♗xe4 ♗f6 14 ♗c3 ♗e7 15 ♖f2 ♗xd4 16 ♖xd4 ♖e6, and after completing his development Black obtained satisfactory play; this same plan is possible after 12 ♜ad1) 12...bxc6 (the same position can arise after 11 ♗xc6) 13 exf5 (13 ♖g5 ♗d7!?) 13...♖xf5 (or 13...gxf5 14 ♜fe1 ♗h4 15 ♖f2 ♗f4 16 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 with a sharp, but roughly equal ending – in return for his pawn weaknesses Black has active

pieces, Gyimesi-Miljanic, Mataruska Banja 1996), when Black's forces are very aggressively placed:

(b1) 14 g4?! (risky) 14...♞h4! 15 ♖f2 (15 gxf5? ♜xe3♠, with complete coordination and harmony – each piece on the right square) 15... ♞h3 16 gxh5 (the only way to save the position; if 16 gxf5 ♖e5♠/+) 16... ♖e5 17 ♖g3 ♖xg3=:

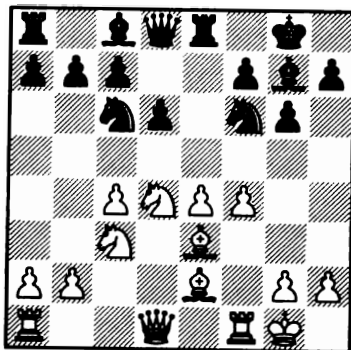
(b2) 14 ♖d4 ♘f6 15 ♜fe1 c5 16 ♖f2 ♞d7 (or 16...♞b8 17 ♜ad1 ♞b4∞, Khuzman-Svidler, Haifa 1996) 17 ♜ad1 ♞f7 18 b3 a6!



We are following Kramnik-Glek (Berlin 1996). With his last move Black has covered b5, for where the white knight was aiming, and by playing his bishop to c6 he achieved a reasonable game.

11 ... ♘f6

The e4 pawn has been deprived of pawn support, and by returning to f6 the knight attacks it. An important factor is that Black can subsequently use the g4 square as a transit point for exchanging operations.



12 ♖f3

12 ♘xc6 bxc6 13 ♖f3 does not achieve anything in view of 13...♘xe4!? (the rook on the e-file operates very productively) 14 ♘xe4 (or 14 ♖xe4 d5! 15 ♖xd5 cxd5 16 ♞xd5 ♖e6=) 14...♖f5 15 ♘xd6 cxd6 16 ♖d4 ♖e4 17 ♖xg7 ♘xg7 18 ♞d4+ ♞f6= (Shirov-Sherzer, Paris 1995).

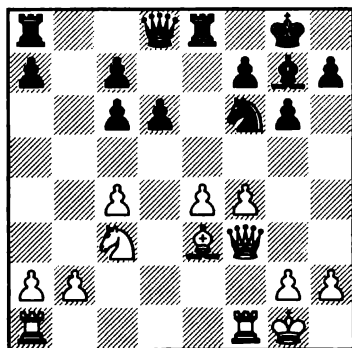
12 ... ♖g4

As already mentioned, g4 is an important focal point of Black's play. Such ideas, based on the fact that the ♘d4 is insufficiently well defended, often occur in similar strategic set-ups, for example the Maroczy Bind formation in the Sicilian Dragon.

The seemingly attractive 12... ♘g4 encounters a refutation: 13 ♖xg4 ♖xg4 14 ♘xc6! ♞d7 15 ♞d3 ♖xc3 16 ♘d4! ♖xb2 17 ♜ab1 c5 18 ♜xb2, and the opposite-colour bishops favour White (Lobron-Glek, Germany 1995).

13 ♘xc6 ♖xf3

14 ♖xf3 bxc6



The critical position of the variation, which can be assessed as acceptable for Black. He has some pressure on the half-open e-file, the 'Gufeld bishop' at g7 is alive and 'breathing', and the b-file also cannot be disregarded. Here are a few practical examples:

15 ♖d4 ♖c8 (15...c5!?) 16 ♖ad1 ♖g4 17 e5 dxe5 18 ♖xe5 ♖e6 19 b3 ♖g4= (Karpov-Glek, Biel 1996).

15 ♖ae1 ♖c8 (15...♖b8!? Δ 16 b3 ♖b4∞, Svidler) 16 ♖d4 ♖g4 17 ♖f2 ♖e6 18 f5 gxf5 19 exf5 ♖xc4 20 b3 ♖b4 21 a3 ♖xa3! (Greenfeld-Glek, Haifa 1996). White has sufficient compensation for the material he has given up, but not more.

15 ♖fe1 ♖d7 16 ♖d4 c5 17 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 18 e5!? dxe5 19 ♖d5 ♖d6 20 ♖ad1 e4!? 21 ♖xe4 ♖d4+, and the powerful bishop in the centre guarantees Black against danger (Alpert-Neuman, Ceske Budejovice 1996).

For 15 ♖d2 (or 15 ♖f2) – cf. *Illustrative Game No.13* (Van der Sterren-Glek, Germany 1995).

Game 12 (p.144)
Gelfand-Topalov
Linares 1997

1	d4	♖f6
2	♖f3	g6
3	c4	♖g7
4	♖c3	0-0
5	e4	d6
6	♖e2	e5

Both grandmasters are confirmed King's Indian players, so their meetings in this opening are always of interest, and theoretical innovations can be expected.

7 ♖e3 exd4

In recent times this plan, aiming for rapid counterplay in the centre, and developed in detail by Kasparov for his 1990 match with Karpov, has become fashionable.

The alternative 7...c6 (which is also in Topalov's repertoire) is examined in the analysis.

8	♖xd4	♖e8
9	f3	c6
10	♖f2	

The fashionable interpretation. Against 10 ♖d2 Kasparov devised an excellent idea: 10...d5 11 exd5 cxd5 12 0-0 ♖c6 13 c5, and here 13...♖xe3! 14 ♖xe3 ♖f8! (an exchange sacrifice, which gave new life to the entire variation) 15 ♖xc6 bxc6 16 ♖h1 ♖b8 17 ♖a4 ♖b4 18 b3 ♖e6! 19 ♖b2 ♖h5 20 ♖d3 ♖h4

21 ♖f2 ♜e7 22 g4! ♔d4! 23 ♜xd4
 ♜xh2+! 24 ♝xh2 ♜h4+ with a draw
 (Karpov-Kasparov, New York
 1990).

A more recent example is 15
 ♘cb5 ♜xc5 16 ♜ac1 ♜b6 17 ♖f2
 ♔d7 18 ♜fd1 ♜e8 19 ♔f1 ♔h6 20
 ♜c3 ♘b4! with a sharp game
 (Gelfand-Kasparov, Linares 1992).

10 ... d5
 11 exd5 cxd5
 12 0-0 ♘c6
 13 c5 ♘h5
 14 g3?!

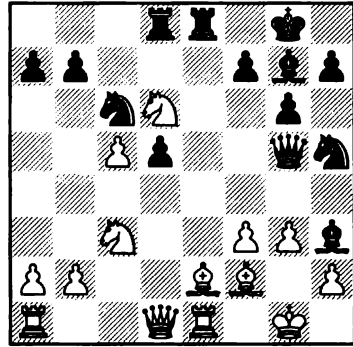
White had apparently prepared
 this move, but Topalov finds an
 energetic rejoinder.

More solid is the tested 14 ♜d2
 (keeping control of the g5 square)
 14...♔e5 15 g3 ♘g7 16 ♜fd1 a6
 (also possible is 16...♔e6 17 f4
 ♔xd4! 18 ♔xd4 ♘f5 19 ♔f2 d4 20
 ♘b5 ♜e7 with double-edged play,
 Gelfand-Van Wely, Wijk aan Zee
 1996) 17 ♔f1 ♔e6 18 ♘xe6 fxe6 19
 f4 ♔f6 20 ♜ab1 g5 21 ♘e2 ♜f8,
 when Black gains counterplay.
 Incidentally, this position was
 reached by the same players at the
 1997 Dos Hermanas Tournament
 (slightly later than the game we are
 examining).

14 ... ♔h3
 15 ♜e1 ♜g5!

The most energetic reply to
 White's plan, creating threats
 against the king and depriving the
 white queen of the d2 square.

16 ♘db5 ♜ad8
 17 ♘d6



17 ... ♔d4!

Threatening to capture on g3.

18 ♜c1

Trying to neutralise Black's main
 attacker. Bad is 18 ♘xe8 ♘xg3! 19
 ♘f6+ ♜xf6! 20 ♔xd4 (20 hxg3
 ♜g5! 21 g4 ♜f4+) 20...♘xe2+ 21
 ♘xe2 ♜xf3 and White has no
 defence. 18 ♔xd4 ♘xg3 19 ♝f2
 ♘xe2+ is even worse.

As was shown by GM Mikhail
 Gurevich, White's best chance was
 18 f4, diverting Black from his main
 aim – the g3 pawn: 18...♔xf2+ 19
 ♝xf2 ♘xf4! 20 ♘xe8 (20 ♜d2
 ♜e6!?) 20...♘g2! 21 ♔b5! (if 21
 ♔f3 ♘xe1 22 ♜xe1 ♘e5?, or 21
 ♔f1 ♘xe1 22 ♜xe1 ♘e5 with an
 attack) 21...♘xe1 22 ♜xe1 ♘e5
 (22...♜f5+!?) 23 ♜e2 ♔g4 with an
 unclear game. However, to calculate
 at the board all these complicated
 and risky variations was almost
 impossible.

18 ... ♔e3!

Highly dynamic play.

19 ♔xe3 ♜xe3

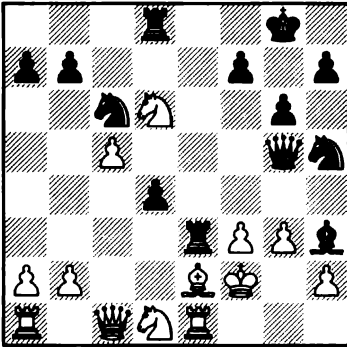
20 ♔f2

White has to move his king. 20 ♖xd5 is met by the familiar 20... ♗xg3! 21 ♔f2 ♗h1+ 22 ♖xh1 ♗h4+ 23 ♔g1 ♖xe2-+.

20 ... d4

21 ♗d1?

The decisive mistake. Essential was 21 ♗ce4 (dislodging the queen from the 'penalty spot') 21... ♗e7 22 ♖c4 ♖xe1 23 ♗xe1 ♖e6, when Black stands slightly better, but all the play is still to come.



21 ... ♖xe2+!

Topalov displays his true worth!

22 ♖xe2 ♗d5

For the exchange Black has a powerful initiative. The knight at d1 is passive and it prevents the ♖al from coming into play. He now threatens to play his knight to e5.

23 ♗e4

23 ♗c4 fails to 23... ♖xd6! If 23 b3 there follows 23... ♗e5 24 ♖xe5 ♗xe5 25 ♗xb7 ♖e8 26 ♗d2 d3 27 ♖c1 ♗d5 and it is doubtful whether White can overcome his difficulties.

23 ... ♗e5

Threatening to capture on f3.

24 ♗g5 ♖e8!

Black's pieces are very active. He now threatens ... ♗d3+.

25 ♖d2

No better is 25 ♗xh5 gxh5 26 ♗f6+ ♔f8 27 ♗xd5 ♗d3+ 28 ♔g1 ♖xe2-+, or 25 ♗h4 ♗e6 26 b3 ♗f5 27 f4 d3! 28 ♖e1 ♗g4+ 29 ♔f3 ♗xh2+ 30 ♔f2 ♖xe4-+ (M.Gurevich).

25 ... ♗c4?!

Black could have won immediately by 25... ♗g4+! 26 ♔g1 (26 fxg4 ♗xe4-+) 26... ♗xg5 27 ♗xg5 ♖e1 mate.

26 ♗dc3 h6!

A decoy sacrifice: 27 ♗xh6 dxc3 28 bxc3 ♗xe4! 29 fxe4 ♗g4+.

27 ♗h4 dxc3

28 ♖d8 cxb2!

As the curtain falls – a simple but elegant combination.

29 ♖xe8+ ♔g7

30 ♖d1 ♗c2+

31 ♖d2 b1=♗

32 ♗xh3 ♗cc1

White resigns

Game13 (p.149)
Van der Sterren-Glek
Germany 1995

1 ♗f3 ♗f6

2 c4 g6

3 ♗c3 ♖g7

4 e4 d6

5 d4 0-0

6 ♖e2 e5

7 0-0

By a slightly roundabout way the basic position of the Classical Variation has been reached.

7 ... exd4
 8 ♖xd4 ♜e8
 9 f3 ♘c6
 10 ♙e3 ♗h5
 11 f4

Apart from the moves given in the analysis, we should also mention 11 ♜c1, which, however, is insufficient to gain an advantage: 11...f5 12 c5 ♖xd4 13 ♙xd4 dxc5 14 ♙xc5 ♗f4 15 ♙c4+ ♙e6∞.

11 ... ♗f6
 12 ♙f3 ♙g4
 13 ♖xc6 ♙xf3
 14 ♗xf3 bxc6
 15 ♙d2

The Dutch GM prophylactically supports his ♗c3. The position after Black's 14th move is examined in detail in the analysis, but here is another typical example: 15 ♙f2 ♗c8! 16 ♜ae1 ♗g4 17 ♗d3? (17 ♙d4 would have led to equality) 17...♗xf4 18 ♙xa7 ♗h4 with a clear advantage to Black (Solozhenkin-Glek, France 1994).

15 ... ♗b8!?

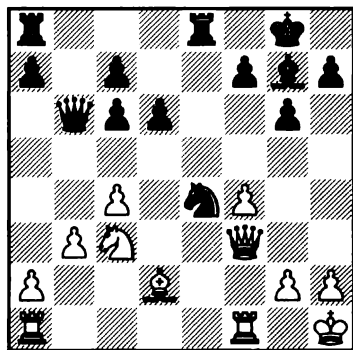
15...♗c8 is also satisfactory, but the text move enables Black to transfer his queen to the main part of the battlefield.

16 b3 ♗b6+
 17 ♖h1 ♗xe4!

17...♗d4? 18 ♜ad1 ♗xe4? is a false trail: 19 ♙e1!+–.

Black carries out a successful

tactical operation that gives him at least equality.



18 ♖xe4 ♗d4!

This move is the idea of Black's exchanging combination – both of the opponent's minor pieces are *en prise*.

18...♙xa1? (with the idea of 19 ♜xa1 ♗d4–+) is a mistake, as 19 c5! leads to a win for White.

19 ♖xd6

White has problems after 19 ♜ae1 d5! 20 cxd5 cxd5 21 ♗g5 ♗xd2 22 ♜d1 ♗a5! 23 ♜xd5 (23 ♗xd5 ♗xd5 favours Black) 23...♗xa2.

19 ... cxd6
 20 ♜ad1 ♗e4
 21 ♜de1?! .

A serious inaccuracy. After the exchange of queens the activity of the black pieces increases – they can operate on the e-file. 21 ♙c3! = was essential.

21 ... ♗xf3
 22 ♜xf3 ♜xe1+
 23 ♙xe1 ♜e8

24 ♖d2 ♜e2

25 ♜d3

White evidently thought that he had everything in order, but an unpleasant surprise awaits him.

25 ... c5!

The powerful ♖d4 will cramp White still further. Of course, 26 ♜xd6? is not possible in view of 26...♖d4. White's downfall is caused by the lack of an escape square for his king.

26 h3 ♖d4

27 b4

Somewhat more tenacious is 27 a4 ♖f8 28 ♖c3 ♖xc3 29 ♜xc3 ♜f2! 30 g3 ♖e7, but here too Black's advantage is pretty considerable – the difference in the activity of the pieces is evident.

27 ... ♖f8

28 b5 ♖e7

29 f5

White is helpless against the decisive advance of the black king into the centre. After 29 a4 d5! 30 cxd5 ♖d6 followed by ...♖xd5 and ...c5-c4 he is similarly unable to resist.

29 ... d5

30 fxg6 hxg6

31 ♖f4

The bishop has finally gained some air, but at what a price.

31 ... dxc4

32 ♜a3 ♜b2

33 ♜xa7+ ♖f6

34 h4

If 34 a4 Black plays 34...g5, driving the bishop off the c1-h6 diagonal.

34 ... ♜xb5

35 ♖g5+ ♖g7

36 a4 ♜b1+

37 ♖h2 c3

White resigns

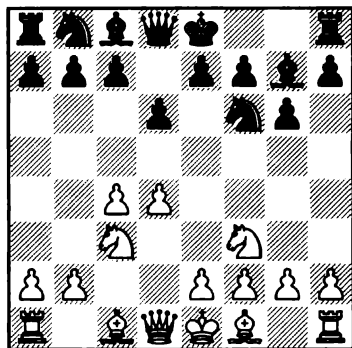
11 King's Indian Defence: Deviations by White from The Classical Variation

1 d4 ♘f6
 2 c4 g6
 3 ♘c3 ♗g7
 4 e4

Along with this, the most critical and popular move, White can also choose more restrained plans:

4 e3 (by securely defending his d4 pawn, White hinders the opponent's counterplay in the centre; however, this cannot be considered a way to fight for an advantage) 4...0-0 5 ♖d3 (5 ♘f3 or 5 ♗e2 leads to the 4 ♘f3 variation, considered below) 5...d6 6 ♘ge2 e5 7 0-0 (the exchange on e5 favours Black, as he makes the cramping advance ...e5-e4: 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 ♘g3 ♖e7 9 ♖e2 ♘a6 10 0-0 ♘c5 11 ♖d1 e4 12 ♗c2 ♗g4, Fontein-Euwe, Holland 1938) 7...c6 8 f4 ♖e8 (threatening to set up a powerful pawn wedge by ...e5-e4 and ...d6-d5) 9 ♘g3 exd4 10 exd4 ♘g4. Black has a good game – he controls the e-file and White has to think in terms of defence (Florian-Sandor, Hungary 1958).

4 ♘f3 (against Smyslov's move 4 ♗g5 the simplest is 4...0-0, transposing into the main variation) 4...d6.



If White does not go in for the main line of the Classical Variation (5 e4), he has a choice between developing his dark-square bishop at f4 or g5 and playing 5 e3, reinforcing his d4 pawn:

(a) 5 e3 0-0 6 ♗e2 (White completes his kingside development, but at the same time he does not prevent Black from calmly completing the mobilisation of his forces) 6...♘bd7 7 0-0 (to 7 b4 the simplest reply is also 7...e5 with play in the centre) 7...e5 8 b3 (or 8 ♖c2 ♖e8 9 dxe5 dxe5 10 ♖d1 c6 11 ♘g5 ♖e7 and Black easily completes his development, Milic-Matulovic, Yugoslavia 1957) 8...♖e8 9 ♗a3 exd4 10 ♘xd4 ♘c5 (e4 is a convenient transit point

for the black cavalry) 11 ♖c2 ♟fe4
12 ♟xe4 ♟xe4 13 ♟b2 a5 with
roughly equal chances (Barcza-
Bolbochan, Helsinki 1952);

(b) 5 ♟f4 (a similar set-up, but
without c2-c4, is examined in the
chapter on the Torre Attack; here
too Black freely completes his
development with a comfortable
game) 5...0-0, and now:

(b1) 6 e3 c6 (there is no point in
pursuing the white bishop by
6...♟h5 since there is a standard
way of preserving it from exchange:
7 ♟g5 h6 8 ♟h4 g5 9 ♟d2!; it is
therefore better to begin queenside
play that is effective in such set-ups)
7 ♟e2 a6 8 0-0 b5 9 a3 ♟bd7 10
cxb5 cxb5 11 e4 ♟b7 with
approximate equality;

(b2) 6 h3 ♟bd7 7 e3 c6 (planning
the queenside pawn offensive
indicated earlier) 8 ♟e2 a6 9 0-0 (if
White prevents the extended
fianchetto by 9 a4, Black transfers
his interests towards the centre –
9...a5 10 0-0 ♟e8 11 ♖d2 ♟c7 12
♟fd1 ♟a6 13 e4 ♖e8=, Yap-Knaak,
Szirak 1985) 9...b5 10 ♟c1 ♟b7 11
♟d2 bxc4 12 ♟xc4 (Andersson-
Kamsky, Tilburg 1990), and now
12...d5 13 ♟e5 c5 14 b3 ♟c8, when
Black is completely mobilised and
can face the future with optimism
(recommended by Kamsky);

(c) 5 ♟g5 0-0 6 e3 (if 6 ♖d2
Black obtains a comfortable game
by 6...c5 7 d5 ♖a5 8 ♟h6 a6 9
♟xg7 ♟xg7 10 e3 b5!, when it is
White who has to fight for equality,

Andric-Bukic, Belgrade 1968)
6...♟f5 (bringing his bishop out to
an active position, Black exploits
the e4 square for simplification; he
also has 6...c5 and 6...♟bd7, leading
to more complicated situations, but
the text move is simpler) 7 ♟e2 (or
7 ♟d3 ♟xd3 8 ♖xd3 ♟bd7 9 0-0
h6 10 ♟h4 ♟e8 11 e4 g5 12 ♟g3
♟h5 13 ♟ad1 e6 14 ♟e1 a6 and it is
hard for White to count on an
advantage, Smyslov-Bilek, Szolnok
1975) 7...♟e4 8 ♟xe4 ♟xe4 9 0-0
h6 (it is useful to have in reserve
...g6-g5, neutralising the white
bishop) 10 ♟h4 c5 11 dxc5 (playing
the bishop to f3 also does not
achieve anything – 11 ♟d2 ♟f5 12
♟f3 ♟c6 13 d5 ♟e5 14 ♟e2 ♟d3,
and Black already has the
advantage) 11...g5 12 ♟g3 dxc5.
Black's chances are not worse – he
has an active bishop, and no
problems with completing his
queenside development.

4 ... d6

We now consider 5 ♟ge2 (12.1),
5 ♟d3 (12.2) and 5 h3 (12.3).

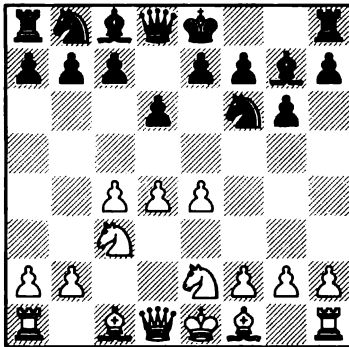
White's other possibilities:

5 ♟g5 (directed against the usual
pawn counter ...e7-e5) 5...0-0 6
♟ge2 (6 ♟f3 transposes into lines
considered a little earlier; 6 ♖d2 is
also played: Yermolinsky-Nikolai-
dis, Yerevan 1996, went 6...c5 7 d5
e6 8 ♟f3 exd5 9 exd5 a6 10 ♟c2
♟g4 11 0-0, and here 11...b5!? 12
cxb5 axb5 13 ♟xb5 ♟xf3 14 ♖xf3
♖c8!? would have given Black
reasonable play for the pawn)

6...♖bd7 (6...♖c6!? is also good, leading to the Sämisch Variation after 7 f3) 7 ♗d2 c5 (beginning traditional play against the white centre) 8 d5 b5!? (such pawn sacrifices, in the spirit of the Benko Gambit, are very effective; in the given case White was intending to shelter his king on the queenside, and the opening of lines may be unpleasant for him) 9 cxb5 a6 10 ♖g3 ♗a5. Black's play compensates for the sacrificed pawn (Nikolaidis-Atalik, Karditca 1996).

12.1 (1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 ♗g7 4 e4 d6)

5 ♖ge2



After this play can transpose into the Sämisch Variation or lines with the fianchetto of the ♗g2. The move 5 ♖ge2 has independent significance if White tries to obtain play similar to the Sämisch Variation, but without f2-f3, and to support his e4 pawn he plays his knight to g3. But

in so doing he weakens his control of d4, and Black can exploit this.

5 ... 0-0
6 ♖g3 e5

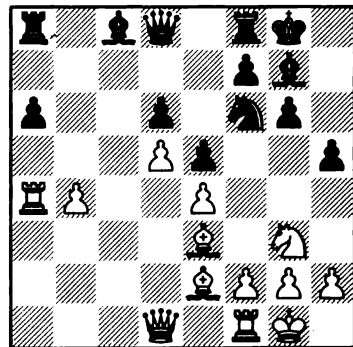
An energetic counter in the centre. Also possible is the more restrained 6...c6 7 ♗e2 ♖bd7 8 ♗g5 h6 9 ♗e3 a6 10 ♗d2 h5!? 11 ♗h6 h4 12 ♗xg7 ♗xg7 13 ♖f1 with a complicated game where White has a slight initiative (I.Sokolov-Van Wely, Akureyri 1994).

7 d5 c6
8 ♗e2 cxd5
9 cxd5 ♖bd7
10 ♗g5

Undermining the white centre.

After 10 ♗e3 Black develops similar counterplay: 10...a6 11 0-0 b5 12 b4 ♖b6 13 a4 bxa4 14 ♖xa4 ♖xa4 15 ♗xa4 h5!

Now 10...h6 11 ♗e3 a6 12 0-0 b5 13 b4 ♖b6 14 a4 ♖xa4 15 ♖xa4 bxa4 16 ♗xa4 h5! transposes into the same position:



The position of the white knight at g3 gives Black a tempo, thanks to

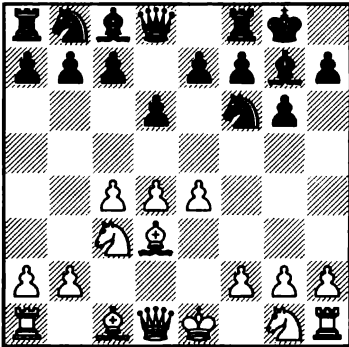
which he has good chances of an attack against the opponent's kingside. For example, 17 f3 h4 18 Qh1 Qh5 19 b5 Qf4 20 bxa6 Qh6! 21 Qf2 Qh3+ 22 Qxh3 Qxe3+ 23 Qh1 (23 Qf2 Qb6?) 23...Qxh3, and Black soon won (Szabo-Yanofsky, Winnipeg 1967).

12.2 (1 d4 Qf6 2 c4 g6 3 Qc3 Qg7 4 e4 d6)

5 Qd3

White develops his bishop while retaining e2 for his knight. However, at d3 the bishop only appears to be more active than at e2. In fact the d4 pawn is weakened, and Black can easily create counterplay.

5 ... 0-0



The most flexible continuation.

6 Qge2 e5

A reasonable alternative is 6...Qc6 7 0-0 Qh5!? 8 Qe3 e5 9 d5 Qe7 (this is the point of Black's set-up, not going in for the creation of a

weak pawn at d4, but concentrating the forces for play on the kingside) 10 Qd2 f5 11 exf5 Qxf5 12 Qg5 Qf6 (Piket-J.Polgar, Amsterdam 1995). The chances are roughly equal – Black's development is easily completed, and in the given set-up the exchange of dark-square bishops is advantageous.

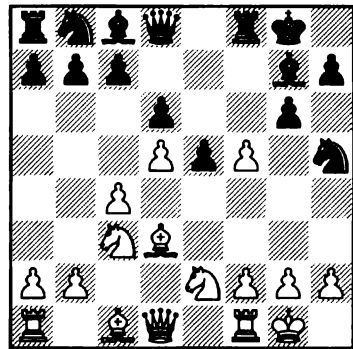
7 d5 Qh5

8 0-0

After 8 Qe3 Qd7 9 Qd2 a6 10 Qc2 Qb8 11 b4 Qf4 12 0-0 Qxe2+ 13 Qxe2 f5 14 f3 f4 15 Qf2 b5 Black has sufficient counterplay (Pfeiffer-Pesch, Bad Pyrmont 1961).

8 ... f5

9 exf5



The critical position of the variation, where Black has a choice:

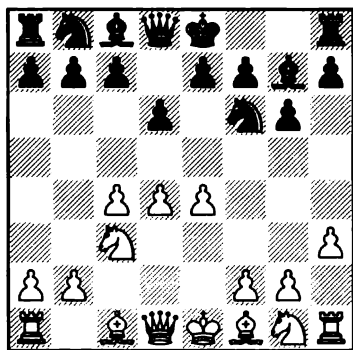
9...gxf5 10 f4 e4 11 Qc2 c5 12 Qe3 Qd7 13 h3 Qb6 with counterplay (G.Horvath-Kupreichik, Cattolica 1992).

9...Qxf5 10 Qxf5 gxf5 11 f4 Qd7 12 Qc2 a6 13 Qd2 Qh4 with a double-edged game – it is not easy

for White to achieve anything real on the queenside, while in the centre Black is solidly placed and he has play on the kingside (Conquest-G.Hernandez, Cienfuegos 1996).

12.3 (1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♗g7 4 e4 d6)

5 h3



This move was suggested by Réti, and then developed by Makogonov.

‘White wants to develop his bishop at e3, and defends against the possibility of ... ♘g4. In addition he has in mind g2-g4, and in contrast to the Sämisch Variation the f3 square is left free for his knight’ – this is how this move was characterised by Spassky.

Black, in turn, quickly completes his development and, by exploiting the temporary delay in the mobilisation of the white forces, he aims to initiate counterplay on the flanks (more often the queenside).

5 ... 0-0

Now White has a choice between 6 ♘f3 (12.31), 6 ♗e3 (12.32) and 6 ♗g5 (12.33).

12.31 (1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♗g7 4 e4 d6 5 h3 0-0)

6 ♘f3

White switches to classical lines.

6 ... e5

7 d5

After 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 ♖xd8 ♗xd8 White cannot win a pawn by 9 ♘xe5 ♗e8 10 f4 ♘bd7 11 ♘xd7 ♘xe4!, and 9 ♘d5 is parried by 9... ♗a6 10 ♗g5 ♗d6 11 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 12 b4 c6= (Larsen-Hellers, Esbjerg 1988).

7 ... ♗a6

After somewhat restricting White on the queenside, Black prepares play on the kingside. The immediate 7... ♘h5!? is also possible: 8 ♘h2 a5 9 g3 ♗a6 10 ♗e2 ♘c5!? (Black is not afraid of the spoiling of his kingside pawns, this being compensated by his active piece play) 11 ♗xh5 gxh5 12 g4 hxg4 13 hxg4 (Bagirov-Shaked, Linares 1997), and here Bagirov considers that 13...c6 14 ♖f3 ♖h4 15 ♗d2 b5 16 cxb5 cxb5 17 ♘xb5 f5! would have led to a double-edged position.

8 ♗e3

8 ♗g5 is satisfactorily met by 8... ♖e8 9 g4 ♘d7 10 ♗g1 ♗h8 11 ♖d2 ♘dc5 12 0-0-0 ♗d7 with a complicated game (Kavalek-Byrne, Chicago 1973).

8 ... ♘h5

9 ♖h2

Alternatives:

9 ♖d2 ♜e8 10 ♜b3 f5 11 c5 f4
12 ♖d2 ♜xc5 13 ♜xc5 dxc5 14
♙e2 ♜f6 (Karkov-Sirota, corr.
1987).

9 a3 f5 10 b4 ♜b8 11 ♜c1 ♖d7
12 exf5 gxf5 13 ♜g5 ♖df6 14 ♙e2
♜e8 15 ♖e6 ♙xe6 16 dxe6 f4 17
♙d2 e4 (Xu Jun-Cvitan, Novi Sad
1990).

In both cases Black gained counterplay by exploiting the advanced kingside pawns – a common strategy in this type of position.

9 ... ♜e8
10 ♙e2 f5!?
11 exf5

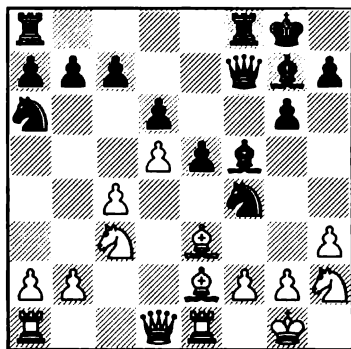
If 11 0-0 ♜f6 12 exf5 gxf5 13 f4 Black should not allow the fixing of his pawn chain (13...e4?! 14 g4!±), but should play 13...exf4 14 ♙xf4 ♜c5 with counterplay.

11 ... ♜f4
12 0-0

Or 12 ♙xf4 exf4 13 fxg6 ♜xg6 14 ♜f1 ♜c5 (Chernin-J.Polgar, New Delhi 1990). For the pawn Black has excellent play – two powerful bishops plus the displaced white king.

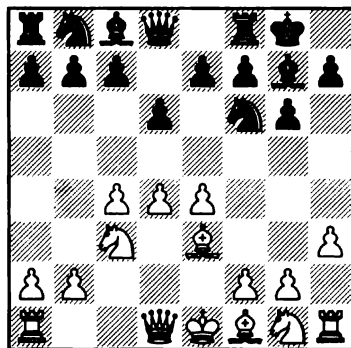
12 ... ♙xf5
13 ♜e1 ♜f7

We are following the game K.Hansen-Kasparov (Svendborg 1990). Black has completely solved his opening problems – he is well developed, and his pieces are excellently coordinated (...♜b4 is already threatened).



12.32 (1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3
♙g7 4 e4 d6 5 h3 0-0)

6 ♙e3



6 ... e5

Here too this continuation is sound enough.

7 d5

Opening the position also does not give White any advantage: 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 ♖f3 ♜bd7 9 ♜d2 c6 10 ♜d1 ♜e7 11 ♙e2 ♜c5 12 ♙g5 h6!? 13 ♙xh6 ♜cxe4 14 ♜c3 ♙xh6

15 ♖xh6 ♜xc3 16 bxc3. Black's king position is somewhat weakened, but White has serious pawn weaknesses on the queenside (Heinatz-Hund, Germany 1994).

7 ... a5

Useful prophylaxis – the ♜b8 aims for c5, and the pawn at a5 safeguards this manoeuvre.

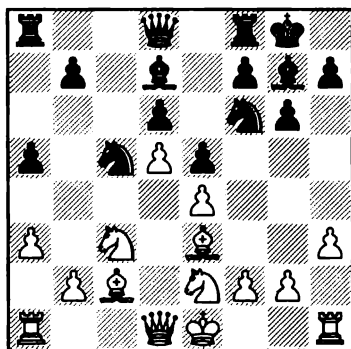
8 ♖d3 ♜a6

9 ♜ge2 ♜c5

10 ♖c2 c6

11 a3 cxd5

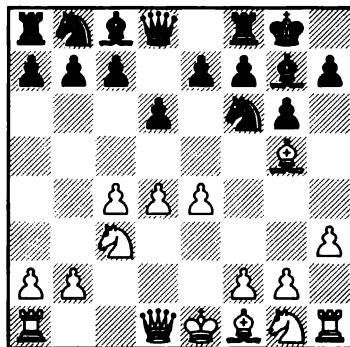
12 cxd5 ♖d7



We are following I.Sokolov-Thipsay (Moscow 1994). Mobilisation is complete, and the outcome of the opening can be considered normal for Black. 13 b4 axb4 14 axb4 ♖a6 15 ♖b1 ♜h5 16 ♖a4 f5!? led to a complicated middlegame with chances for both sides.

12.33 (1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♖g7 4 e4 d6 5 h3 0-0)

6 ♖g5



A fashionable continuation, developed by Romanian players. White prevents ...e7-e5.

6 ... a6!?

An interesting idea, analysed in detail by the Moscow GM Igor Glek. Black is ready for immediate counterplay on the queenside (...b7-b5), but also does not forget about the centre (...c7-c5). This flexible plan is one of the best replies to the Romanian variation.

7 ♜f3

Let us consider other tries by White for an advantage:

7 a4 c6 8 ♜f3 ♜bd7 (8...a5 is also possible, not allowing the white pawn onto this square) 9 a5 b5!? 10 axb6 ♖xb6 11 ♖c2 ♖b8 and Black has counterplay on the b-file (Suba-I.Sokolov, Oviedo 1992).

7 ♖d3 c5 8 d5 b5!? (the main idea of 6...a6), and now:

(a) 9 cxb5 axb5 10 ♜xb5 ♜xe4! (this also works after 10 ♖xb5) 11 ♖xe4 ♖a5+ 12 ♜c3 ♖xc3+ 13 ♖d2 (no better is 13 bxc3 ♖xc3+ 14 ♖d2

♖e5f7) 13...♗xd2+ 14 ♖xd2 ♖xd2+ 15 ♗xd2 ♖a4 and Black is already close to a win (Barbero-Glek, Barcelona 1992);

(b) 9 ♖f3!? (an interesting plan – the opponent is provoked into playing ...b5-b4, which would lead to the fixing of the black pawn chain and an advantage for White) 9...bxc4 10 ♗xc4 ♖bd7 11 0–0, and here instead of 11...♖b8 12 b3!?± (Yermolinsky-Piket, Wijk aan Zee 1997), Black should have played 11...♗b7!? followed by ...♗b6 and in some cases ...e7-e6, attacking the white centre, when his chances would not have been worse.

7 ♖d2 c5 (Black can also consider 7...♗bd7 followed by ...c7-c5, not allowing the possible exchange of queens) 8 d5?! (as shown by Glek, more accurate is 8 dxc5 dxc5 9 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 10 e5 ♗fd7∞) 8...♖a5! 9 a4 b5!? 10 cxb5 ♖b4 (Black already has the initiative) 11 ♗d3 axb5 12 e5 dxe5 13 ♗xb5 ♗a6 14 ♗xa6 ♗xa6 with strong pressure (Lazarev-Glek, Oberwart 1993).

7 ... ♗bd7
8 e5

Quiet play does not cause Black any particular problems: 8 ♗e2 h6 (or 8...c5!?) 9 ♗e3 c5 10 0–0 cxd4 11 ♗xd4 b6 (Suba-Kr.Georgiev, Prague 1985). Black develops his bishop on the long diagonal and satisfactorily solves the problem of

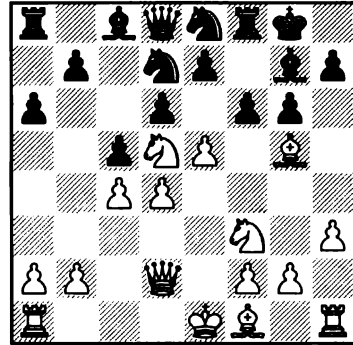
mobilising his forces. The chances are roughly equal.

8 ♖d2 can be met by the typical 8...c5 9 d5 b5!? with good play.

8 ... ♗e8
9 ♖d2

9 ♗d5 can be met by the simple 9...f6, while 9 ♗e2 dxe5 10 dxe5 c6 followed by ...♗c7-e6 gives Black sufficient counterplay (Glek).

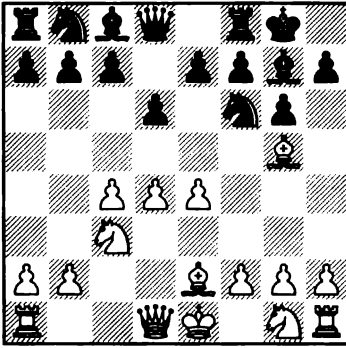
9 ... c5
10 ♗d5 f6



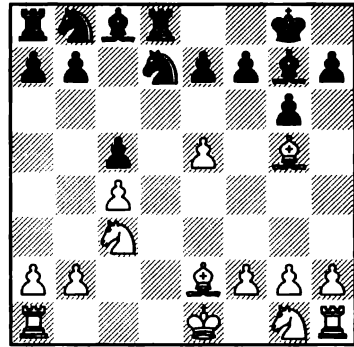
We are following the game Van der Sterren-Glek (Holland 1994) where Black easily solved his opening problems: 11 exf6 ♗exf6 12 ♗xf6+ ♗xf6 13 ♗d3 ♗f5! 14 ♗xf5 (or 14 0–0 ♗e4! 15 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 16 ♖fe1 ♗xf3 17 ♗xe7 ♖d7 18 ♗xf8 ♖xf8 19 gxf3 ♗xd4 with an attack for Black) 14...gxf5 15 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 16 d5 ♗h8 17 g4 ♖b6! and White had to switch to a difficult defence.

13 King's Indian Defence: Averbakh Variation

1	d4	♘f6
2	c4	g6
3	♘c3	♙g7
4	e4	d6
5	♙e2	0-0
6	♙g5	



but this leads to lengthy and intricate variations, and the simple 7...dxc5 is more practical) 8 ♖xd8 ♜xd8 9 e5 ♘fd7.



This variation dates from the game Averbakh-Panno (Buenos Aires 1954). It is directed against Black's counterplay with ...e7-e5 and ...f7-f5, and essentially aims for pressure over the entire board.

6 ... c5

The most critical continuation, immediately attacking the white centre.

7 d5

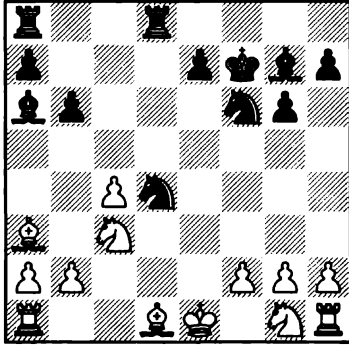
A complicated ending arises after 7 dxc5 dxc5 (7...♗a5 is a good alternative, forcing White to spend time parrying the threat of ...♘xe4,

White faces a choice:

(a) 10 ♘f3 (defending the e-pawn) 10...♘c6 11 ♜d1 h6 12 ♙e3 b6 13 e6 fxe6 14 ♘b5 ♖f7 15 0-0 ♙b7 16 ♘h4 ♘f8 and Black's chances are not worse – White still has to demonstrate that he has compensation for the pawn (Bonsch-Frick, Graz 1993);

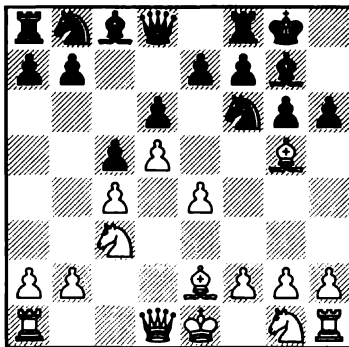
(b) 10 e6 (breaking up Black's kingside pawns) 10...♘f6 (interesting is 10...♙xc3+!? 11 bxc3 fxe6 ♖xf7 12 ♙e3 (12 ♘f3 ♘c6 13 0-0 ♙f5 allows Black to complete his development unhindered) 12...♘c6! (an interesting possibility, involving

play against the c4 pawn and sorties by the ♖c6 into the centre) 13 ♖xc5 b6 14 ♖a3 ♗d4 15 ♖d1 ♖a6.



Black has actively deployed his forces, and has excellent play for the pawn. H.Olafsson-Istratescu (Debrecen 1992) continued 16 ♗f3 ♗xf3+ 17 ♖xf3 ♖ac8, and now 18 0-0 (dangerous is 18 ♗b5 ♖xc4 19 ♗xa7 ♗e4) 18...♖xc4 would have led to complete equality.

7 ... h6



This move prevents White from taking control of the c1-h6 diagonal.

8 ♖f4

The most topical continuation, by which White aims to hinder the important move ...e7-e6. Other possibilities:

8 ♖h4 (this allows Black to begin active play on the queenside) 8...a6 9 ♗f3 b5! 10 ♖c2 (10 cxb5 axb5 11 ♖xb5 ♗xe4 also favours Black, while after 10 ♗d2 b4 11 ♗a4 ♗h7 12 0-0 ♗d7 13 ♖c2 g5 14 ♖g3 ♗e5 White has to think of how to equalise, Ehlvest-Kasparov, Horgen 1995, by transposition) 10...bxc4 11 ♗d2 e6 12 ♖xc4 g5 13 ♖g3 exd5 14 ♗xd5 ♗c6 (Bobotsov-Tal, Moscow 1967). Black has a clear advantage – the b-file, excellent posts at b4 and d4 for his knight, the powerful King's Indian bishop at g7, and a lead in development – what more could he want?

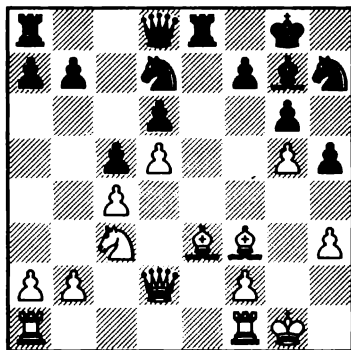
8 ♖d2 (this allows Black to attack the white centre) 8...e6 9 h3 (or 9 ♗f3 exd5 10 exd5 ♖f5=) 9...b5! (exploiting the undefended state of the pawn at e4, Black begins play against the opponent's centre) 10 cxb5 exd5 11 exd5 ♖b7 12 ♖b3 ♗bd7 13 ♗f3 ♗b6, and White, who is behind in development, has obvious problems (L.Spasov-Velimirovic, Yugoslavia 1970).

8 ♖e3 (retaining the possibility of gaining a tempo by attacking the h6 pawn with ♖d2) 8...e6, and now:

(a) 9 dxe6 ♖xe6 10 ♖d2 ♗h7 11 h3 (11 0-0-0 is well met by 11...♖a5 12 ♖xd6 ♗a6 13 ♖h4 ♗d7 14 ♖d2 ♗b4 with the initiative

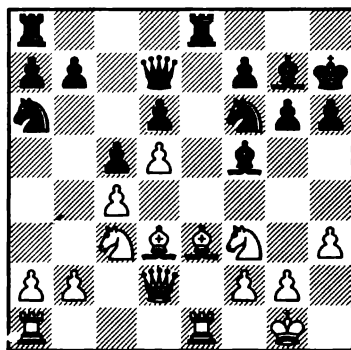
for Black, while 11 ♖d1 is harmless in view of 11... ♗b6 12 b3 ♘c6 13 ♙f3 ♜ad8 14 ♚ge2 a6 15 0-0 ♘e5, when the dynamic resources of Black's position compensate for his backward d6 pawn, Arnason-O.Jacobsen, Copenhagen 1990) 11... ♘c6 12 ♘f3 ♗e7 (a sound continuation; 12... ♗a5!? leads to more complicated play, as in Portisch-Nunn, Brussels 1988) 13 0-0 ♜ad8 14 ♜ad1 ♞fe8 15 ♞fe1 ♗f8 16 ♙f4 ♘d4= (Donner-Gligoric, Amsterdam 1971). M.Gurevich's recommendation of 16 ♗c2!± can be met by 16... ♙c8!? 17 b3 b6 with a complicated game;

(b) 9 h3 (this prophylactic move allows Black to develop his forces harmoniously) 9...exd5 10 exd5 ♞e8 11 ♘f3 ♙f5 12 g4 ♙e4 13 ♗d2 (or 13 0-0 ♙xf3 14 ♙xf3 ♘bd7 with a roughly equal game, Averbakh-Geller, USSR 1974) 13... ♘bd7 14 0-0 ♙xf3 15 ♙xf3 h5 16 g5 ♘h7 (Lputian-Gufeld, Moscow 1983).



Black has a comfortable game. He has harmoniously deployed his pieces, and the weakened light squares on the kingside may cause White problems. In the game after 17 ♚h1 ♙xc3! 18 bxc3 ♘e5 19 ♙e2 ♗d7 20 ♚h2 ♗f5 Black completely outplayed his opponent and seized the initiative;

(c) 9 ♗d2 exd5 10 exd5 (with the idea of restricting the opponent as much as possible; after 10 cxd5 ♞e8 Black has adequate play) 10... ♚h7 11 h3 ♘a6 12 ♘f3 (or 12 ♙d3 ♘c7 13 a4 a6 14 ♘f3 ♞b8 15 a5 b5 16 axb6 ♞xb6 17 0-0 ♙d7 with a double-edged game, Deze-Mazic, Sambor 1972) 12... ♙f5 13 ♙d3 ♗d7 14 0-0 ♞fe8 15 ♞fe1.



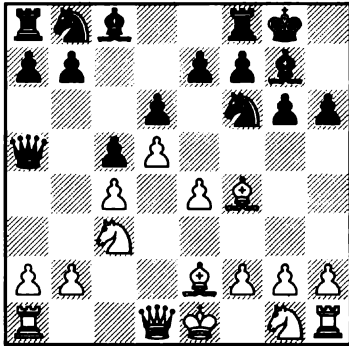
The critical position of the variation, which can be assessed as roughly equal.

Uhlmann-Fischer (Siegen 1970) continued 15... ♘b4 16 ♙xf5 ♗xf5 17 a3 ♘c2 18 ♘h4 ♗h5 19 ♗xc2 ♗xh4 20 b3 ♞e5 with dynamic equality.

Also good is the simple 15...♘e4
16 ♘xe4 ♙xe4 17 ♙xe4 ♖xe4=
(Boleslavsky).

It is evident that 8 ♙e3 is not dangerous for Black, and therefore it rarely occurs in practice.

8 ... ♖a5



Black wants to avoid the problematic pawn sacrifice 8...e6, and with the text move he disrupts the harmony of White's set-up, forcing him to react to the pin on the ♘c3.

9 ♙d2

If 9 ♖d2 Black gains counterplay by 9...e5!? (recommended by GM I.Zaitsev):

(a) 10 ♙xh6 ♙xh6 11 ♖xh6 ♘xe4, and it is only White who may have problems;

(b) 10 dxe6 ♙xe6 11 ♙xd6 ♖d8 12 e5 ♘e8, when Black is better developed and the regaining of the pawn is merely a question of time;

(c) 10 ♙e3 a6 11 f3 ♘h7 12 h4 (there are no other active attempts) 12...♘h5!, when Black's position is

the more promising: he has forestalled his opponent's play on the kingside, and is ready for action on the queenside, where White is planning to evacuate his king.

9 ... e6

The white centre has to be attacked.

10 ♘f3 exd5

11 exd5

A typical move in this type of position. White tries to restrict as much as possible the opponent's pieces. If Black plays passively, White will gradually develop all his pieces, and then launch a typical attack on the queenside – a2-a3 and b2-b4. Here he has a spatial advantage, and in many cases the end-game is rather difficult for Black.

If Black aims for an attack on the kingside, White sets up a pawn barrier – f4, g4, h3, restricting the opponent's pieces, at the same time trying to increase his spatial advantage on the queenside. Sometimes in these variations he also crosses the demarcation line on the kingside, by preparing f4-f5.

11 ... ♙f5!?

A fresh solution to the problem. Black usually plays 11...a6, trying to oppose White's plans on the queenside.

Black's idea is simple – if White does not react to the bishop manoeuvre, he will comfortably advance ...♘e4, exchanging a pair of knights and gaining definite counterplay on the kingside.

12 ♖h4

A quite justified reply, but Black is able to take advantage of the knight's position on the edge of the board.

12 ... ♗d7
13 ♜c1 ♕h7
14 0-0 ♜d8

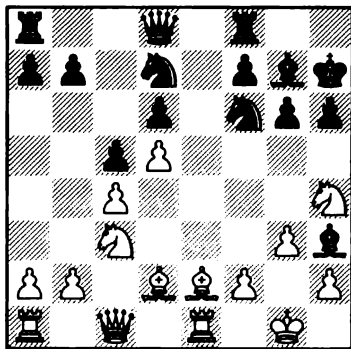
Now White must either retreat his knight from h4 or defend it.

15 g3

15 ♖f3 would have allowed 15...♗f5 with the idea mentioned earlier of ...♖e4.

But now Black completes his development naturally – the ♗d7 is occupying practically the only square for the ♖b8, since to develop it via a6 is unpromising.

15 ... ♗h3
16 ♜e1 ♖bd7



We are following *Illustrative Game No.14* Kaidanov-Gufeld (USA 1995).

Black has solved his main opening problems and can face the future with confidence.

Game 14 (p.166)
Kaidanov-Gufeld
USA 1995

1 d4 ♖f6
2 c4 g6
3 ♖c3 ♗g7
4 e4 0-0

A little finesse – the obvious 5 e5 is ineffective: 5...♖e8 6 f4 d6 7 ♖f3 c5 and the centre cannot be held. White rarely falls for such tricks, but they are useful to know.

5 ♗e2 d6
6 ♗g5

The Averbakh Variation is one of the most effective ways of trying to 'stifle' Black's initiative in the King's Indian Defence. However, in the present game Black successfully opposes this set-up.

6 ... c5
7 d5 h6
8 ♗f4 ♜a5
9 ♗d2 e6
10 ♖f3 exd5
11 exd5 ♗f5

An interesting manoeuvre, aiming for control of the e4 square. However, the opening stage of the game is examined in detail in the theoretical section.

12 ♖h4

White's reaction is perfectly justified. But note that the knight is temporarily out of play on the edge of the board.

12 ... ♗d7
13 ♜c1 ♕h7
14 0-0 ♜d8

White has to constantly remember about his knight at h4 – now he must either retreat or defend it.

15 g3

Now Black very naturally completes his development (d7 is vacated for the ♖b8).

15 ... ♖h3
 16 ♖e1 ♖bd7
 17 ♗c2 ♖e8
 18 ♙f1 ♙xf1
 19 ♖xf1

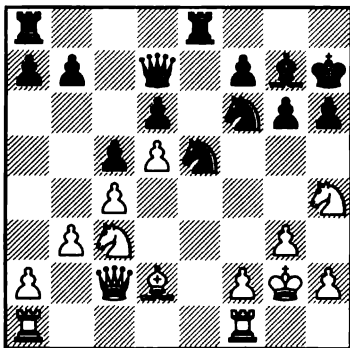
19 ♖xe8 followed by 20 ♙xf1 would not have changed the character of the position.

19 ... ♗e5
 20 b3 ♗d7

The black queen indicates its desire to penetrate into the opponent's position along the slightly weakened light squares.

21 ♔g2

To parry the opponent's threats White has to use his king.



21 ... b5!

This traditional counter underlines Black's aggressive intentions.

22 cxb5

If 22 ♖xb5 Black has 22... ♗xd5.

22 ... ♗b7

23 ♔g1

Forced. Now Black is unable to regain the sacrificed pawn 23... ♗xd5? 24 ♗e4); in order to attack he has to bring all his pieces into play.

23 ... c4!?

In some cases Black hopes to use the d3 square for his knight. But the main idea is to open the c-file – after all, his queen's rook is not participating in the play.

24 ♙e3 ♖ac8
 25 ♖ad1 cxb3
 26 ♗xb3 ♖c4!
 27 ♙d4 ♖ec8

Black has successfully regrouped and has deployed his forces in the best way possible. He has excellent compensation for the minimal material deficit.

28 b6!?

White senses that the opponent's initiative is becoming threatening, and with this counter-sacrifice he tries to change the course of the game.

28 ... axb6
 29 ♖b5 ♗d7
 30 f4

General considerations fade into the background, and calculating play begins.

30 ... ♗cg4!

30... ♗h3 is over-aggressive: 31 ♖xe5 dxe5 32 ♖xf6! ♙xf6 33 ♗f3!
 31 ♖f3

The main alternative that had to be considered was 31 h3 (note that the retreat of the ♖g4 is cut off), but in the given case it would have opened lines for the attack. The most effective way for Black to sacrifice his knight is by 31...♗e3!, when if 32 ♖xe3 ♖xb5 he has a slight but clear positional advantage, while after 32 ♗xe3 ♖xh3 White encounters serious problems.

31 ... h5

Black decides to secure the fate of his ♖g4, but in so doing he weakens the position of his king and the game enters a phase of complications. 31...♗e4 was objectively better, but understandably the attacking side is unwilling to go in for exchanges.

32 ♜fe1 ♗h6
33 ♖g5+ ♖g8
34 ♗e6?!

White tries to exploit the opponent's time trouble to provoke a mistake.

After 34 ♗xf6! ♗xf6 35 ♗e4 ♗g7 36 ♗bxd6 ♜c3! 37 ♗xc3 ♜xc3 White has two main moves, 38 ♖xb6 and 38 ♖b4, to which Black replies in identical fashion: 38 ♖xb6 ♜c2 39 ♖b8+ ♗f8! 40 ♜e8 ♖h3 41 ♜xf8+ ♖g7 42 ♗e8+ ♖xf8 43

♖d6+ ♖g8 44 ♗f6+ ♖g7 45 ♗e8+ with a draw, or 38 ♖b4 ♜c2 39 ♖e4 ♖c7! 40 ♖e8+ ♖h7 41 ♗e4 ♗g4 42 ♜e2 ♖c4! 43 ♜de1 ♖h6! with unclear consequences.

Thus the strongest move 34 ♗xf6 would have maintained approximate equality, whereas 34 ♗e6 must at least be considered an inaccuracy, but an understandable one, in view of the seemingly dangerous placing of the white queen and black king on the a2-g8 diagonal.

34 ... ♜xe6
35 ♖xe6 ♖e7
36 ♗xf6 ♗xf6
37 ♗xd6 ♜c3!
38 ♖b1

If 38 ♗xc8 there follows 38...♖c5+.

38 ... ♜c2
39 ♖xb6

Here too 39 ♗xc8 ♖c5+ leads to a win for Black.

39 ... ♜8c6
40 ♖b8+ ♖h7
41 f5

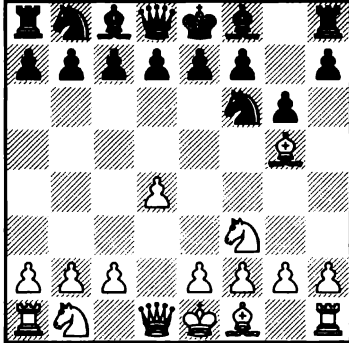
White also fails to save the game by 41 ♗e4 ♜xe6 42 ♗xf6+ ♖xf6 43 ♜d7+ ♗f7, or 41 ♗e8 ♜xe6.

41 ... gxf5
White resigns

14

Torre Attack

- 1 d4 ♘f6
 2 ♘f3 g6
 3 ♗g5



A method of play proposed by the Mexican GM Carlos Torre in the mid-1920s. This was how (although in the Queen's Pawn Game 1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 e6 3 ♗g5) the famous Torre-Lasker game began, in which the great champion not only suffered a defeat, but also fell victim to a famous 'windmill' combination. Then the method of play with ♗g5 and the erection of the solid central pawn triangle c3/d4/e3 began also to be employed against the King's Indian Defence.

Alekhine called this move 'an attempt to oppose Indian tricks with free piece development'.

We will also consider other attempts by White to manage without c2-c4:

3 ♗f4 ♗g7, and now:

(a) 4 ♘c3 (this leads to an acceptable position for Black in the Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence) 4...d6 5 e4 c6 6 ♗d2 b5! (against White's plan of castling long and attacking on the kingside, Black launches swift counterplay on the queenside) 7 ♗d3 (or 7 e5 b4 8 exf6 bxc3 9 bxc3 exf6 10 ♗e2 0-0 with approximate equality) 7...♗g4 8 0-0-0 ♘bd7 9 h3 ♗xf3 10 gxf3 e5 11 dxe5 dxe5 12 ♗h6 ♗xh6 13 ♗xh6 ♗b6 14 ♗e3 ♘h5 15 ♘e2 0-0-0, and after evacuating his king Black can face the future with confidence (Van Parreren-W. Watson, Brocco 1991);

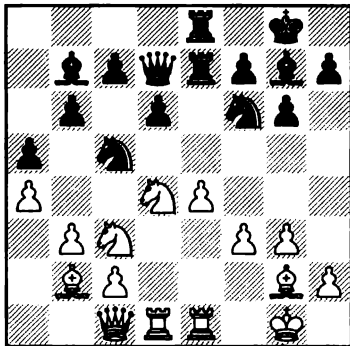
(b) 4 e3 b6 (the fianchetto of the second bishop gives Black a comfortable game) 5 c3 ♗b7 6 ♘bd2 c5 7 h3 0-0 8 ♗e2 d6 9 0-0 ♘c6 10 ♗h2 ♗e8 11 ♗b3 ♗c7 12 ♘g5 e5 and the initiative is already with Black (Smyslov-Geller, Moscow 1961).

3 g3 (with this move White retains the option of transposing into normal lines with g2-g3) 3...♗g7 4 ♗g2 0-0 5 0-0 d6, and now:

(a) 6 b3 (this attempt to fianchetto the second bishop favours Black, since he has already occupied the a1-h8 diagonal) 6...e5 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 ♗b2 e4 9 ♗xd8 ♗xd8 10 ♘g5 ♗f5 11 g4 (Black's position is already slightly more pleasant, since

White cannot attack once more the e4 pawn by 11 c3 in view of 11... h6!, exploiting the undefended b2) 11... xg4 12 xe4 xe4 13 xg7 xg7 14 xe4 c6 15 c3 d4 (Filip-Geller, Amsterdam 1958);

(b) 6 c3 bd7 7 e4 e5 8 e1 b6 9 a4 a5 10 b3 b7 11 b2 e8 12 d2 exd4 (beginning play against the white centre) 13 xd4 c5 14 f3 e7 15 ad1 d7 16 c1 ae8 .



Black has comfortably deployed his forces and his chances look slightly better – White has to think in terms of defence and watch for Black's possible pawn thrusts (G.Mainka-Stohl, Germany 1994).

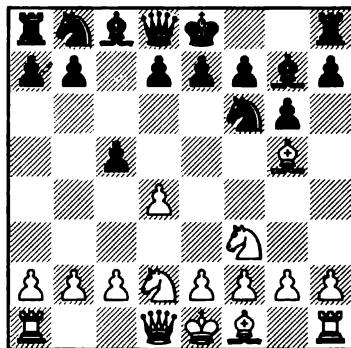
3 b3 (with this move order, before the black bishop has taken up its post at g6, the double fianchetto is possible) 3... g7 4 b2 0–0 5 g3 (after 5 e3 it is advisable for Black to transpose into a good version of a Grünfeld structure – 5...d5 6 c4 c6 7 c3 a5 8 a4 a6 9 d3 b4 10 0–0 g4 11 e2 f5 , when he has no problems, Strome-A.Grigorian,

Szeged 1994) 5...c5 (here too the transposition into a Grünfeld structure is possible: 5...d5!? 6 g2 c5 7 0–0 cxd4 8 xd4 e5 9 f3 e4 10 d4 e8 11 a3 e3, and Black actively fights for the initiative, Secula-Smyslov, Germany 1991) 6 dxc5 a5 + 7 d2 xc5 8 c3 d5! with good chances for Black (Yudovich-Kholmov, Moscow 1966).

3 ... g7
4 bd2

Black handled the position successfully in the game Sorokin-Sakaev (St Petersburg 1993) where the rare move 4 c3 was played. After 4...c5!? 5 dxc5 a6 6 d4 c7 7 bd2 e6 8 c4 b6 9 cxb6 xb6 10 b3 c7 11 h4 (11 c4 b6 =) 11... b8 12 c2 he could have gained good play for the pawn by 12... b7 (Sakaev).

4 ... c5



An energetic way of countering White's set-up. Black immediately attacks the d4 pawn, at the same time opening a convenient route for

his queen to the queenside. White can choose 5 xf6 (14.1) or 5 e3 (14.2); in this second section we will also consider 5 c3 .

5 dxc5 can be met by 5... a6 6 b3 xc5 7 xc5 a5+ with equality.

14.1 (1 d4 f6 2 f3 g6 3 g5 g7 4 bd2 c5)

5 xf6

This leads to lively play involving the tactical idea of e4 .

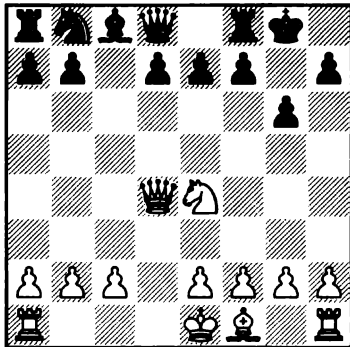
5 ... xf6

5... exf6 6 e4 !? looks unpleasant for Black.

6 e4 xd4

7 xd4 cxd4

8 xd4 0-0



An important position for the assessment of the variation. White is slightly ahead in development and has control of the half-open d-file. However, Black can regain a tempo thanks to the position of the d4 and can obtain a pawn superiority in

the centre. In general the position is one of dynamic balance.

9 c4

If 9 c3 Black achieves a comfortable game by 9... c6 10 d2 b6 ! (attacking the b2 and f2 pawns) 11 b1 (11 h4 xb2 12 b1 a3 13 h5 leads to unclear play – Gulko) 11... d4 12 d1 xd2+ 13 xd2 d6 14 d5 b5 !, creating pressure on the queenside (Miles-Gulko, USA 1987).

9 0-0-0 c6 10 d2 d5 !? (a pawn sacrifice for the sake of activity), and now:

(a) 11 g3 e6 12 e3 c8 13 b1 b6 14 e2 (better 14 d3 d4 ! 15 exd4 xa2+ 16 xa2 b4+ 17 b1 a5 18 c3 a2+ 19 c1 a1+ 20 b1 a2+ 21 c2 b4+ with a draw by perpetual check) 14... d4 ! 15 c1 b4 16 d3 d5 ! with advantage to Black (V.Ag-zamov-Loginov, Tashkent 1986);

(b) 11 xd5 c7 12 c5 (after 12 g5 f5 13 c3 b4 Black has compensation for the pawn) 12... b6 13 c3 (13 e3 b4) 13... f4+ 14 e3 xe3+ 15 fxe3 e5 (Kovacevic-Stein, Zagreb 1972). Despite being a pawn down, Black's chances are not worse – White is behind in development, and his e3 pawn is also weak.

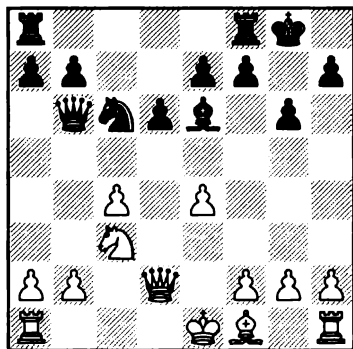
9 ... c6

10 d2 d6

11 c3 e6

12 e4 b6

The critical position of the variation.



In the game Spiridonov-Kasparov (Skara 1980) White chose 13 d1?! , and after 13... d5! (creating an 'eternal' square for the knight at e5) 14 b3 f5 15 e2 (or 15 exf5 xf5 16 d4 af8 17 e2 f4 with a clear advantage – Kasparov) 15...f4 16 d5 xd5 17 xd5+ g7 Black's chances proved better – the e5 dominates the play.

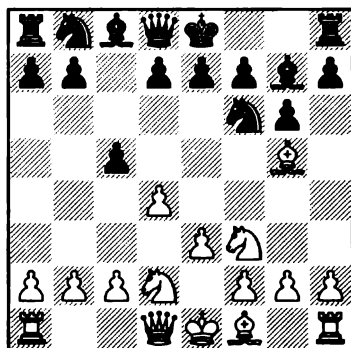
13 e2 d4 14 d1 xd2+ 15 xd2 was more accurate, when although Black's chances in the ending look slightly preferable, White can hold the position.

14.2 (1 d4 f6 2 f3 g6 3 g5 g7 4 bd2 c5)

5 e3

White aims for the set-up with the familiar pawn triangle in the centre. If he begins with 5 c3 (planning e2-e4), the difference is that the e-file is opened instead of the c-file in the event of the exchange on d4: 5... cxd4 6 cxd4 0-0 7 e3 c6 8

e2 (after 8 d3 d6 9 0-0 d7 10 h3 c8 11 a3 a6 12 e2 d5 13 e4 c7 14 d5 d4 15 xd4 xd4 16 c4 b5 17 ad1 xc4 18 xc4 g7 Black has a normal position, Manor-V.Spasov, Tunja 1989) 8... d6 9 0-0 h6 (9... f5 is also good) 10 h4 (Balashov-Lanka, Russia 1988), and here the standard 10... e5 would have led to a roughly equal game.



5 ... cxd4

The most rational plan. After relieving the tension in the centre, Black is ready for a counter-attack against the d4 pawn by ... e7-e5 .

6 cxd4 0-0

7 bd3

After 7 e2 Black again obtains counterplay by standard methods: 7... c6 8 c3 d6 9 0-0 h6 10 h4 c7 (planning ... e7-e5) 11 g3 h5 12 e1 hxg3 13 hxg3 e5 14 d5 b8 15 g4 d7 16 c1 f6 17 c4 a5 18 c2 d7 (Barta-Lanka, Paris 1990), and with ... f7-f5 he gains attacking chances.

After 7 ♙c4 ♜c6 8 c3 d6 9 0-0 h6 10 ♙h4 (Malanyuk-Tkachiev, Cappelle la Grande 1995) Black should have played 10...e5! ? With an acceptable game.

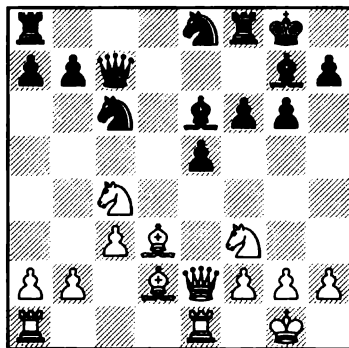
7 ... ♜c6
 8 c3 d6
 9 0-0 ♞c7

Here too 9...h6 is possible, but Black is aiming for ...e7-e5 .

10 ♞e1 e5
 11 dxe5 dxe5
 12 ♜c4 ♜e8
 13 ♞e2 f6
 14 ♙d2 ♙e6

We are following the game Vyzhmanavin-Lanka (Novosibirsk 1986) which (see *diagram next column*) continued 15 h4 ♜e7 16 h5 ♞d8 17 ♜e3 ♜d6 18 ♙c2 ♞b6 19

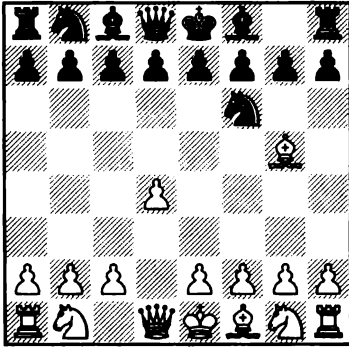
b3 ♜f7 20 hxg6 hxg6 21 ♞ad1 ♞fe8 with not at all a bad game for Black – he was able later to advance his ‘trump’ e- and f-pawns and win.



However, after 15 ♞ad1 ♞d8 16 ♙c1 ♜e7 (or 16...♜d6! ?) his position is again sufficiently sound.

15 Trompowsky Attack

1 d4 ♘f6
2 ♖g5



This original opening, named after the Brazilian master Octavio Trompowsky, is the favourite weapon of the English GM Julian Hodgson.

We will also consider other rare moves for White after 1...♘f6:

2 c3 g6 (2...d5 is a good alternative, transposing into a sound Queen's Pawn Opening set-up) 3 ♖g5 ♖g7 4 ♘d2 0-0 5 e4 d6 6 ♘gf3 (after 6 f4 c5 7 dxc5 dxc5 8 ♖c4 ♘c6 9 ♘gf3 ♘a5 10 ♖e2 ♘g4 11 ♘f1 ♗b6 Black begins active play, Klaric-Kasparov, Graz 1981) 6...c5 (commencing the usual play against the white centre) 7 dxc5 (little is promised by 7 ♖e2 h6!? 8 ♖h4 cxd4 9 ♘xd4 ♘c6 10 0-0 d5!=, Rossetto-Parma, Mar del Plata 1962) 7...dxc5 8 ♖e2 (8 ♗c2 ♘c6 9

♖e2 ♖e6 10 0-0, Malanyuk-Ravi, Calcutta 1993, 10...♗c7!?, or 8 ♖c4 ♘c6 9 0-0 ♘a5 10 ♖e2 ♖e6 11 ♖e1 a6 12 ♗c2 b5, Malanyuk-Marin, Salimanesti 1992 – in both cases with an acceptable game for Black) 8...♘c6 9 0-0 ♗c7 10 ♗c2 ♖d8 11 ♖fe1 h6 12 ♖h4 ♘h5 (Black carries out a regrouping of his minor pieces that is typical of the given set-up: ...♖e6, ...♘f4, ...♘e5, and easily solves his opening problems) 13 ♘c4 ♖e6 14 ♘e3 ♘f4 15 ♖f1 ♘e5= (Yusupov-Kasparov, Riga 1995).

2 g3 (this move is not usually of independent significance, but is a way of transposing to known variations) 2...c5! (exploiting White's rather slow play, Black immediately begins activity on the queenside; 2...g6 is also possible, transposing into familiar King's Indian lines) 3 d5 (if 3 ♘f3 there follows 3...♗a5+ 4 ♘c3 cxd4 5 ♘xd4 ♘e4 6 ♖d2 ♘xd2 7 ♗xd2 ♘c6 with equality – Adorjan) 3...b5 4 ♖g2 d6 (or 4...♖b7!?) 5 ♘f3 g6 6 c4 a6 (also interesting is 6...♖g7 7 cxb5 a6!?, transposing into a Benko Gambit, but that is another story...) 7 a4 b4 8 b3 ♖g7 9 ♖b2 0-0 10 ♘bd2 ♖a7!? Black has a flexible position (he plans ...e7-e6) with sufficient counterplay (Csom-Adorjan, Hungary 1989).

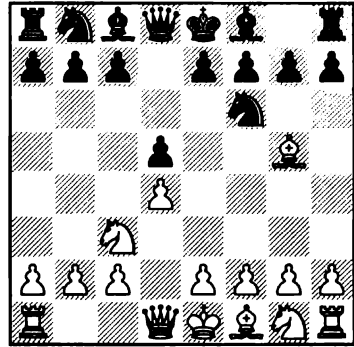
2 ♖c3 d5! – the most accurate, hindering White's pawn operations in the centre:

(a) 3 e4?! (this, the Blackmar-Diemer Gambit, is inadequate) 3...dxe4 4 f3 exf3 5 ♖xf3 ♗g4 (the alternative is 5...g6) 6 h3 ♗xf3 7 ♜xf3 c6 8 ♗e3 e6 9 ♗d3 ♖bd7 10 0-0 ♗e7 11 g4 (an attempt to create pressure on the f-file) 11...h6. White has the two bishops and slightly more space. Black has held on to the gambit pawn with a sound position, and his chances are better;

(b) 3 ♖f3 ♖e4!? (a very interesting idea of I.Zaitsev) 4 ♖xe4 (there does not appear to be any other sensible move – Black was threatening to spoil White's queenside pawns) 4...dxe4 5 ♖g5 ♗f5 (5...♖c6 is also possible) 6 f3 exf3 7 exf3 ♖c6. Black has good piece play;

(c) 3 f3 (at the cost of a certain delay with his development, White aims to set up a strong pawn centre) 3...c5!? (the most thematic reply, immediately striking at the centre) 4 e3 (if 4 dxc5 the simplest is 4...e6; also after 4 ♗g5 there is no need to go in for complications by 4...cxd4, the simple 4...e6 being better, when it is difficult for White to set up a pawn centre, and without this the pawn at f3 looks rather ridiculous) 4...e6 5 ♗b5+ ♖c6 6 ♖ge2 ♜c7 7 e4 dxe4 8 fxe4 cxd4 9 ♜xd4 ♗d7. Of White's centre only an 'isolani' remains, and Black has no problems (Schouten-Sziva, Belgium 1997);

(d) 3 ♗g5.



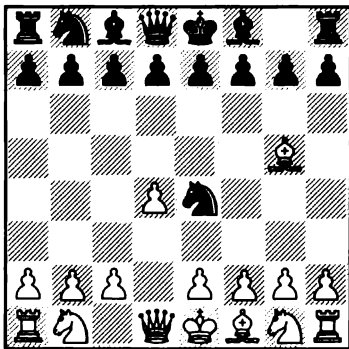
This, the Veresov Opening, is the most popular continuation. White defers the clash in the centre until later, and continues his development. 3...♖bd7 (retaining the option of recapturing on f6 with the knight), and now:

(d1) 4 f3 (this move, intending e2-e4, is not very promising) 4...e6! (sounder than the more usual 4...c5 – Black reinforces his central bulwark, the d5 pawn, in order to play the thematic ...c7-c5 at the required moment; White's centre, by contrast, is not very secure) 5 e4 h6 6 ♗h4 dxe4 7 fxe4 ♗b4 8 ♜f3 c5 9 0-0-0 cxd4 10 ♜xd4 ♜a5 with an excellent game for Black (Sahovic-Tseshkovsky, Bled 1979);

(d2) 4 ♖f3 h6 (it is useful to force the white bishop to declare its intentions – at h4 it may be attacked by ...g7-g5; also satisfactory is 4...e6 5 e3 ♗e7 6 ♗e2 c5 7 0-0 0-0 8 a4 b6 9 a5 bxa5!? 10 ♖d2 cxd4 11 exd4 ♗b7 12 ♖b3 ♗b4, when it is not easy for White to regain his

pawn, Dydyshko-Sadler, Pula 1997) 5 ♖h4 e6 6 e4 (White also gains no advantage by 6 e3 ♗e7 7 ♘e5 ♘xe5 8 dxe5 ♘d7 9 ♖g3 ♖b4 10 ♗g4 ♖xc3+ 11 bxc3 ♗g5, Hort-Smetan, Biel 1982) 6...g5 7 ♖g3 ♘xe4 8 ♘xe4 dxe4 9 ♘e5 (after 9 ♘d2 ♖g7 10 h4 ♖xd4 11 c3 ♖e5 12 ♘xe4 ♖xg3 13 fxg3 gxh4 14 ♖xh4 ♗e7 Black gains the advantage, Galkin-Volzhin, Perm 1997) 9...♖g7 10 h4 ♘xe5 11 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 12 dxe5 ♖d7 13 ♗g4 ♗e7 14 0-0-0 0-0-0 (Reynolds-Nunn, London 1987). In this complicated position Black's chances are better – his bishop goes to c6 where it will exert pressure on White's position.

2 ... ♘e4



The most critical reaction to the Trompowsky-Hodgson Attack. The ♖g5 has to declare its intentions.

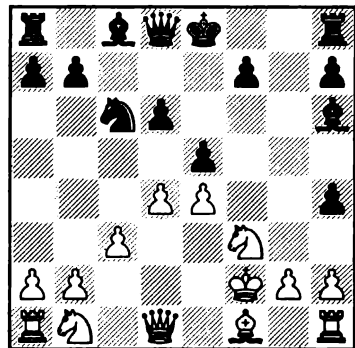
3 ♖f4

A flexible continuation. With f2-f3 White will drive the ♘e4 from its active position and try to set up a solid pawn chain in the centre

(f3+e4). The drawbacks to this strategy are that it deprives the king's knight of its best development square (f3) and that it is rather slow. Black must play energetically, immediately provoking a clash in the centre.

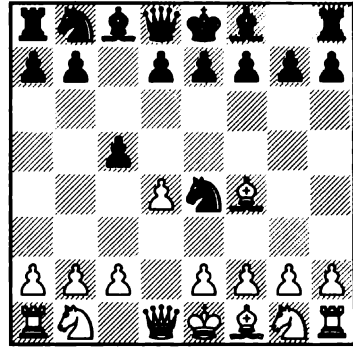
White's other possibilities:

3 ♖h4 c5 4 f3 (if 4 d5 ♗b6 5 ♗c1 there follows 5...g5 6 ♖g3 ♖g7 7 c3 ♗h6! and Black seizes the initiative, O.Rodriguez-Hort, Las Palmas 1975) 4...g5! (the basic idea of Black's counterplay, 'latching on' to the ♖h4) 5 fxe4 gxh4 6 e3 (weaker is 6 ♘c3 cxd4! 7 ♗xd4 ♖g8 8 e5 ♘c6 9 ♗e4 ♗a5 10 ♘f3 d6 11 0-0-0 ♖e6 when White is forced onto the defensive, Kunc-O.Moiseev, corr. 1970) 6...♖h6 (taking aim at the e3 pawn) 7 ♖f2 (after 7 ♖c4 e6 8 ♗h5 ♗g5! 9 ♗xg5 ♖xg5 White has problems, Bellon-Schmidt, Biel 1990) 7...cxd4 8 exd4 e5 (exploiting the idea of 9 dxe5? ♗b6+, Black strikes a blow in the centre) 9 ♘f3 ♘c6 10 c3 d6.



Black's chances are not worse – his two bishops and the exposed position of the opponent's king fully compensate for the spoiling of his kingside pawns (Voloshin-Golubev, Alushta 1993).

3 h4 (an eccentric continuation; in the event of the exchange on g5, White counts on creating pressure on the h-file) 3...d5 (the alternative is 3...c5) 4 ♘d2 ♘xg5 (now this exchange is appropriate, since Black can play his bishop to f5) 5 hxg5 ♙f5 6 e3 e6 7 g4 ♙g6 8 f4 c5 (8...♘d7!?) 9 ♘gf3 (Black's chances are also preferable after 9 ♚f3 ♚d7!?) 9...♘c6 10 c3 ♚b6.



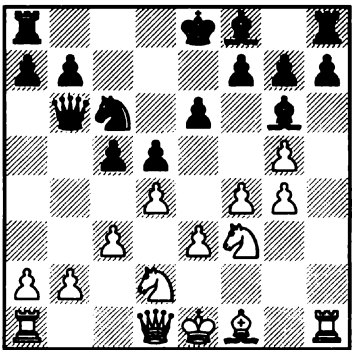
The most popular and logical continuation – Black attacks White's central pawn, at the same time opening a way for his queen to the queenside. The alternative is 3...d5.

4 f3

Other continuations for White:

4 c3 ♚b6 5 f3 ♘f6 (5...♚xb2 6 fxe4!? is unclear) 6 b3 (after Hort's recommendation of 6 ♙c1 cxd4 7 ♚xd4 ♚xd4 8 cxd4 d5 Black again has nothing to complain of) 6...cxd4 7 ♚xd4 ♚xd4 8 cxd4 ♘c6 9 ♙e3 d5 and Black's position is already preferable (Böhm-Geller, Moscow 1975).

4 d5 ♚b6 (reminding White that his b2 pawn is unprotected) 5 ♘d2 (after 5 ♚c1 c4! 6 e3 ♚a5+ 7 ♘c3 ♘xc3 8 ♚d2 e6! 9 bxc3 exd5 White has problems – Rotshtein; or 5 ♙c1 ♚a5+!? – forcing White to take away the natural square for the development of his ♘b1 – 6 c3 ♘f6 7 ♙g5 ♚b6, and Black's chances are not worse) 5...♘xd2 6 ♙xd2



We are following the game Hodgson-Gufeld (Hastings 1986/7, which continued 11 ♘h4?! ♚xb2 12 ♘xg6 (12 f5 exf5 13 gxf5 ♙h5?) 12...fxg6 13 ♚b1 ♚xc3 14 ♚b3 ♚a5 15 ♚xb7 c4!, when Black had an undisputed advantage. However, even after 11 ♚b3 ♚xb3 White faces a gruelling battle for equality.

3 ... c5

♙xb2 7 e4 e6!? (attacking the white centre at just the right time) 8 ♖d3 (or 8 ♘f3 exd5 9 exd5 d6) 8...exd5 9 exd5 ♙d4!? and it is not easy for White to demonstrate that he has compensation for the pawn.

4 ... ♙a5+

A familiar idea – the c-pawn is invited to occupy the lawful square of the ♘b1.

5 c3 ♘f6

6 ♘d2

Sharp play results from 6 d5 ♙b6!? 7 b3 e6 8 e4 exd5 9 exd5 ♖d6 10 ♘h3 0-0 11 ♙d2 ♜e8+ 12 ♖e2 c4! 13 ♖xd6 (after 13 bxc4 ♖c5 the white king risks having to remain in the centre) 13...♙xd6 14 bxc4 b5!? (a typical way of undermining the d5 pawn) 15 cxb5 (I.Sokolov-Smirin, Wijk aan Zee 1993), and now 15...♘xd5 (16 c4 ♙e5!) would have given Black sufficient play for the pawn.

6 ... cxd4

7 ♘b3 ♙b6

8 cxd4

8 ♙xd4 ♘c6!? 9 ♙xb6 axb6 10 ♖e3 b5 11 ♘d4 ♘xd4 12 ♖xd4 e6 leads to equality.

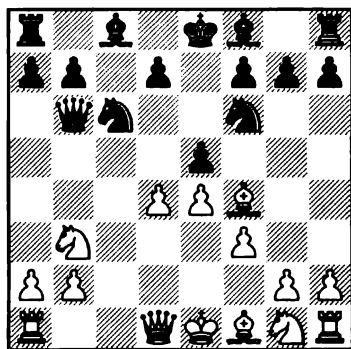
8 ... ♘c6!

Black prepares to attack the white centre.

9 e4

Or 9 d5 e5!

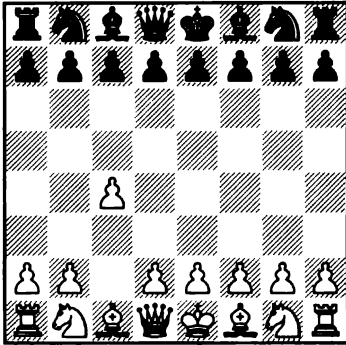
9 ... e5!



Putting into effect the main idea of Black's counterplay. After 10 dxe5 ♖b4+ 11 ♚e2 (if 11 ♖d2 ♘xe5 12 ♖xb4 ♙xb4+ 13 ♙d2 ♙xd2+ 14 ♘xd2 d5! or 11 ♘d2 ♘h5 with an excellent game) 11...♘xe5 12 ♙d4 ♘g6 he achieved a promising position – White has to solve the problem of his 'developed' king (Hodgson-Gelfand, Groningen 1996).

16 English Opening

1 c4



This popular opening, developed by the 19th century English Champion Howard Staunton, has been adopted by many well-known modern grandmasters, including World Champions Garry Kasparov and Anatoly Karpov and the young super-star Vladimir Kramnik.

The attraction of White's first move is that it gives him a wide choice of subsequent plans and allows him, for the time being, to camouflage his intentions. But the true King's Indian player will not be surprised by such a move. The attraction of this opening is its universality – after practically any move order he can achieve his favourite set-up.

1 ... ♘f6

A good alternative is 1...g6 2 e4 ♗g7 3 ♘c3 (3 d4 d6 4 ♘c3 ♘f6

leads to the basic position of the King's Indian) 3...d6 4 g3 ♘f6 5 ♗g2 0–0, transposing into the main variation.

2 ♘f3

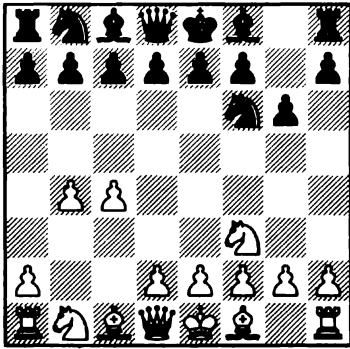
The same position arises if White tries to play the Réti Opening: 1 ♘f3 ♘f6 2 c4.

With 2 ♘c3 White can retain the option of transposing into the plan with e2–e4 and ♘ge2: 2...g6 3 g3 ♗g7 4 ♗g2 0–0, and now:

(a) 5 ♘f3 d6 6 0–0 e5 7 d3 (7 d4 ♘bd7 transposes into the King's Indian Defence) 7...♘c6 8 ♖b1 a5 9 a3 ♗e8 (preparing to counter White's queenside activity with play in the centre) 10 ♗g5 (10 b4 axb4 11 axb4 is met by 11...e4!) 10...h6 11 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 12 b4 axb4 13 axb4 ♗g7 14 b5 ♘e7 (14...♘d4 15 ♘d2 ♗a3 is also satisfactory, Krivonogov-Yutaev, Kstovo 1997) 15 ♗c2 c6 16 ♘d2 ♗e6 17 bxc6 bxc6 18 ♗b7 d5 and Black has a good game – a powerful centre and play with ...e5–e4 (Andersson-Shirov, Monaco 1997);

(b) 5 e4 d6 6 ♘ge2 ♘c6!? 7 d3 e5 8 0–0 ♗e6 9 ♖b1 a5 10 a3 ♗d7 11 b4 axb4 12 axb4 ♘g4!? and Black's chances are not worse – he has harmoniously developed pieces, a solid pawn chain, and chances of play over the entire board (Genn Kalinichenko, Moscow 1997).

2 ... g6
3 b4



White carries out the 'extended fianchetto', aiming to expand his territorial gains on the queenside.

We also consider the normal fianchetto: 3 b3 g7 4 g2 0-0, and now:

(a) 5 e3 d6 6 g2 e5 7 0-0 e8 (or 7...d7) 8 d3 c6 9 c3 d5 10 cxd5 dxd5 11 c1 a5 12 c2 dcb4 13 b1 dxc3 14 gxc3 c5 15 fdl b6 with equality (Niklasson-Vaganian, Skara 1980);

(b) 5 g3 d6 6 g2 e5 (or 6...a5!?) 7 0-0 e8 8 d3 c6 9 e3 (9 e4 leads to a King's Indian set-up) 9...d7. The chances are roughly equal. Black meets 10 d4 with 10...e4 11 d2 d5, seizing space in the centre.

3 ... g7
4 g2 0-0
5 e3

In this position too the plan with g2 is encountered: 5 g3 d6 6 g2 e5 7 0-0 (or 7 d3 c6 8 b5 d4 9 0-0 g4 10 e1 c8 11 f3 h3 12

e3 xg2 13 d3 c6 15 a4 d5 with a good game for Black, Polugayevsky-Van Wely, Groningen 1993) 7...d7 8 d3 e7 (also possible is 8...h5!? 9 d3 c3 f5, Plachetka-Tal, Kapfenberg 1970) 9 dbd2 c6 10 b3 a5 11 a3 a4 12 c2 d5 13 e3 b5!? 14 cxb5 cxb5 15 aac1 a6 16 b1 e8 (Stein-Tseshkovsky, Sochi 1970). Black has halted White's play on the queenside and covered the invasion squares on the c-file. Given the opportunity, he will begin advancing his kingside pawns. The chances are roughly equal.

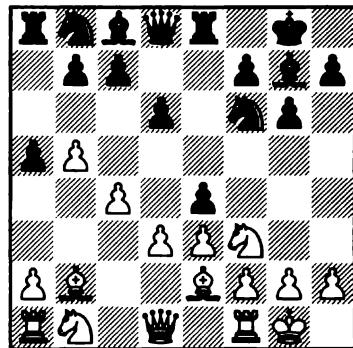
5 ... d6

For the alternative 5...b6!? cf. *Illustrative Game No.15* (Smyslov-Gufeld, Moscow 1967).

6 e2 e5
7 d3 e8

Black prepares ...e5-e4.

8 0-0 a5
9 b5 e4



Black forces exchanges in the centre and achieves an equal game.

Korchnoi-Glek (Budapest 1996) continued 10 dxe4 ♖xe4 11 ♗d4 ♗d7 12 ♗c3 ♗xc3 13 ♙xc3 ♗c5 14 ♜c1 ♗e4 (14...♙d7!?) 15 ♙a1 ♙d7 16 ♙f3 b6 17 ♜c2 ♜e7 18 ♜fd1 ♜ac8 19 ♗c6 ♙xc6 20 bxc6 ♙xa1 21 ♜xa1 f5!? with a very slight initiative for Black, although the position is still close to equal.

Game 15 (p.180)
Smyslov-Gufeld
Moscow 1967

- 1 c4 ♗f6
- 2 ♗f3 g6
- 3 b4

Curiously, this was the exact course taken by the classic game Réti-Capablanca (New York 1924), in which the World Champion suffered a sensational defeat after being undefeated for eight whole years!

- 3 ... ♙g7
- 4 ♙b2 0-0
- 5 e3

In the Réti-Capablanca game Black easily equalised after 5 g3 b6 6 ♙g2 ♙b7 7 0-0 d6, and only lost as a result of a mistake in the middlegame.

- 5 ... b6

Black chooses the same set-up as Capablanca. 5...d6 is also good – cf. the analysis.

In general it has to be said that the system of play chosen by White gives him few chances of gaining an advantage.

- 6 d4

An aggressive idea, after which Black faces a difficult choice – he is threatened with ‘suffocation’ in the centre.

- 6 ... c5!

The correct plan. With the opponent not yet castled, the opening of lines, even where he looks stronger, gives Black counterchances.

- 7 dxc5 bxc5
- 8 b5 a6
- 9 a4

By drawing White into a conflict on the queenside, Black has diverted his attention from the normal mobilisation of his forces, and in compensation for the seemingly dangerous white pawn wedge he can operate successfully on other parts of the board. Now 9...♙b7 is good, with comfortable development, but the sharp continuation chosen is also possible – it is based on the unsettled state of the white king.

- 9 ... ♗e4!?

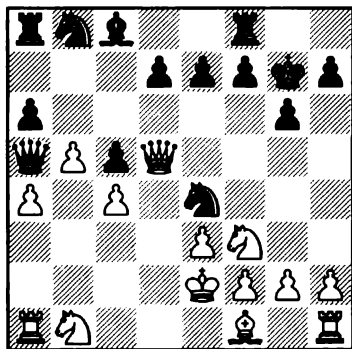
The game enters a phase of fascinating tactical complications.

- 10 ♙xg7 ♜xg7
- 11 ♜d5!

White is obliged to accept the challenge. Quiet development by 11 ♙d3 ♜a5+ 12 ♗bd2 ♗xd2 13 ♜xd2 axb5 14 cxb5 d5 allows Black an excellent game.

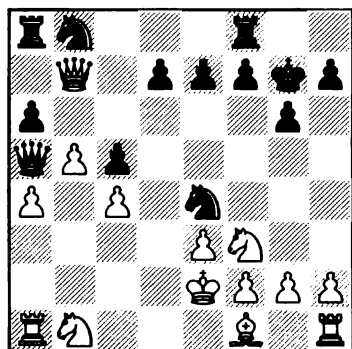
- 11 ... ♜a5+
- 12 ♜e2!

This too is necessary. After 12 ♗bd2 ♗xd2 13 ♗xd2 axb5! Black already has the advantage.



It would appear that Black is intending 12...♖c3+ 13 ♜xc3 ♜xc3 14 ♜xa8 ♜xa1, and 15 ♜xb8 is dangerous in view of 15...d6!, when he can count on at least perpetual check. But in reply Smyslov had prepared the subtle move 14 ♜d1!, and after 14...♙a7 15 ♜xc5 and 16 ♜d4+ White has a clear advantage. The impression is that Black has miscalculated, but there follows the stunning:

12 ... ♙b7!!
13 ♜xb7



This reply is clearly forced.

13 ... ♜c6!

A second 'wild' move. The positional basis for the two successive piece sacrifices is the undeveloped state of White's pieces, the exposed position of his king, and also the possibility of pursuing his queen.

14 ♜fd2

14 bxc6 ♜ab8 15 ♜fd2 would have transposed into the game, but excessive greed (15 ♜xd7) would have cost White dearly: 15...♜fd8! and, despite his great material advantage, his position is indefensible.

14 ... ♜a7

15 bxc6!

Much worse is 15 ♜xa7 ♜xa7 16 ♜xe4 axb5 17 cxb5 ♜xb5 with advantage to Black.

15 ... ♜xb7

16 cxb7

The storm has died down somewhat. White has a material advantage, but Black has the initiative.

16 ... ♜b4

Black decides to play with a certain degree of risk. After 16...♜d6 17 g3 ♜xb7 18 ♙g2 ♜d6 19 ♜c1 ♜b8 attack and defence balance one another, which testifies to the correctness of his entire play.

17 ♜xe4?!

Smyslov decides to give up the exchange, but to retain his b7 pawn. 17 ♜a2! was stronger, when Black would have had to reconcile himself to 17...f5 or 17...♜f6 with a complicated game (after 17...♜xb7

18 ♖xe4 ♜xe4 19 ♘d2 or
18...♜xb1 19 ♘c3 ♜c1 20 ♔d3!
White would have consolidated his
position and repulsed the attack).

17 ... ♜b2+
18 ♘bd2 ♜xa1
19 ♘xc5

White still has a material
advantage: three minor pieces and a
pawn for the queen. But the whole
problem is that he has not improved
the position of his king or his
kingside pieces.

19 ... ♜b8
20 g3 ♜a3!

After the 'natural' 20...d6? 21
♘d7! ♜xb7 22 ♙g2 ♜b2 23 ♜b1
White would have won. Black
moves his queen off the back rank
just in time.

21 ♘xd7?!

This often happens, when a player
suddenly feels the ground slipping
under his feet. Not long ago it
seemed to Smyslov that he stood
better, and suddenly after the logical
21 ♘d3 ♜xb7 22 ♙g2 ♜b8 he is
also faced with the loss of his a4
pawn. He therefore seeks chances in
more lively play.

21 ... ♜xb7
22 ♙h3 ♜d6
23 c5 ♜d5
24 f3

Everything seems to be in order.
The threat of 24...♜h5+ has been
parried, the kingside has been
mobilised, and the a4 pawn retained.
In the event of 24...♜xd7 25 ♙xd7
♜xd7 26 ♜c1, with rook, knight and

protected passed c-pawn, White
with active play can count on a
draw.

But it turns out that there is one
further important factor in the
position – the vulnerability of the
♘d7.

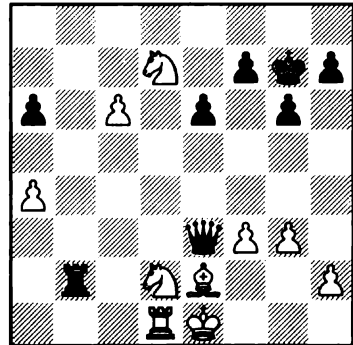
24 ... ♜b2
25 ♜d1 e6
26 c6

At the cost of two pawns the
knight could still have escaped from
the trap: 26 ♘b6 ♜xc5 27 a5 ♜xa5
28 ♘bc4, but here Black has the
advantage.

26 ... ♜c4+
27 ♔e1 ♜d3!

The c-pawn will not run away; for
the moment Black can pick up the
one at e3.

28 ♙f1 ♜xe3+
29 ♙e2



Black's problem is to prevent the
♘d7 from returning to an active
position. This is achieved by the
following move, one that was
difficult to find...

29 ... a5!!

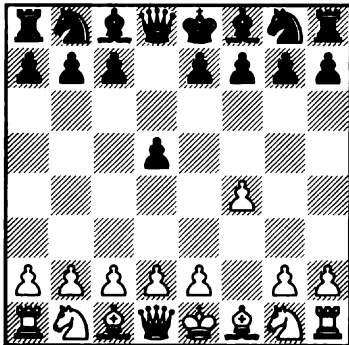
The queen remains on guard by the white king, while the rook is sent to deal with the c-pawn. The ring around the ♖d7 tightens.

30 f4 f6
31 c7 ♖c2
32 ♕f1 ♗xc7
33 ♖c4

This accelerates the end. After 33 ♖f3 ♕f7! the king would have been included in the trapping of the knight.

33 ... ♗xc4
34 ♗xc4 ♕f3+
35 ♕e1 ♕c3+
White resigns

1 f4 d5



Avoiding the sharp play of the From Gambit (1...e5!?), Black is ready to play against the Dutch Defence by the first player.

2 ♘f3

The attempt to prevent the fianchetto of Black's king's bishop is unsuccessful: 2 b3 ♗g4! (hindering the development of White's king-side) 3 ♗b2 ♘c6 4 g3?! (better is 4 ♘f3 ♗xf3 5 exf3 with only a minimal advantage for Black) 4...e5!? 5 fxe5 f6! with an attack for Black. Kupreichik-Yusupov (Yerevan 1982) continued 6 ♗h3 ♗xh3 7 exf6 ♘xf6 8 ♘xh3 ♗c5 9 e3 d4 10 e4 0-0 11 d3 ♗b4+ 12 ♘d2 ♘d5 13 ♗h5 ♘e3 14 ♗e2 g6, when it was hard to offer White any good advice.

2 ... g6

The most precise move order. After 2...♘f6 3 e3 g6 4 b4! White

can count on an opening initiative. The text move prevents this plan and allows Black smoothly to fianchetto his king's bishop – the best counter to the Dutch set-up.

White now has a choice between 3 g3 (17.1) and 3 e3 (17.2).

17.1 (1 f4 d5 2 ♘f3 g6)

3 g3

White develops as in the Lenin-grad Dutch; the extra tempo gives him additional possibilities, of course, but these are normally sufficient only for achieving approximate equality, and not an advantage.

3 ... ♗g7

4 ♗g2 ♘f6

5 0-0

If 5 d3 the most thematic is 5...♘bd7 (5...b6 is also satisfactory) 6 ♘c3 0-0 7 e4 dxe4 8 dxe4 e5! (Savon-Gufeld, Gori 1971). After 9 fxe5 ♘g4 10 ♗g5 ♗e8 11 ♘d5 ♘dxe5 12 h3 (12 ♘xc7 ♘xf3+ and 13...♗e5) 12...♘xf3+ 13 ♗xf3 ♗e5! 14 ♗e7 ♗e8! 15 hxg4 ♗xe7 16 ♘xe7+ ♗xe7 17 0-0-0 ♗e6 18 ♗b1 ♗b4 19 ♗a3 ♗xa3 20 bxa3 ♗xg4 White ended up in a difficult situation.

5 ... 0-0

6 d3 b6

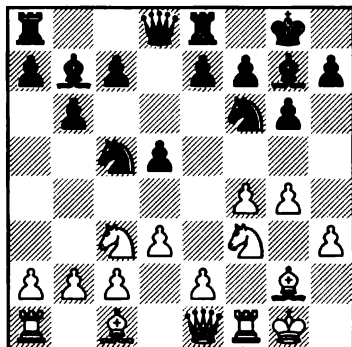
In this set-up too the development of the light-square bishop on the

long diagonal is the most acceptable.

7 ♖e1 ♙b7
8 h3 ♘bd7

The alternative is 8...c5!?

9 g4 ♜e8
10 ♘c3 ♘c5



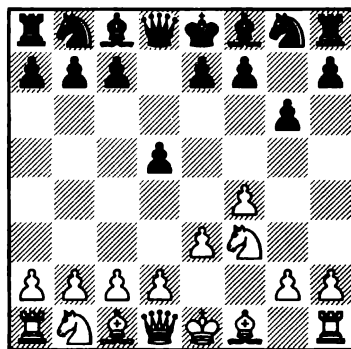
The two sides have completed their development and the outcome of the opening can be considered satisfactory for Black – he has hindered White's e2-e4 and is ready in some cases to play ...e7-e5 himself. Savchenko-Hoeksema (Groningen 1991) continued 11 ♖g3 ♜d6 12 ♘b5 ♜d7 13 ♘bd4 ♘e6 14 ♘xe6 ♜xe6 15 f5 ♜d6 16 ♜f2 e5 17 fxe6 fxe6 18 ♜h4 e5 19 ♙h6 ♜f8 and Black's chances were not worse.

17.2 (1 f4 d5 2 ♘f3 g6)

3 e3

Here White bases his play on the classical ideas of the Dutch Defence – he develops his light-square

bishop at e2, while the dark-square bishop is developed on the long diagonal or for the time being remains in its initial position. In this set-up too it is best for Black to fianchetto his king's bishop.



3 ... ♙g7
4 ♙e2

White can switch to a 'stonewall' set-up with 4 d4 ♘f6 5 ♙d3 0-0 6 0-0 c5 7 c3 b6 (also good is 7...♜b6 8 ♘bd2 ♙f5, exchanging the ♙d3 and strengthening Black's control of the key e4 square, Ragozin-Makogonov, USSR 1940) 8 ♘bd2 ♙a6 9 ♙xa6 ♘xa6 10 ♜a4 ♘c7 (Hickl-Kindermann, Munich 1989). The two sides' chances are roughly equal, only Black must watch for the possibility of White playing b2-b4-b5 and ♘e5, seizing control of c6 and building up an attack on the queenside.

4 c4 has also been played: 4...♘f6 5 ♘c3 c6 6 ♙e2 0-0 7 0-0 ♘bd7 8 d4 dxc4! (aiming, in the event of the capture on c4, to gain

time by ... ♖b6) 9 a4 a5 10 e4 ♖b6 11 ♗e5 ♗e8 (now the d4 pawn is hanging) 12 ♙e3 ♗d6 with a solid position for Black – White still has to regain the c4 pawn (Hübner-Wittmann, Manila 1992).

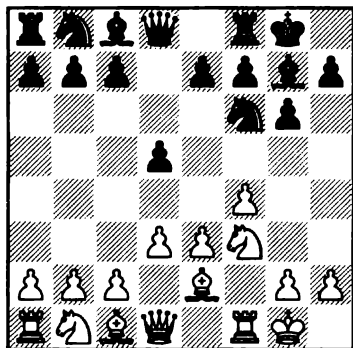
It should be mentioned that, thanks to the precise move order, White is denied the possibility of 4 b3 – one of the popular set-ups after 1 f4 d5 2 ♗f3 ♗f6.

4 ... ♗f6

Entering the main line. Also possible is 4...c5 5 0-0 ♗h6!?, hindering the development of White's queenside.

5 0-0 0-0

6 d3



Other possibilities:

6 ♗e5 ♗bd7 7 ♙f3 ♗xe5 8 fxe5 ♗e4 9 c4 ♙xe5 10 cxd5 ♗g5, and Black's chances are not worse – he exchanges the opponent's light-square bishop and remains with the two bishops.

6 b3 c5 7 ♙b2 ♗c6 8 ♗e1 (or 8 ♗e5 ♗d7 9 d3 ♗e8 10 ♗xc6 ♙xc6

11 ♙xg7 ♙xg7=) 8...d4! (a good move, hindering White in his battle for the e5 square and creating tension in the centre at the right time) 9 ♗a3 ♗d5 10 ♙c4 e6 11 ♗g5 b6 12 c3 ♙b7 13 exd4 ♗xf4 14 ♗e4 e5!? 15 dxe5 ♗d3 16 ♙xd3 ♗xd3 17 ♙f3 ♗d8 18 ♗f6+ ♙xf6 19 exf6 ♙e8 20 ♗h4 ♙e2. Black has a strong initiative for the pawn (Sale-Wells, Budapest 1993).

6 ... c5

7 ♗e1 ♗c6

8 c3

After 8 ♗h4 b6 9 ♗bd2 ♙a6 10 ♗e5 ♗xe5 11 fxe5 ♗d7 Black has nothing to fear (Larsen-Benko, Portoroz 1958).

8 ... b6

9 ♗a3 ♙a6

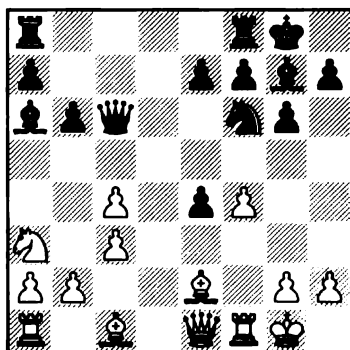
10 e4 c4!?

The point of Black's 9th move becomes clear – he is able to provoke a clash in the centre.

11 dxc4 dxe4

12 ♗e5 ♗c7

13 ♗xc6 ♗xc6



Black has successfully solved his opening problems: he is well mobilised and has a pawn outpost in the centre. White must play

accurately to avoid ending up in an inferior position (Rasidovic-Mirkovic, Yugoslavia 1991).

Index of Variations

PART I: WHITE REPERTOIRE

1 Sicilian Defence

- 1 e4 c5 2 c3 9
- 1.1 2...e5 10
- 1.2 2...d6 3 d4 ♟f6 4 ♟d3 11
 - 1.21 4...cxd4 12
 - 1.22 4...♟c6 12
 - 1.23 4...g6 13
- 1.3 2...e6 14
- 1.4 2...d5 3 exd5 ♜xd5 4 d4 15
 - 1.41 4...♟c6 5 ♟f3 16
 - 1.411 5...♟g4 17
 - 1.412 5...cxd4 18
 - 1.413 5...♟f6 19
 - 1.42 4...♟f6 20
- 1.5 2...♟f6 23

2 Scotch Game

- 1 e4 e5 2 ♟c3 27
- 2.1 2...♟c6 3 ♟f3 27
- 2.2 2...♟f6 3 ♟f3 ♟c6 4 d4 29
 - 2.21 4...♟b4 30
 - 2.22 4...exd4 5 ♟xd4 ♟b4 6 ♟xc6 bxc6 7 ♟d3 d5 8 exd5 32
 - 2.221 8...♜e7+ 34
 - 2.222 8...cxd5 36

3 French Defence

- 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♟d2 41
- 3.1 3...♟c6 43
- 3.2 3...♟f6 4 e5 ♟fd7 5 ♟d3 c5 6 c3 ♟c6 7 ♟e2 cxd4 8 exd4 45
 - 3.21 8...a5 47
 - 3.22 8...♜b6 48
 - 3.23 8...f6 49
- 3.3 3...c5 4 ♟gf3 51

- 3.31 4...a6 52
- 3.32 4...♟f6 52
- 3.33 4...♟c6 5 ♟b5 54
 - 3.331 5...dxe4 54
 - 3.332 5...cxd4 55
- 3.34 4...cxd4 56

4 Caro-Kann Defence

- 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 ♟f5 4 ♟f3 e6 5 ♟e2 59
- 4.1 5...c5 60
- 4.2 5...♟e7 62

5 Pirc-Ufimtsev Defence

- 1 e4 d6 2 d4 ♟f6 3 f3 66
- 5.1 3...e5 67
- 5.2 3...d5 68

6 Alekhine Defence

- 1 e4 ♟f6 2 e5 ♟d5 3 d4 d6 4 ♟f3 73
- 6.1 4...♟c6 73
- 6.2 4...dxe5 5 ♟xe5 74
 - 6.21 5...♟d7 75
 - 6.22 5...g6 75
- 6.3 4...g6 76
- 6.4 4...♟g4 4 ♟e2 77
 - 6.41 5...c6 78
 - 6.42 5...e6 79

PART II: BLACK REPERTOIRE**7 Sicilian Defence**

- 1 e4 c5 2 ♟f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♟xd4 ♟f6 5 ♟c3 ♟c6 84
- 7.1 6 ♟g5 ♟d7 84
 - 7.11 7 ♟xf6 86
 - 7.12 7 ♟e2 87
 - 7.13 7 ♟d2 88
- 7.2 6 ♟c4 ♟b6 90
 - 7.21 7 ♟xc6 91
 - 7.22 7 ♟de2 92

- 7.23 7 ♖db5 94
 7.24 7 ♖b3 e6 95
 7.241 8 ♗e3 96
 7.242 8 0-0 97
 7.243 8 ♗f4 98

King's Indian Defence:

8 Four Pawns Attack

- 1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 ♗g7 4 e4 d6 5 f4 0-0 105
 8.1 6 ♗f3 105
 8.2 6 ♗e2 c5 107
 8.21 7 d5 108
 8.22 7 ♗f3 110

9 Sämisch Variation

- 1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 ♗g7 4 e4 d6 5 f3 0-0 114
 9.1 6 ♗e3 ♖c6 114
 9.2 6 ♗g5 ♖c6 123

10 Variations with ♗g2

- 1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 g3 ♗g7 4 ♗g2 d6 5 ♗f3 0-0 6 0-0 ♖bd7 129

11 Classical Variation

- 1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 ♗g7 4 e4 d6 5 ♗f3 0-0 6 ♗e2 e5 139
 11.1 7 d5 141
 11.2 7 ♗e3 144
 11.3 7 0-0 145

12 Deviations by White from the Classical Variation

- 1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 ♗g7 4 e4 d6 154
 12.1 5 ♗ge2 156
 12.2 5 ♗d3 157
 12.3 5 h3 0-0 158
 12.31 6 ♗f3 158
 12.32 6 ♗e3 159
 12.33 6 ♗g5 160

13 Averbakh Variation

- 1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 ♗g7 4 e4 d6 5 ♗e2 0-0 6 ♗g5 162

14 Torre Attack

1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 g6 3 ♗g5 ♗g7 4 ♘bd2 c5 169

14.1 5 ♗xf6 171

14.2 5 e3 172

15 Trompowsky Attack

1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♗g5 174

16 English Opening

1 c4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 g6 3 b4 179

17 Bird Opening

1 f4 d5 2 ♘f3 g6 185

17.1 3 g3 185

17.2 3 e3 186

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIVE GAMES

- 1 Deep Blue-Kasparov 25
- 2 Rublevsky-Onischuk 38
- 3 Gufeld-Lutikov 57
- 4 Kalinichenko-Vefling 64
- 5 Gelfand-Adams 70
- 6 Kasparov-Ivanchuk 81
- 7 Damjanovic-Stein 99
- 8 Topalov-Kramnik 101

- 9 Stahlberg-Stein 111
- 10 Mestel-Gufeld 126
- 11 Timman-Kasparov 137
- 12 Gelfand-Topalov 149
- 13 Van der Sterren-Glek 151
- 14 Kaidanov-Gufeld 166
- 15 Smyslov-Gufeld 181

One of the hardest tasks faced by competitive chess players is the development of an opening repertoire suited to their own style of play. As in their companion volume **An Opening Repertoire for the Attacking Player** (also translated by Ken Neat), the authors provide a refined and thoroughly up-to-date opening program, this time selecting variations of a more positional nature.

- Practical repertoire based on 1 e4 as White and the Classical Sicilian and King's Indian Defences as Black
- Concentrates on solid and reliable lines of play
- Provides an easy-to-learn explanation of the typical plans and ideas

Eduard Gufeld is one of the most popular and widely travelled grandmasters, and is known throughout the world as a coach, opening theoretician, journalist and author.

Nikolai Kalinichenko, author of more than 30 chess books, holds the International Master title in correspondence chess and enjoys a growing reputation as a specialist in opening theory.

